Tioga Castings

TIOGA, NEW YORK

Site Management Plan

NYSDEC Site Number: 7-54-012

Prepared for:
New York State Department of Environmental Conservation
Division of Environmental Remediation
625 Broadway
Albany, New York 12233

Prepared by:
Arcadis CE, Inc.
855 Route 146 Suite 210
Clifton Park, New York 12065
518.250.7300

Revisions to Final Approved Site Management Plan:

Revision #	Submitted Date	Summary of Revision	DEC Approval Date

FEBRUARY 2020

TABLE OF CONTENTS

LIST OF TABLES

LIST OF FIGURES

LIST OF APPENDICES

SITE MANAGEMENT PLAN

1.0 INTRODUCTION AND DESCRIPTION OF REMEDIAL PROGRAM

1.1 INTRODUCTION

This document is required as an element of the remedial program at the former Tioga Casting facility in Owego, New York (hereinafter referred to as the “Site”) under the New York State (NYS) Inactive Hazardous Waste Disposal Site Remedial Program administered by New York State Department of Environmental Conservation (NYSDEC). The Site was remediated in accordance with the Record of Decision (ROD) Site # 7-54-012, which was executed on March 1995 (NYSDEC 1995).

1.1.1 General

Tioga Castings Facility entered into an Order on Consent (#A702068909) with the NYSDEC on August 14, 1989 to remediate a seven-acre property located in Owego, New York. This Order of Consent required the Remedial Party, Tioga Castings, to investigate and remediate contaminated media at the Site. However, the Remedial Party failed to perform the Remedial Investigation/Feasibility Study (RI/FS). Therefore, the NYSDEC took over responsibility for RI/FS activities under the State Inactive Hazardous Waste Site Program (a.k.a, State Superfund). A figure showing the Site location is provided in Figure 1. The boundaries and features of the seven-acre Site are presented on Figure 2. The boundaries of the site are more fully described in the metes and bounds site description that is part of the Environmental Notice (EN).

After completion of the remedial work described in the Remedial Action Work Plan (RAWP), some contamination was left in the subsurface at this Site, which is hereafter referred to as ‘remaining contamination.” This Site Management Plan (SMP) was prepared to manage remaining contamination at the site. All reports associated with the Site can be viewed by contacting the NYSDEC or its successor agency managing environmental issues in New York State.

This SMP was prepared by Arcadis CE, Inc. (Arcadis), on behalf of NYSDEC, in accordance with the requirements in NYSDEC DER-10 Technical Guidance for Site Investigation and Remediation, dated May 3, 2010, and the guidelines provided by NYSDEC. This SMP addresses the means for implementing the Institutional Controls (ICs) and maintaining the Engineering Controls (ECs) that are required by the Environmental Notice for the Site.

1.1.2 Purpose

The Site contains contamination left after completion of the remedial action. Engineering Controls have been incorporated into the Site remedy to control exposure to remaining contamination during the use of the Site to ensure protection of public health and the environment. An EN granted by the NYSDEC, and recorded with the Tioga County Clerk, will require compliance with this SMP and all ECs and ICs placed on the Site. The ICs place restrictions on Site use, and mandate operation, maintenance, monitoring and reporting measures for all ECs and ICs. This SMP specifies the methods necessary ensure compliance with all ECs and ICs required by the EN for contamination that remains at the Site. This plan has been approved by the NYSDEC, and compliance with this plan is required by the NYSDEC. This SMP may only be revised with the approval of the NYSDEC.

This SMP provides a detailed description of all procedures required to manage remaining contamination at the Site after completion of the Remedial Action, including: (1) implementation and management of all Engineering and Institutional Controls; (2) media monitoring; (3) operation and maintenance of all treatment, collection, containment, or recovery systems; (4) performance of periodic inspections, certification of results, and submittal of Periodic Review Reports (PRR); and (5) defining criteria for termination of treatment system operations.

To address these needs, this SMP includes three plans: (1) an Engineering and Institutional Control Plan for implementation and management of EC/ICs; (2) a Monitoring Plan for implementation of Site Monitoring; (3) an Operation and Maintenance (O&M) Plan for implementation of remedial collection, containment, treatment, and recovery systems (including, where appropriate, preparation of an O&M Manual for complex systems).

This plan also includes a description of PRRs for the periodic submittal of data, information, recommendations, and certifications to NYSDEC.

It is important to note that:

- This SMP details the site-specific implementation procedures that are required by the EN. Failure to properly implement the SMP is a violation of the EN;
- Failure to comply with this SMP is also a violation of Environmental Conservation Law, 6NYCRR Part 375 and the Order on Consent (#A702068909) for the Site, and thereby subject to applicable penalties.

1.1.3 Revisions

Revisions to this plan will be proposed in writing to the NYSDEC's project manager. In accordance with the EN for the Site, the NYSDEC will provide a notice of any approved changes to the SMP, and append these notices to the SMP that is retained in its files.

1.2 SITE BACKGROUND

1.2.1 Site Location and Description

The Site is located in the Town of Owego, County of Tioga, New York and is identified as Tax Parcel 128.07-2-7 on the Municipality of Owego Tax Map. The Site is an approximately seven-acre area bounded by a railroad main line to the north, Foundry Street and a non-for-profit organization called Beds 4 Kids to the south, a former foundry to the east, and vacant land to the west (see Figure 2).

1.2.2 Site History

The Tioga Castings facility began operations on site between 1945 and 1947 and continued through 1988. The facility operated a cupola-type foundry for the production of gray iron castings. Operations at the facility included smelting of pig iron, scrap iron (including engine blocks), coke, limestone and the use of phenol-formaldehyde treated sand to cast the iron. The process produced solid wastes which included sand molds, bentonite, fly ash, cast iron grindings, and fine baghouse ash/cupola dust. These wastes were reportedly disposed of at an off-site landfill until March 1979, when the facility began operating an on-site landfill for the disposal of its foundry wastes. The facility ceased operations in 1988. The following materials were left on-site; sand casts, various drums, one-ton plastic lined bags of cupola dust, as well as the material contained in the on-site landfill. On July 11, 1989, a fire destroyed most of the foundry structure and left the remaining building structurally unsafe.

Due to the conditions at the site, two Interim Remedial Measures (IRMs) were carried out to address potential physical/chemical hazards. In the fall of 1989, a perimeter fence was installed to limit access to the property. By early 1990, the drums, which had been left on site, were removed from the site and disposed of properly.

In addition, analytical results from a landfill surface soil sample showed a total lead concentration on 15,000 ppm. A temporary cover was placed over the landfill in August 1991 in order to minimize the potential for the erosion (wind, surface water) of this material.

A Record of Decision (ROD) was signed for the Site in 1995 (NYSDEC 1995). The remedy included the following items:

- Consolidation of on-site and off-site soil and waste piles that contained concentrations greater than the cleanup goals for the site in the on-site landfill;
- Maintain deed restrictions to prevent Site development in areas of the site where contaminated material was present;
- Placement of a low permeability cover over the on-site landfill;
- Maintain a fence around the on-site landfill to limit site access;
- Cleaning and filling an on-site septic tank with cement;
- Operation and maintenance of the remedy;
- Groundwater monitoring; and
- Site-specific cleanup goals for cadmium, chromium and lead as listed below:

Table 1 - Soil Cleanup Objectives for the Site

	SOIL	GROUNDWATER
Cadmium	10 ppm	10 ppb
Chromium	50 ppm	50 ppb
Lead	250 ppm to 12” 500 ppm below 12”	25 ppb

The landfill closure was completed in 1997.

Asbestos-containing materials in piles of debris and in a former building structure were identified at the Site and removed in 2001.

In June 2007, a NYSDEC-approved Work Plan (developed by Malcolm Pirnie, Inc.) was implemented with site-specific operation and maintenance (O&M) and groundwater monitoring procedures.

Additional investigations were performed at the site between 2008 and 2009 to support reclassification of the site from Class 2 to Class 4 on the NYSDEC Registry of Inactive Waste sites, including:

- In July 2008, an investigation was initiated at the request of the NYSDEC to evaluate if subsurface soil contained volatile organic compounds (VOCs), semi-volatile organic compounds (SVOCs), polychlorinated biphenyls (PCBs), or metals at concentrations greater than the respective NYSDEC Standards or site-specific cleanup criteria. Groundwater samples were collected during the investigation and submitted for analysis of VOC and metals. Sub-slab soil vapor samples were also collected from beneath the former foundry building slab to evaluate potential soil vapor intrusion (SVI) pathways.
- Soil borings were also advanced to evaluate the concentrations of VOCs, metals, and PCBs in the landfill cell. Soil borings were advanced through the engineered cap and liner, landfill cell, and to the water table. No liner was observed at the base of the landfill cell in any of the soil borings.

- Three new groundwater monitoring wells were installed in October 2008 to provide additional information on groundwater quality; however, groundwater samples were not collected at the time of the installations due to constraints in the Work Assignment budget.
- In April 2009, the NYSDEC collected groundwater samples from the monitoring well network for analysis of VOCs, SVOCs, and metals.
- In July 2009, surface soil samples were collected from the Site to evaluate the potential for surface soil to be an exposure route to site related contaminants.

A SMP was prepared by Malcolm Pirnie (now Arcadis) and accepted by the NYSDEC in October 2009. In December 2010, a limited SVI investigation was performed to evaluate potential sources of VOCs identified in sub-slab air samples collected in 2008. None of the sub-slab soil vapor samples collected during the 2010 SVI investigation contained concentrations of VOCs greater than the respective New York State Department of Health (NYSDOH) Guidance values.

In January 2011, groundwater monitoring well MW-6 was installed on an adjacent property north of the site to provide additional information on groundwater quality and groundwater flow direction.

In August 2011, the boundaries of the site were reduced to only include the approximately one-acre landfill.

In September 2011, an inspection was performed to assess the site for any damage caused by Tropical Storm Lee. Based on the inspection, the north and south sides of the landfill perimeter slopes contained evidence of soil failure and minor slumping. A Work Plan was submitted by Arcadis to repair the landfill slopes and inspect the liner cover system.

In June 2012, an EN was issued that restricts excavation or disturbance of the ECs; restricts interference or changes to the ECs without prior written permission; limits property uses; and restricts groundwater usage.

The NYSDEC approved the September 2011 Work Plan for inspection and repair of the landfill cap and the work commenced in February 2013. During the inspection, portions of the high-density polyethylene (HDPE) liner were exposed to assess for damage. No liner perforations were observed, however, in areas where soil failure occurred, the liner was found to contain folds and wrinkles. The areas were repaired, and the integrity of the repairs was then tested using a vacuum box. Liner repairs and cap restoration were completed in March 2013 (Arcadis 2013).

During September and October 2014, six monitoring wells that were no longer required for monitoring were abandoned (MW-1R, MW-2, MW-3, MW-5, MW-7, and MW-8). One new monitoring well, MW-9, was installed to provide groundwater data on the eastern side of the landfill. Since then, O&M and monitoring activities have been completed in accordance with the SMP.

1.2.3 Geologic Conditions

Based on the United States Geological Survey (USGS) surficial geology maps for the region (Reynolds and Garry, 1988), the surficial geology in the vicinity of the Site contains outwash sand and gravel consisting of stratified, well-sorted sand and gravel from glacial melt water deposits, overlain by alluvial silt from post-glacial stream and channel deposits.

Soil borings advanced during the July 2008 investigation generally contained fill material consisting of sand, metal fragments, slag, glass, ash, concrete and wood. Where present, the fill material ranged from 0.5 feet to 14.5 ft below ground surface (bgs) and generally decreased in thickness from west to east across the site. Soil beneath the fill generally consisted of stratified, well-sorted, silty sand and gravel (Malcolm Pirnie, 2008).

Groundwater below the site is generally encountered at approximately 10 to 15 feet bgs, however there are seasonal fluctuations and the depth to groundwater can be shallower in the spring. Groundwater flow direction is generally to the south-southeast towards the Susquehanna River.

1.3 SUMMARY OF REMEDIAL INVESTIGATION FINDINGS

A Remedial Investigation (RI) was performed to characterize the nature and extent of contamination at the Site. The results of the RI are described in detail in the following reports:

- Record of Decision Tioga Castings Site Village of Owego, Tioga County Site Number 7-54-012 (March 1995).

Generally, the RI determined that high levels of lead and cadmium were detected in the soil and groundwater on the Site. Below is a summary of Site conditions when the RI was performed in 1993:

Soil

- High levels of metals, specifically lead and cadmium, were found in soils on Site and adjacent to the Site.
- Sediment samples were collected from floor drains and a septic tank on Site. Concentrations of lead and cadmium were present.

Site-Related Groundwater

Five monitoring wells were installed around the perimeter of the Site. Two rounds of groundwater sampling took place on April 1993 and December 1993. High levels of lead and cadmium were detected in the water.

Site-Related Soil Vapor Intrusion

Soil vapor samples were not collected during the remedial investigation.

Underground Storage Tanks

No underground storage tanks are on the Site other than the septic tank described above where sediment samples were collected.

1.4 SUMMARY OF REMEDIAL ACTIONS

The Site was remediated in accordance with the NYSDEC-approved RAWP dated March 1995.

The following is a summary of the Remedial Actions performed at the Site:

1. Excavation of soil/fill exceeding site-specific Soil Cleanup Objectives (SCOs) listed in Table 1;
2. Construction and maintenance of a soil cover system \ to prevent human exposure to remaining contaminated soil/fill remaining at the Site;
3. Execution and recording of an EN to restrict land use and prevent future exposure to any contamination remaining at the Site.
4. Development and implementation of a SMP for long term management of remaining contamination as required by the EN, which includes plans for: (1) Institutional and Engineering Controls, (2) monitoring, (3) operation and maintenance and (4) reporting.

1.4.1 Removal of Contaminated Materials from the Site

A list of the SCOs for the primary contaminants of concern (COCs) and applicable land use for this Site is provided in Table 1.

A figure showing areas where excavation was performed is shown in Figure 2.

1.4.2 Site-Related Treatment Systems

No long-term treatment systems were installed as part of the Site remedy.

1.4.3 Remaining Contamination

The goals for the Site remedy were developed to establish the land for commercial/industrial use in addition to the following:

1. Eliminate, to the extent possible, the potential for direct human and wildlife contact with contaminated soil.

The remedial actions were developed to excavate and/or consolidate materials impacted with metals that could be effectively achieved and develop a cover over areas where impacted materials may still be present. The materials below the concrete slab and below the landfill cover are known to still be impacted by metal contamination. However, they are not readily accessible by humans or wildlife.

Based on subsurface soil samples collected in July 2008, none of the samples contained VOCs or SVOC at concentrations greater than Commercial SCOs for the respective compounds. Metals were analyzed in 28 soil samples. Arsenic, lead and manganese concentrations exceeded the Commercial SCOs in three of the soil samples and copper concentrations exceeded the Commercial SCOs in two of the soil samples. Lead and chromium (hexavalent/trivalent) concentrations exceeded the Site-Specific Cleanup Objectives, but were below the Commercial SCOs surface soil samples collected form the site in July 2009 to evaluate if surface soil was an exposure route to site-related contaminants. Six surface soil samples were collected from areas of the site known to have contained piles of debris, coal, or concentrations of metals in subsurface soil or groundwater greater than the respective 6NYCRR Part 375, NYSDEC Class GA, or site-specific, cleanup goals. In addition, five surface soil samples were collected from off-site locations for a comparison of background concentrations of metals in the vicinity of the site in accordance with the NYSDEC Division of Environmental Remediation Draft DER-10 Technical Guidance for Site Investigation and Remediation (DER-10) and in consultation with NYSDEC and New York State Department of Health (NYSDOH) representatives. Only one on-site surface soil sample contained lead at a concentration greater than the corresponding site-specific cleanup goal. None of the surface soil samples contained metals concentrations greater than the respective Commercial SCOs.

2.0 ENGINEERING AND INSTITUTIONAL CONTROL PLAN

2.1 INTRODUCTION

2.1.1 General

Since remaining contaminated soil and groundwater exists beneath the Site, Engineering Controls and Institutional Controls (EC/ICs) are required to protect human health and the environment. This EC/IC Plan describes the procedures for the implementation and management of all EC/ICs at the Site. The EC/IC Plan is one component of the SMP and is subject to revision by NYSDEC.

2.1.2 Purpose

This plan provides:

- A description of all EC/ICs on the Site;
- The basic implementation and intended role of each EC/IC;
- A description of the key components of the ICs set forth in the EN;
- A description of the features to be evaluated during each required inspection and periodic review;
- A description of plans and procedures to be followed for implementation of EC/ICs, such as the implementation of the Excavation Work Plan for the proper handling of remaining contamination that may be disturbed during maintenance or redevelopment work on the Site; and
- Any other provisions necessary to identify or establish methods for implementing the EC/ICs required by the Site remedy, as determined by the NYSDEC.

2.2 ENGINEERING CONTROLS

2.2.1 Engineering Control Systems

2.2.1.1 Cap

Exposure to remaining contamination in soil/fill at the Site is prevented by a soil cover system placed over the landfill. According the NYSDEC Tioga Castings

Remediation Summary Report from 1998, a "foundation layer" was placed over the consolidated landfill wastes (NYSDEC 1998). The remainder of the landfill cover system (from bottom to top) consists of a 60-mil HDPE liner, geo-composite drainage material, approximately two feet of compacted barrier protection soil, and six inches of topsoil. The Excavation Work Plan (EWP) that appears in Appendix A outlines the procedures required to be implemented in the event the cover system is breached, penetrated or temporarily removed, and any underlying remaining contamination is disturbed.

2.2.2 Criteria for Completion of Remediation/Termination of Remedial Systems

Generally, remedial processes are considered completed when effectiveness monitoring indicates that the remedy has achieved the remedial action objectives identified by the decision document. The framework for determining when remedial processes are complete is provided in Section 6.6 of NYSDEC DER-10.

2.2.2.1 Composite Cover System

The composite cover system is a permanent control and the quality and integrity of this system will be inspected at defined, regular intervals in perpetuity.

2.3 INSTITUTIONAL CONTROLS

A series of Institutional Controls is required by the ROD to: (1) implement, maintain and monitor Engineering Control systems; (2) prevent future exposure to remaining contamination by controlling disturbances of the subsurface contamination; and, (3) limit the use and development of the Site to commercial uses only. Adherence to these ICs on the Site is required by the EN and will be implemented under this SMP. These ICs are:

- Compliance with the EN and this SMP by the Grantor and the Grantor's successors and assigns;
- All ECs must be operated and maintained as specified in this SMP;
- All ECs on the Controlled Property must be inspected at a frequency and in a manner defined in the SMP.

- Groundwater and other environmental or public health monitoring must be performed as defined in this SMP;
- Data and information pertinent to Site Management of the Controlled Property must be reported at the frequency and in a manner defined in this SMP;

Institutional Controls identified in the EN may not be discontinued without an amendment to or extinguishment of the EN.

The Site has a series of ICs in the form of Site restrictions. Adherence to these ICs is required by the EN. Site restrictions that apply to the Controlled Property are:

- The property may only be used for commercial use provided that the long-term EC/IC included in this SMP are employed.
- The property may not be used for a higher level of use, such as unrestricted residential use without additional remediation and amendment of the EN, as approved by the NYSDEC;
- All future activities on the property that will disturb remaining contaminated material must be conducted in accordance with this SMP;
- The use of the groundwater underlying the property is prohibited without treatment rendering it safe for intended use;
- Vegetable gardens and farming on the property are prohibited;
- The Site owner or remedial party will submit to NYSDEC a written statement that certifies, under penalty of perjury, that: (1) controls employed at the Controlled Property are unchanged from the previous certification or that any changes to the controls were approved by the NYSDEC; and, (2) nothing has occurred that impairs the ability of the controls to protect public health and environment or that constitute a violation or failure to comply with the SMP. NYSDEC retains the right to access such Controlled Property at any time in order to evaluate the continued maintenance of any and all controls. This certification shall be submitted annually, or an alternate period of time that NYSDEC may allow and will be made by an expert that the NYSDEC finds acceptable.

2.3.1 Excavation Work Plan

Any future intrusive work that will penetrate the soil cover or cap, or encounter or disturb the remaining contamination, including any modifications or repairs to the existing cover system will be performed in compliance with the Excavation Work Plan (EWP) that is attached as Appendix A to this SMP. Any work conducted pursuant to the EWP must also be conducted in accordance with the procedures defined in a Health and Safety Plan (HASP) and Community Air Monitoring Plan (CAMP) prepared for the Site. The HASP and CAMP must be developed for the specific activities planned for the site and must be in compliance with DER-10, and 29 CFR 1910, 29 CFR 1926, and all other applicable Federal, State and local regulations. Based on future changes to State and federal health and safety requirements, and specific methods employed by future contractors, the HASP and CAMP will be updated and re-submitted with the notification provided in Section A-1 of the EWP. All intrusive construction work will be performed in compliance with the EWP, HASP and CAMP, and will be included in the periodic inspection and certification reports submitted under the Site Management Reporting Plan (See Section 5).

The Site owner and associated parties preparing the remedial documents submitted to the State, and parties performing this work, are completely responsible for the safe performance of all intrusive work, the structural integrity of excavations, proper disposal of excavation de-water, control of runoff from open excavations into remaining contamination, and for structures that may be affected by excavations (such as building foundations and bridge footings). The Site owner will ensure that Site development activities will not interfere with, or otherwise impair or compromise, the engineering controls described in this SMP.

2.3.2 Soil Vapor Intrusion Evaluation

Prior to the construction of any enclosed structures located over areas that contain remaining contamination and the potential for soil vapor intrusion (SVI) has been identified , an SVI evaluation will be performed to determine whether any mitigation measures are necessary to eliminate potential exposure to vapors in the proposed structure. Alternatively, an SVI mitigation system may be installed as an element of the building foundation without first conducting an investigation. This mitigation system will include a vapor barrier and passive sub-slab depressurization system that is capable of being converted to an active system.

Prior to conducting an SVI investigation or installing a mitigation system, a work plan will be developed and submitted to the NYSDEC and NYSDOH for approval. This work plan will be developed in accordance with the most recent NYSDOH "Guidance for Evaluating Vapor Intrusion in the State of New York". Measures to be employed to mitigate potential vapor intrusion will be evaluated, selected, designed, installed, and maintained based on the SVI evaluation, the NYSDOH guidance, and construction details of the proposed structure.

Preliminary (unvalidated) SVI sampling data will be forwarded to the NYSDEC and NYSDOH for initial review and interpretation. Upon validation, the final data will be transmitted to the agencies, along with a recommendation for follow-up action, such as mitigation.

SVI sampling results, evaluations, and follow-up actions will also be summarized in the next Periodic Review Report.

2.4 INSPECTIONS AND NOTIFICATIONS

2.4.1 Inspections

Inspections of all remedial components installed at the Site will be conducted at the frequency specified in the SMP Monitoring Plan schedule. A comprehensive site-wide inspection will be conducted semi-annually, regardless of the frequency of the Periodic Review Report. The inspections will determine and document the following:

- Whether ECs continue to perform as designed;
- If these controls continue to be protective of human health and the environment;
- Compliance with requirements of this SMP and the EN;
- Achievement of remedial performance criteria;
- Sampling and analysis of appropriate media during monitoring events;
- If Site records are complete and up to date; and
- Changes, or needed changes, to the remedial or monitoring system;

Inspections will be conducted in accordance with the procedures set forth in the Monitoring Plan of this SMP (Section 3). The reporting requirements are outlined in the Periodic Review Reporting section of this plan (Section 5).

If an emergency, such as a natural disaster or an unforeseen failure of any of the ECs occurs, an inspection of the Site will be conducted within 5 days of the event to verify the effectiveness of the EC/ICs implemented at the Site by a qualified environmental professional as determined by NYSDEC.

2.4.2 Notifications

Notifications will be submitted by the property owner to the NYSDEC as needed for the following reasons:

- 60-day advance notice of any proposed changes in Site use that are required under the terms of the ROD, 6NYCRR Part 375, and/or Environmental Conservation Law.
- 7-day advance notice of any proposed ground-intrusive activities pursuant to the Excavation Work Plan.
- Notice within 48-hours of any damage or defect to the foundation, structures or engineering control that reduces or has the potential to reduce the effectiveness of an Engineering Control and likewise any action to be taken to mitigate the damage or defect.
- Verbal notice by noon of the following day of any emergency, such as a fire, flood, or earthquake that reduces or has the potential to reduce the effectiveness of Engineering Controls in place at the Site, with written confirmation within 7 days that includes a summary of actions taken, or to be taken, and the potential impact to the environment and the public.
- Follow-up status reports on actions taken to respond to any emergency event requiring ongoing responsive action shall be submitted to the NYSDEC within 45 days and shall describe and document actions taken to restore the effectiveness of the ECs.

Any change in the ownership of the Site or the responsibility for implementing this SMP will include the following notifications:

- At least 60 days prior to the change, the NYSDEC will be notified in writing of the proposed change. This will include a certification that the prospective purchaser has been provided with a copy of the ROD, and all approved work plans and reports, including this SMP

- Within 15 days after the transfer of all or part of the site, the new owner's name, contact representative, and contact information will be confirmed in writing.

2.5 CONTINGENCY PLAN

Emergencies may include injury to personnel, fire or explosion, environmental release, or serious weather conditions.

2.5.1 Emergency Telephone Numbers

In the event of any environmentally related situation or unplanned occurrence requiring assistance the Owner or Owner's representative(s) should contact the appropriate party from the contact list below. For emergencies, appropriate emergency response personnel should be contacted. Prompt contact should also be made to Arcadis CE, Inc. These emergency contact lists must be maintained in an easily accessible location at the site.

Table 2: Emergency Contact Numbers

Medical, Fire, and Police:	911
One Call Center:	(800) 272-4480 (3-day notice required for utility markout)
Poison Control Center:	(800) 222-1222
Pollution Toxic Chemical Oil Spills:	(800) 424-8802
NYSDEC Spills Hotline	(800) 457-7362

Table 3: Other Contact Numbers

Payson Long, NYSDEC Project Manager	518-402-9813

* Note: Contact numbers subject to change and should be updated as necessary

2.5.2 Map and Directions to Nearest Health Facility

Site Location: Foundry Street

Nearest Hospital Name: Owego Family Care Center – United Hospital

Hospital Location: 231 Main Street Owego, NY 13827

Hospital Telephone: 607-687-8601

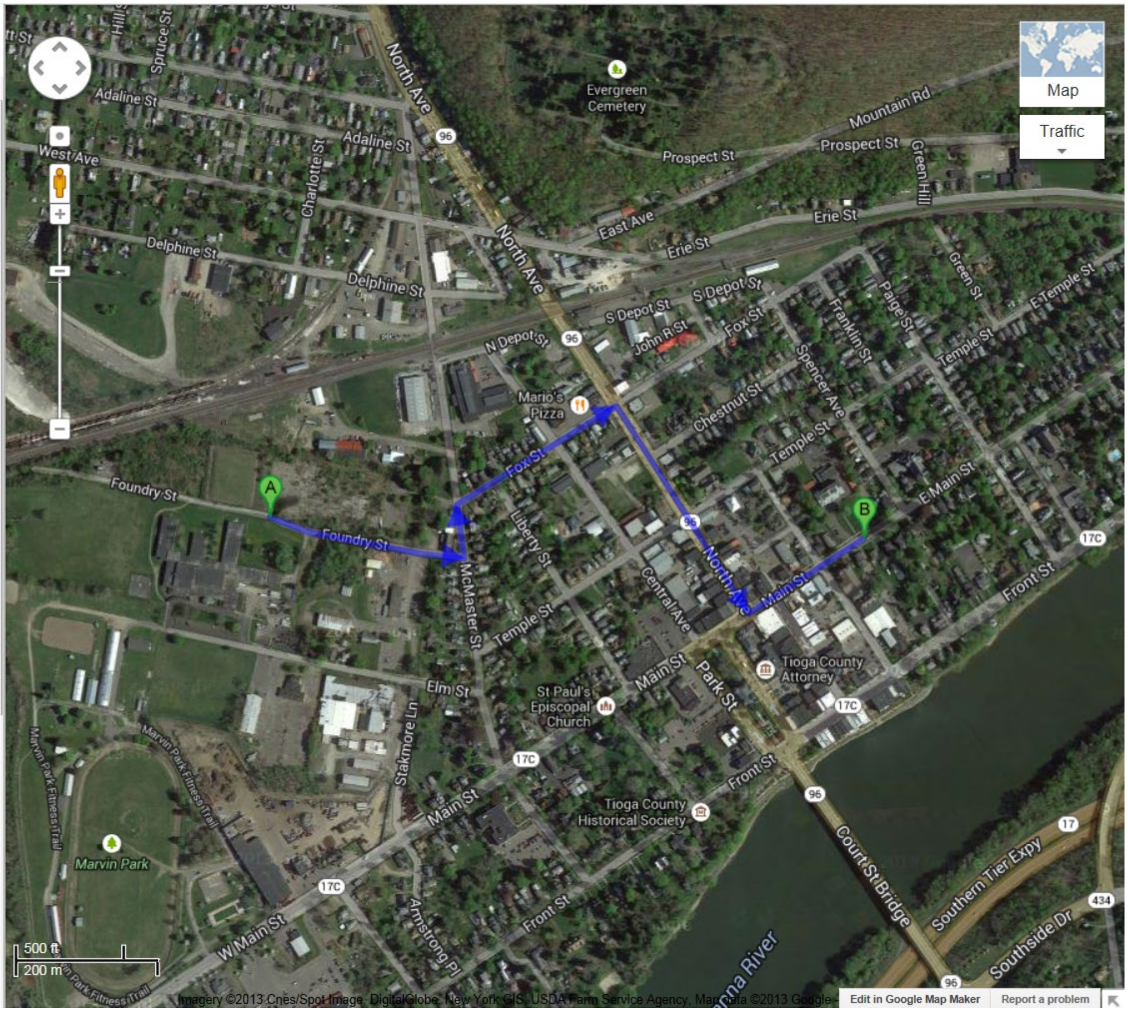
Directions to the Hospital:

1. Head east on Foundry Street toward McMaster Street
2. Turn left onto McMaster Street
3. Take the first right onto Fox Street
4. Take the third right onto North Avenue
5. Turn left onto Main Street, destination will be on the left.

Total Distance: 0.8 miles

Total Estimated Time: 4 minutes

Map Showing Route from the site to the Hospital (From Google Maps):



2.5.3 Response Procedures

As appropriate, the fire department and other emergency response group will be notified immediately by telephone of the emergency. The emergency telephone number list is found at the beginning of this Contingency Plan (Table 2). The list will also be posted prominently at the Site and made readily available to all personnel at all times. In the event of an emergency all personnel on-site will assemble at the intersection of Foundry and McMaster Streets. The Site HASP is provided in Appendix D for reference only.

3.0 SITE MONITORING PLAN

3.1 INTRODUCTION

3.1.1 General

The Monitoring Plan describes the measures for evaluating the performance and effectiveness of the remedy to reduce or mitigate contamination at the Site, the soil cover system, and all affected site media identified below. This Monitoring Plan may only be revised with the approval of NYSDEC.

3.1.2 Purpose and Schedule

This Monitoring Plan describes the methods to be used for:

- Sampling and analysis of all appropriate media (e.g., groundwater, indoor air, soil vapor, soils);
- Assessing compliance with applicable NYSDEC standards, criteria and guidance, particularly ambient groundwater standards and Part 375 SCOs for soil;
- Assessing achievement of the remedial performance criteria.
- Evaluating Site information periodically to confirm that the remedy continues to be effective in protecting public health and the environment; and
- Preparing the necessary reports for the various monitoring activities.

To adequately address these issues, this Monitoring Plan provides information on:

- Sampling locations, protocol, and frequency;
- Information on all designed monitoring systems (e.g., well logs);
- Analytical sampling program requirements;
- Reporting requirements;
- Quality Assurance/Quality Control (QA/QC) requirements;
- Inspection and maintenance requirements for monitoring wells;
- Monitoring well decommissioning procedures; and
- Annual inspection and periodic certification.

Every five-quarters monitoring of the performance of the remedy will be conducted. The frequency thereafter will be determined by NYSDEC. Trends in contaminant levels in air, soil, and/or groundwater in the affected areas, will be evaluated to determine if the remedy continues to be effective in achieving remedial goals. Monitoring programs are summarized in Table 4 and outlined in detail in Sections 3.2 and 3.3 below.

Table 4: Monitoring/Inspection Schedule

Monitoring Program	Frequency*	Matrix	Analysis
Groundwater	5-Quarters	Groundwater	Total and Dissolved Metals** (by USEPA Method 6010C), Mercury (by USEPA Method 7470A)
Site Inspections	Semi-annual	Inspection	Assessment of Site conditions, Landfill conditions

* The frequency of events will be conducted as specified until otherwise approved by NYSDEC and NYSDOH.

** Dissolved metals collected if turbidity is greater than 50 Nephelometric Turbidity Units (NTU).

A summary of groundwater analytical from 2009 to 2018 is presented on Tables 5 and 6.

3.2 COVER SYSTEM MONITORING

The landfill cover will be mowed on an annual basis to reduce the potential for large, woody vegetation from compromising the integrity of the landfill cap system. The landfill cap is currently mowed by the NYSDEC Operations Department. A visual inspection of the landfill cover will be performed semi-annually to assess the site for burrowing rodents, erosion, woody vegetation, and settlement. It is anticipated that one of the semi-annual inspection events will be concurrent with the five-quarter sampling event. An Inspection checklist is provided in Appendix E.

3.3 MEDIA MONITORING PROGRAM

3.3.1 Groundwater Monitoring

Groundwater samples will be collected from all existing groundwater monitoring wells. Figure 2 shows the locations of the wells to be included in the groundwater monitoring events. Groundwater samples will be collected from wells MW-3D, MW-4, MW-6, and MW-9 on a five-quarter basis to provide information on seasonal groundwater quality over time. The sampling frequency may be modified with the approval NYSDEC. The SMP will be modified to reflect changes in sampling plans approved by NYSDEC.

3.3.1.1 Sampling Protocol

Groundwater samples will be collected accordance with the United States Environmental Protection Agency (USEPA) Low Flow-Low Purge Sampling Protocol (1998). A peristaltic pump will be used to collect the groundwater samples. Prior to sampling, the water level will be measured using an electronic water level probe. Field parameters including pH, specific conductivity, temperature, turbidity, oxidation-reduction potential (ORP), and dissolved oxygen will be measured during well purging using a flow-through cell system. Purged groundwater will be visually assessed for the potential presence of non-aqueous phase liquid (NAPL).

Groundwater samples will be sent to a NYSDOH Environmental Laboratory Approval Program (ELAP) and NYSDEC Analytical Services Protocol (ASP)-approved analytical laboratory under chain-of-custody procedures for analysis of Target Analyte List (TAL) metals by USEPA Method 6010C (or the most recent update), and Mercury by USEPA Method 7470A.

If the turbidity of the groundwater samples is greater than 50 Nephelometric Turbidity Units (NTUs) at the conclusion of well purging, total (unfiltered) and dissolved (filtered) fraction groundwater samples will be collected. The dissolved fraction groundwater samples will be filtered using a 0.45 micron in-line disposable filter.

3.3.1.2 Monitoring Well Repairs, Replacement and Decommissioning

If biofouling or silt accumulation occurs in the on-site and/or off-site monitoring wells, the wells will be physically agitated/surged and redeveloped. Additionally, monitoring wells will be properly decommissioned and replaced (as per the Monitoring Plan), if an event renders the wells unusable.

Repairs and/or replacement of wells in the monitoring well network will be performed based on assessments of structural integrity and overall performance.

The NYSDEC will be notified prior to any repair or decommissioning of monitoring wells for the purpose of replacement, and the repair or decommissioning and replacement process will be documented in the subsequent periodic report. Well decommissioning without replacement will be done only with the prior approval of NYSDEC. Well abandonment will be performed in accordance with NYSDEC's "Groundwater Monitoring Well Decommissioning Procedures." Monitoring wells that are decommissioned because they have been rendered unusable will be reinstalled in the nearest available location, unless otherwise approved by the NYSDEC.

3.4 SITE-WIDE INSPECTION

Site-wide inspections will be performed on a regular schedule at a minimum of once a year. Site-wide inspections will also be performed after all severe weather conditions that may affect ECs or monitoring devices. During these inspections, an inspection form will be completed (Appendix E). The form will compile sufficient information to assess the following:

- Compliance with all ICs, including Site usage;
- An evaluation of the condition and continued effectiveness of ECs;
- General site conditions at the time of the inspection;
- The Site management activities being conducted including, where appropriate, confirmation sampling and a health and safety inspection;
- Compliance with permits and schedules included in the O&M Plan; and
- Confirm that site records are up to date.

3.5 MONITORING QUALITY ASSURANCE/QUALITY CONTROL

All sampling and analyses will be performed in accordance with the requirements of the Quality Assurance Project Plan (QAPP) prepared for the site (Appendix F). Main Components of the QAPP include:

- QA/QC Objectives for Data Measurement;
- Sampling Program:
    - Sample containers will be properly washed, decontaminated, and appropriate preservative will be added (if applicable) prior to their use by the analytical laboratory. Containers with preservative will be tagged as such.
    - Sample holding times will be in accordance with the NYSDEC ASP requirements.
    - Field QC samples (e.g., trip blanks, coded field duplicates, and matrix spike/matrix spike duplicates) will be collected as necessary.
- Sample Tracking and Custody;
- Calibration Procedures:
    - The laboratory will follow all calibration procedures and schedules as specified in USEPA SW-846 and subsequent updates that apply to the instruments used for the analytical methods.
- Analytical Procedures;
    - Internal QC and Checks;
    - QA Performance and System Audits;
- Preventative Maintenance Procedures and Schedules;
- Corrective Action Measures.

3.6 MONITORING REPORTING REQUIREMENTS

Forms and any other information generated during regular monitoring events and inspections will be maintained in the project file. All forms, and other relevant reporting formats used during the monitoring/inspection events, will be (1) subject to approval by

NYSDEC and (2) submitted at the time of the PRR, as specified in the Reporting Plan of this SMP.

All monitoring results will be reported to NYSDEC on a periodic basis in the PRR. A report will also be prepared subsequent to each sampling event. The report will include, at a minimum:

- Date of event;
- Personnel conducting sampling;
- Description of the activities performed;
- Type of samples collected (e.g., sub-slab vapor, indoor air, outdoor air, etc);
- Copies of all field forms completed (e.g., well sampling logs, chain-of-custody documentation, etc.);
- Sampling results in comparison to appropriate standards/criteria;
- A figure illustrating sample type and sampling locations;
- Copies of all laboratory data sheets and the required laboratory data deliverables required for all points sampled (to be submitted electronically in the NYSDEC-identified format);
- Any observations, conclusions, or recommendations; and
- A determination as to whether groundwater conditions have changed since the last reporting event.

Data will be reported in hard copy or digital format as determined by NYSDEC. A summary of the monitoring program deliverables are summarized in Table 7 below.

Table 7: Schedule of Monitoring/Inspection Reports

Task	**Reporting Frequency***
Landfill Inspection	Semi-annually
Groundwater Monitoring	Every 5 quarters

* The frequency of events will be conducted as specified until otherwise approved by NYSDEC.

4.0 OPERATION AND MAINTENANCE PLAN

4.1 INTRODUCTION

The site remedy does not rely on any mechanical systems, such as sub-slab depressurization systems or air sparge/ soil vapor extraction systems to protect public health and the environment. Therefore, the operation and maintenance of such components is not included in this SMP.

Information on non-mechanical Engineering Controls (i.e. soil cover system) is provided in Section 3 - Engineering and Institutional Control Plan. A copy of this Operation and Maintenance Plan, along with the complete SMP, will be kept with the NYSDEC Project Manager. This Operation and Maintenance Plan is not to be used as a stand-alone document, but as a component document of the SMP.

4.2 MAINTENANCE AND PERFORMANCE MONITORING REPORTING REQUIREMENTS

Maintenance reports and any other information generated during regular operations at the site will be kept on-file on-site. All reports, forms, and other relevant information generated will be available upon request to the NYSDEC and submitted as part of the PRR, as specified in the Section 5 of this SMP.

4.2.1 Routine Maintenance Reports

Checklists or forms (see Appendix E) will be completed during each routine maintenance event. Checklists/forms will include, but not be limited to the following information:

- Date;
- Name, company, and position of person(s) conducting maintenance activities;
- Maintenance activities conducted;
- Any modifications to the system;

- Where appropriate, color photographs or sketches showing the approximate location of any problems or incidents noted (included either on the checklist/form or on an attached sheet); and,
- Other documentation such as copies of invoices for maintenance work, receipts for replacement equipment, etc., (attached to the checklist/form).

4.2.2 Non-Routine Maintenance Reports

During each non-routine maintenance event, a form will be completed which will include, but not be limited to, the following information:

- Date;
- Name, company, and position of person(s) conducting non-routine maintenance/repair activities;
- Presence of leaks;
- Date of leak repair;
- Other repairs or adjustments made to the system;
- Where appropriate, color photographs or sketches showing the approximate location of any problems or incidents (included either on the form or on an attached sheet); and,
- Other documentation such as copies of invoices for repair work, receipts for replacement equipment, etc. (attached to the checklist/form).

5.0 INSPECTIONS, REPORTING AND CERTIFICATIONS

5.1 SITE INSPECTIONS

5.1.1 Inspection Frequency

All inspections will be conducted at the frequency specified in the schedules provided in Section 3 Monitoring Plan and Section 4 Operation and Maintenance Plan of this SMP. At a minimum, a site-wide inspection will be conducted semi-annually. Inspections of remedial components will also be conducted when a breakdown of any treatment system component has occurred or whenever a severe condition has taken place, such as an erosion or flooding event that may affect the ECs.

5.1.2 Inspection Forms, Sampling Data, and Maintenance Reports

All inspections and monitoring events will be recorded on the appropriate forms for their respective system which are contained in Appendix E which includes a general site-wide inspection form will be completed during the site-wide inspection. These forms are subject to NYSDEC revision.

All applicable inspection forms and other records, including all media sampling data and system maintenance reports, generated for the site during the reporting period will be provided in electronic format in the PRR.

5.1.3 Evaluation of Records and Reporting

The results of the inspection and Site monitoring data will be evaluated as part of the EC/IC certification to confirm that the:

- EC/ICs are in place, are performing properly, and remain effective;
- The Site Monitoring Plan is being implemented;
- O&M activities are being conducted properly; and, based on the above items,
- The Site remedy continues to be protective of public health and the environment and is performing as designed in the RAWP and FER.

5.2 CERTIFICATION OF INSTITUTIONAL CONTROLS

After the last inspection of the reporting period, a Professional Engineer licensed to practice in New York State will prepare the following certification:

For each institutional or engineering control identified for the Site, I certify that all of the following statements are true:

- The inspection of the Site to confirm the effectiveness of the institutional and engineering controls required by the remedial program was performed under my direction;
- The institutional control and/or engineering control employed at this Site is unchanged from the date the control was put in place, or last approved by the Department;
- Nothing has occurred that would impair the ability of the control to protect the public health and environment;
- Nothing has occurred that would constitute a violation or failure to comply with any Site Management Plan for this control;
- Access to the Site will continue to be provided to the Department to evaluate the remedy, including access to evaluate the continued maintenance of this control;
- Use of the Site is compliant with the Environmental Notice;
- The engineering control systems are performing as designed and are effective;
- To the best of my knowledge and belief, the work and conclusions described in this certification are in accordance with the requirements of the Site remedial program and generally accepted engineering practices; and
- The information presented in this report is accurate and complete.
- I certify that all information and statements in this certification form are true. I understand that a false statement made herein is punishable as a Class "A" misdemeanor, pursuant to Section 210.45 of the Penal Law. I, [name], of [business], am certifying as [DESIGNATED SITE REPRESENTATIVE] for the site.

The signed certification will be included in the Periodic Review Report described below.

For each institutional identified for the Site, I certify that all of the following statements are true:

- The institutional control employed at this Site is unchanged from the date the control was put in place, or last approved by the Department;
- Nothing has occurred that would impair the ability of the control to protect the public health and environment;
- Nothing has occurred that would constitute a violation or failure to comply with any Site Management Plan for this control;
- Access to the Site will continue to be provided to the Department to evaluate the remedy, including access to evaluate the continued maintenance of this control;
- Use of the Site is compliant with the Environmental Notice.
- The information presented in this report is accurate and complete.
- I certify that all information and statements in this certification form are true. I understand that a false statement made herein is punishable as a Class "A" misdemeanor, pursuant to Section 210.45 of the Penal Law. I, [name], of [business], am certifying as [Designated Site Representative] [and I have been authorized and designated by all site owners to sign this certification] for the site.

5.3 PERIODIC REVIEW REPORT

A PRR will be submitted to the Department every three years. In the event that the Site is subdivided into separate parcels with different ownership, a single PRR will be prepared that addresses the Site. The report will be prepared in accordance with NYSDEC DER-10 and submitted within 30 days of the end of each certification period. Media sampling results will also be incorporated into the PRR. The report will include:

- Identification, assessment and certification of all ECs/ICs required by the remedy for the Site;
- Results of the required annual Site inspections and severe condition inspections, if applicable;
- All applicable inspection forms and other records generated for the Site during the reporting period in electronic format;

- A summary of any discharge monitoring data and/or information generated during the reporting period with comments and conclusions;
- Data summary tables and graphical representations of contaminants of concern by media (groundwater, soil vapor), which include a listing of all compounds analyzed, along with the applicable standards, with all exceedances highlighted. These will include a presentation of past data as part of an evaluation of contaminant concentration trends;
- Results of all analyses, copies of all laboratory data sheets, and the required laboratory data deliverables for all samples collected during the reporting period will be submitted electronically in a NYSDEC-approved format;
- A Site evaluation, which includes the following:
    - The compliance of the remedy with the requirements of the site-specific RAWP, ROD or Decision Document;
    - The operation and the effectiveness of all treatment units, etc., including identification of any needed repairs or modifications;
    - Any new conclusions or observations regarding Site contamination based on inspections or data generated by the Monitoring Plan for the media being monitored;
    - Recommendations regarding any necessary changes to the remedy and/or Monitoring Plan; and
    - The overall performance and effectiveness of the remedy.

The PRR will be submitted, in hard-copy format, to the NYSDEC Central Office and Regional Office in which the site is located, and in electronic format to NYSDEC Central Office, Regional Office and the NYSDOH Bureau of Environmental Exposure Investigation.

5.4 CORRECTIVE MEASURES PLAN

If any component of the remedy is found to have failed, or if the periodic certification cannot be provided due to the failure of an institutional or engineering control, a corrective measures plan will be submitted to the NYSDEC for approval. This plan will explain the failure and provide the details and schedule for performing work necessary to correct the failure. Unless an emergency condition exists, no work will be performed pursuant to the corrective measures plan until it is approved by the NYSDEC.

6.0 REFERENCES

Arcadis 2011. Site Management Plan, Tioga Castings Site, Oswego, Tioga County, NY. Site Number 7-54-012. April 2011.

Arcadis 2013. Tioga Castings Site Quarterly Report, Second Quarter 2013, NYSDEC Site Number 7-54-012, July 2013.

Arcadis 2015. Tioga Castings Site Quarterly Report, First Quarter 2015, NYSDEC Site Number 7-54-012, March 2015.

Malcolm Pirnie, Inc., 2008, Investigation Report - Tioga Castings Site, Oswego New York New.

NYSDEC 1995. Record of Decision, Tioga Castings Site, Oswego, Tioga County. Site Number 7-54-012. March 1995.

NYSDEC 1998, Remediation Summary Report, Tioga Castings Site, Village of Owego, Tioga County, New York, Site No. 7-54-012, New York State Department of Environmental Conservation.

Richard J. Reynolds and James D. Garry 1991, Hydrogeology of the Valley-fill Aquifer at Owego, Tioga County, New York, No. 1, Department of the Interior U.S. Geological Survey, New York.

TABLES

Table 5
Groundwater Analytical Summary - Metals
Tioga Castings Site
Owego, New York
NYSDEC Site Number 7-54-012

Well	**NYSDEC**	**MW-3D**		**MW-3D**		**MW-3D**		**MW-3D**		**MW-3D**		**MW-3D**		**MW-3D**		**MW-3D**		**MW-3D**		**MW-3D**	
Date	**Class GA**	**4/13/2009**		**3/18/2010**		**10/28/2010**		**2/28/2011**		**7/19/2012**		**10/14/2013**		**2/5/2015**		**5/16/2016**		**8/28/2017**		**10/18/2018**	
Units	**Standards**	**ug/L**		**ug/L**		**ug/L**		**ug/L**		**ug/L**		**ug/L**		**ug/L**		**ug/L**		**ug/L**		**ug/L**	
Aluminum		668		39.8	U	11.7	J	250.0	U	200.0	U	310		200	U	200	U	678		60	U
Antimony	3	6.7	U	6.8	U	8.0	U	15.0	U	20.0	U	20.0	U	20	U	20	U	20	U	6.8	U
Arsenic	25	3.0	U	5.6	U	4.2	U	15.0	U	10.0	U	10.0	U	15	U	15	U	15	U	5.6	U
Barium	1000	39.2	B	45.3	BE	56.7		43.6		51.0		46.0		39		40		54.3	J	56	
Beryllium	3*	0.5	U	0.2	U	0.7	U	5.0	U	2.0	U	2.0	U	2	U	2	U	2	U	0.3	U
Cadmium	5 [10]	0.3	U	0.3	U	0.5	U	5.0	U	1.0	U	1.0	U	2	U	2	U	4	U	0.5	U
Calcium		42300		50000		54000		48600		55200		45800		44400		43400	B	49200		49,000	
Chromium	50 [50]	3.8	B	0.9	U	1.1	U	5.0	U	1.6	J E	4.0	U	4	U	4	U	10	U	1	U
Cobalt		3.8	U	0.6	U	5.8	U	5.0	U	4.0	U	4.0	U	4	U	4	U	50	U	0.63	U
Copper	200	56.6		1.3	U	2.3	J	10.0	U	10.0	U	10.0	U	10	U	10	U	25	U	1.6	U
Iron	300	**558**		19.3	U	52.9		24.4	J	26.0	J	**390**		50	U	46	BJ	**1210**		19	U
Lead	25 [25]	1.4	U	3.0	U	4.6	J	15.0	U	5.0	U	5.0	U	10	U	10	U	10	U	3	U
Magnesium		7490		9120		9680		9120		10000		8800		8800		8700		9110		8,900	
Manganese	300	40.3	B	0.9	BE	2.2	J	1.2	J	2.4	J E	21.0		0.8	J	1.8	J	71.3		0.62	JB
Mercury	0.7	NA		0.1	U	0.1	U	0.2	U	0.2	U	0.2	U	0.2	U	0.2	U	0.2	U	0.12	U
Nickel	100	3.9	B	1.3	U	4.2	U	5.0	U	10.0	U	10.0	U	10	U	10	U	40	U	1.3	U
Potassium		1550	B	1610	BE	1490		1260		1500		1400		1200		1300		1510	J	1,700	
Selenium	10	11.4	U	8.7	U	4.8	U	38.0	U	15.0	U	15.0	U	25	U	25	U	20	U	8.7	U
Silver	50	2.2	U	1.2	U	1.5	U	5.0	U	3.0	U	3.0	U	6	U	6	U	10	U	1.7	U
Sodium	20000	17300		16900		17400		15600		18400		15700		15400		15200		15900		19,900	
Thallium	0.5*	3.0	U	10.2	U	2.4	U	15.0	U	20.0	U	20.0	U	20	U	20	U	20	U	10	U
Vanadium		4.7	U	1.1	U	6.1	U	5.0	U	5.0	U	5.0	U	5	U	5	U	50	U	1.5	U
Zinc	2000*	13.5	U	1.5	U	14.5	J	25.0	U	1.9	J	3.6	J	1.9	J	10	U	30	U	2.5	JB

Notes:
* - NYSDEC Guidance Value.
1 - Duplicate sample from MW-4
U - Analyte not detected.
J - Greater than the MDL but below the CRDL
B - Greater than MDL but less than RL.
MDL - Method detection limit.
RL - Reporting limit.
E - Estimated value.
[25] - Site-specific cleanup goal.

Table 5
Groundwater Analytical Summary - Metals
Tioga Castings Site
Owego, New York
NYSDEC Site Number 7-54-012

Well	**NYSDEC**	**MW-4**	**MW-4**	**MW-4**	**MW-4**	**MW-4**	**MW-4**	**MW-4**	**MW-4**	**MW-4**	**MW-4**	**MW-4**	**DUP[1]**	**MW-4**	**DUP**
Date	**Class GA**	**8/2/2007**	**7/17/2008**	**4/13/2009**	**3/18/2010**	**10/28/2010**	**2/28/2011**	**7/19/2012**	**10/14/2013**	**2/5/2015**	**5/16/2016**	**8/28/2017**	**8/28/2017**	**10/18/2018**	**10/18/2018**
Units	**Standards**	**ug/L**	**ug/L**	**ug/L**	**ug/L**	**ug/L**	**ug/L**	**ug/L**	**ug/L**	**ug/L**	**ug/L**	**ug/L**	**ug/L**	**ug/L**	**ug/L**
Aluminum		40.0 U	32.6 B	754	39.8 U	10.6 J	26.6 J	200.0 U	200.0 U	200 U	150 J	139 J	200 U	60 U	60 U
Antimony	3	5.6 U	5.5 U	6.7 U	6.8 U	8.0 U	15.0 U	20.0 U	20.0 U	20 U	20 U	20 U	20 U	6.8 U	6.8 U
Arsenic	25	4.2 U	3.7 U	3.0 U	5.6 U	4.2 U	15.0 U	10.0 U	10.0 U	15 U	15 U	15 U	15 U	5.6 U	5.6 U
Barium	1000	40.0 B	38.3 B	60.9 B	42.6 BE	50.3	40.8	48.0	43.0	40	60	48.4 J	47.6 J	53 U	55
Beryllium	3*	0.27 U	0.3 U	0.5 U	0.2 U	0.7 U	5.0 U	2.0 U	2.0 U	2.0 U	2 U	2 U	2 U	0.3 U	0.3 U
Cadmium	5 [10]	0.36 U	0.7 B	0.3 U	0.5 BE	0.5 U	1.7 J	1.0 U	1.0 U	2.0 U	1 J	4 U	4 U	0.5 U	0.5 U
Calcium		42700 E	42400	40500	48000	47900	43100	50900	46000	42300	42000 B	47300	47400	48,800	50,300
Chromium	50 [50]	0.84 U	0.9 U	3.4 B	0.9 U	1.1 U	5.0 U	1.6 J E	4.0 U	1.1 JB	4 U	10 U	10 U	1 U	1 U
Cobalt		0.89 U	1.1 U	3.8 U	0.6 U	5.8 U	5.0 U	4.0 U	4.0 U	4.0 U	4 U	50 U	50 U	6.3 U	0.63 U
Copper	200	1.4 B	1.3 U	49.7	1.3 U	2.0 U	10.0 U	10.0 U	10.0 U	10 U	3.9 J	25 U	25 U	1.6 U	1.6 U
Iron	300	47.6 B	34 B	**667**	22.2 BE	33.4 J	57.3 J	50.0 U	34.0 J	70	**380 B**	185	150 U	19 U	22 J
Lead	25 [25]	2.9 U	2.9 U	1.4 U	3.0 U	2.6 U	15.0 U	5.0 U	5.0 U	10 U	10 U	10 U	10 U	3 U	3 U
Magnesium		8190 E	7830	7080	8820	8390	8140	9400	8800	8700	8500	8790	8790	8,600	8,900
Manganese	300	0.79 B	1.2 B	79.4	1.5 BE	2.0 J	2.2 J	0.7 J E	1.6 J	2.3 J	7.4	6.3 J	15 U	0.65 JB	0.71 JB
Mercury	0.7	0.12 U	0.1 U	NA	0.1 U	0.1 U	0.2 U	0.2 U	0.2 U	0.2 U	0.2 U	0.2 U	0.2 U	0.12 U	0.12 U
Nickel	100	1.2 U	1.0 U	4.5 B	1.3 U	4.2 U	1.5 J	10.0 U	10.0 U	10 U	1.9 J	40 U	40 U	1.3 U	1.3 U
Potassium		1020 BE	1860 B	1190 B	1130 BE	1230	1330	1300	1100	1100	23300	1260 J	1190 J	1,400	1,500
Selenium	10	6.1 U	6.1 U	11.4 U	8.7 U	4.8 U	38.0 U	15.0 U	15.0 U	25 U	25 U	20 U	20 U	8.7 U	8.7 U
Silver	50	1.0 U	1.3 U	2.2 U	1.2 U	1.5 U	5.0 U	2.7 J	3.0 U	6.0 U	6 U	10 U	10 U	1.7 U	1.7 U
Sodium	20000	12000 E	12800	15200	16100	15000	13900	17400	15700	14600	**25700**	15500	15600	16,200	16,500
Thallium	0.5*	7.0 U	5.9 U	3.0 U	10.2 U	2.4 U	15.0 U	20.0 U	20.0 U	20 U	20 U	20 U	20 U	10 U	10 U
Vanadium		0.78 U	1.0 U	4.7 U	1.1 U	6.1 U	5.0 U	5.0 U	5.0 U	5.0 U	5 U	50 U	50 U	1.5 U	1.5 U
Zinc	2000*	3.6 U	3.6 U	13.5 U	1.5 U	6.5 U	25.0 U	1.5 J	10.0 U	2.3 J	3 J	30 U	30 U	2 JB	3.5 JB

Notes:
* - NYSDEC Guidance Value.
1 - Duplicate sample from MW-4
U - Analyte not detected.
J - Greater than the MDL but below the CRDL
B - Greater than MDL but less than RL.
MDL - Method detection limit.
RL - Reporting limit.
E - Estimated value.
[25] - Site-specific cleanup goal.

Table 5
Groundwater Analytical Summary - Metals
Tioga Castings Site
Owego, New York
NYSDEC Site Number 7-54-012

Well Date Units	NYSDEC Class GA Standards	MW-6 2/28/2011 ug/L		MW-6 7/24/2012 ug/L		MW-6 10/14/2013 ug/L		MW-6 2/6/2015 ug/L		MW-6 5/16/2016 ug/L		MW-6 8/28/2017 ug/L		MW-6 10/18/2018 ug/L	
Aluminum		49.5	J	520.0		310.0		360		200	U	240		60	U
Antimony	3	15.0	U	20.0	U	20.0	U	20	U	20	U	20	U	6.8	U
Arsenic	25	15.0	U	10.0	U	10.0	U	15	U	15	U	15	U	5.6	U
Barium	1000	53.1		61.0		62.0		70		54		73.6	J	63	
Beryllium	3*	5.0	U	2.0	U	2.0	U	2.0	U	2	U	2	U	0.3	U
Cadmium	5 [10]	5.0	U	1.0	U	1.0	U	2.0	U	2	U	4	U	0.5	U
Calcium		54200		73500		54200		78700		48600	B	68900		56,300	
Chromium	50 [50]	5.0	U	2.7	J B	4.0	U	4.0	U	4	U	10	U	1	U
Cobalt		5.0	U	4.0	U	4.0	U	4.0	U	4	U	50	U	0.63	U
Copper	200	10.0	U	10.0	U	10.0	U	10	U	10	U	25	U	1.6	U
Iron	300	98.8	J	**670.0**		**330.0**		**350**		120	B	**404**		19	U
Lead	25 [25]	15.0	U	5.0	U	5.0	U	10	U	10	U	10	U	3	U
Magnesium		9280		11300		10100		13200		9500		11700		9,400	
Manganese	300	7.5	J	36.0	B	15.0		20		2.8	J	24.1		0.4	U
Mercury	0.7	0.2	U	0.2	U	0.2	U	0.2	U	0.2	U	0.2	U	0.12	U
Nickel	100	5.0	U	10.0	U	10.0	U	10	U	10.0	U	40.0	U	1.3	U
Potassium		2090.0		2300		2000		2400		2000		2310	J	2,600	
Selenium	10	38.0	U	15.0	U	15.0	U	25	U	25	U	20	U	8.7	U
Silver	50	5	U	3.0	U	3.0	U	6.0	U	6	U	10	U	1.7	U
Sodium	20000	**21900**		**26900**		**22400**		**22100**		19900		**26600**		**29,500**	
Thallium	0.5*	15.0	U	20.0	U	20.0	U	20	U	20	U	20	U	10	U
Vanadium		5	U	5.0	U	5.0	U	5.0	U	5	U	50	U	1.5	U
Zinc	2000*	25.0	U	4.6	J	2.8	J	3.2	J	10	U	30	U	1.6	JB

Notes:
* - NYSDEC Guidance Value.
1 - Duplicate sample from MW-4
U - Analyte not detected.
J - Greater than the MDL but below the CRDL
B - Greater than MDL but less than RL.
MDL - Method detection limit.
RL - Reporting limit.
E - Estimated value.
[25] - Site-specific cleanup goal.

Well	NYSDEC	MW-9		MW-9		MW-9		MW-9	
Date	Class GA	2/5/2015		5/16/2016		8/28/2017		10/18/2018	
Units	Standards	ug/L		ug/L		ug/L		ug/L	
Aluminum		3000		810		1600		60	U
Antimony	3	20	U	20	U	20	U	6.8	U
Arsenic	25	15	U	15	U	15	U	5.6	U
Barium	1000	110		86		110	J	93	
Beryllium	3*	2.0	U	2.0	U	2.0	U	0.3	U
Cadmium	5 [10]	2.0	U	2.0	U	4.0	U	0.5	U
Calcium		70600		74800	B	85300		89,600	
Chromium	50 [50]	3.8	JB	1.6	J	10.0	U	1	U
Cobalt		4.0	U	4.0	U	50.0	U	0.63	U
Copper	200	5.1	J	2.2	J	25.0	U	1.6	U
Iron	300	**2500**		**1100**	**B**	**2700**		44	J
Lead	25 [25]	10	J	3	J	10	U	3	U
Magnesium		12100		11500		12500		12,000	
Manganese	300	140		55		115		1.9	JB
Mercury	0.7	0.2	U	0.2	U	0.2	U	0.12	U
Nickel	100	2.5	J	1.9	J	40.0	U	1.3	U
Potassium		4800		5700		4940	J	4,600	
Selenium	10	25	U	25	U	20	U	8.7	U
Silver	50	6.0	U	6.0	U	10.0	U	1.7	U
Sodium	20000	8000		7100		7510		6,100	
Thallium	0.5*	20.0	U	20.0	U	20.0	U	10	U
Vanadium		4.5	J	1.9	J	2.7	J	1.5	U
Zinc	2000*	13		4	J	30	U	3.2	JB

Notes:
* - NYSDEC Guidance Value.
1 - Duplicate sample from MW-4
U - Analyte not detected.
J - Greater than the MDL but below the CRDL
B - Greater than MDL but less than RL.
MDL - Method detection limit.
RL - Reporting limit.
E - Estimated value.
[25] - Site-specific cleanup goal.

Table 6
Groundwater Analytical Summary-Emerging Compounds
Tioga Castings Site
Owego, New York
NYSDEC Site Number 7-54-012

Well	**USEPA Health Advisory Limit**	**MW-3D**	**MW-4**	**DUP[1]**	**MW-6**	**MW-9**
Date		**8/28/2017**	**8/28/2017**	**8/28/2017**	**8/28/2017**	**8/28/2017**
Perfluorobutanesulfonic acid (PFBS) (ng/L)		2.00 U	1.44 J	1.49 J	2.91	2.00 U
Perfluorohexanesulfonic acid (PFHxS) (ng/L)		4.16	4.09	4.26	17.70	2.00 U
Perfluoroheptanoic acid (PFHpA) (ng/L)		2.00 U	2.00 U	2.00	2.00 U	2.00 U
Perfluorooctanoic acid (PFOA) (ng/L)	70	2.00 U	2.00 U	2.00	2.00 U	2.00 U
Perfluorooctanesulfonic acid (PFOS) (ng/L)	70	1.81 J	2.00 U	1.31 J	9.32	2.00 U
Perfluorononanoic acid (PFNA) (ng/L)		2.00 U	2.00 U	2.00 U	2.00 U	2.00 U
1,4-Dioxane (ug/L)		0.4 U	0.40 U	0.40 U	0.40 U	0.40 U

Notes:

The current USEPA Public Health Advisory for drinking water is 70 ng/L

ng/L - nanograms per liter or parts per trillion

1 - Duplicate sample from MW-4

U - Analyte not detected.

J - Estimated value

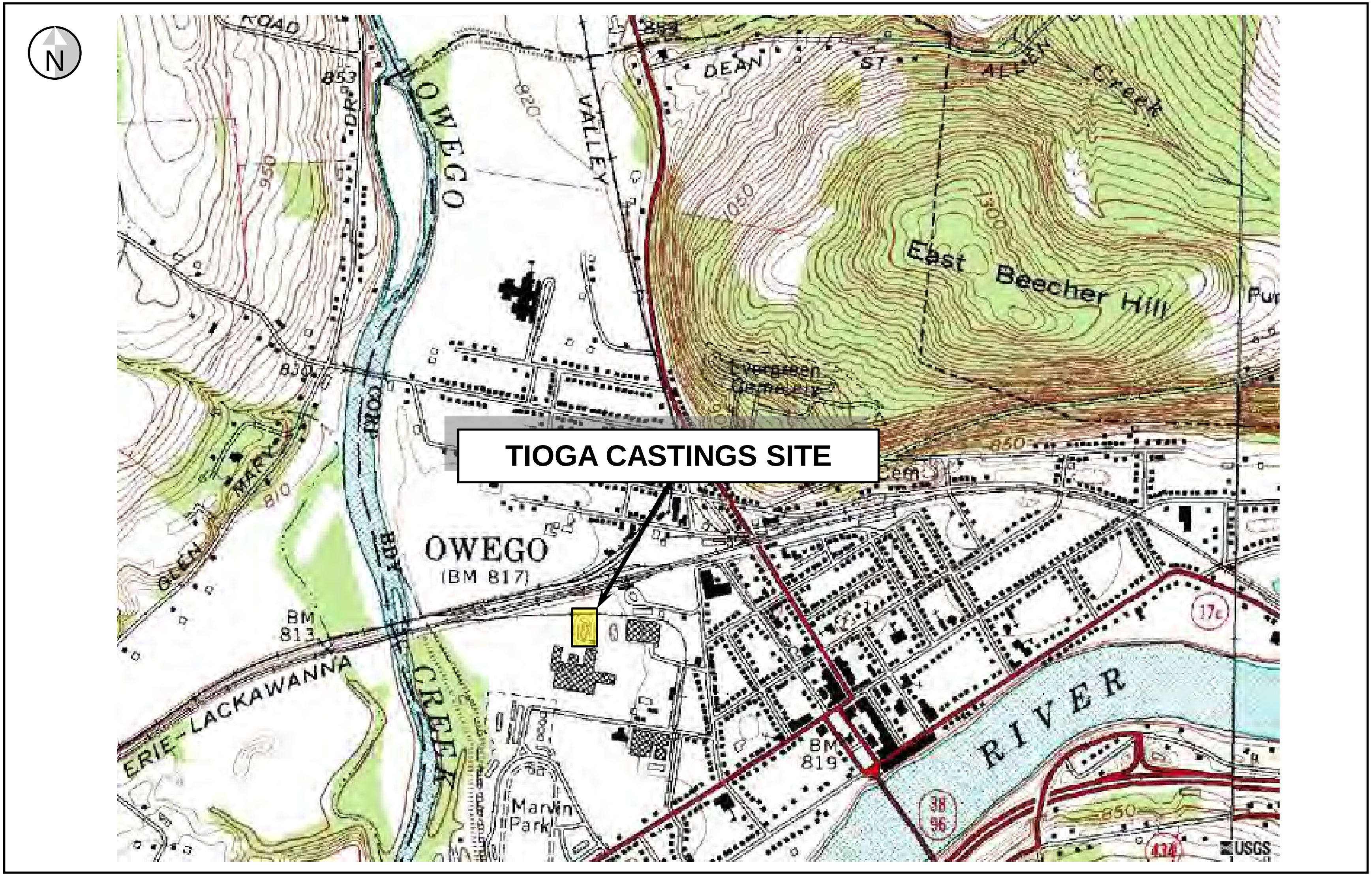
FIGURES

ARCADIS

0 2,000 ft

Figure 1
Site Location

Tioga Castings Site
NYSDEC Site Number 7-54-012
Owego, New York



Source: USGS 7.5-minute Series Topographic Quadrangle, OWEGO (1990).

Source: Esri, DigitalGlobe, GeoEye, Earthstar Geographics, CNES/Airbus DS, USDA, USGS, AeroGRID, IGN, and the GIS

Legend

- ● Monitoring Well
- ○ Abandoned Well
- ▭ Former Casting Facility
- ▭ On-Site Landfill/Site Boundary
- ▭ Approximate Parcel Boundary

0 60 120 240 360 480 Feet

N

Note: Site feature boundaries are approximate.

NEW YORK STATE DEPARTMENT OF ENVIRONMENTAL CONSERVATION
SITE NUMBER 754012

Tioga Casting Facility, Owego, New York

SITE FEATURES

ARCADIS

FIGURE
2

Document Path: G:\GISMOD\00266403.0000\Site Features.mxd

Source: Esri, DigitalGlobe, GeoEye, Earthstar Geographics, CNES/Airbus DS, USDA, USGS, AeroGRID, IGN, and the GIS

Legend

●	Monitoring Well
○	Abandoned Well
🟪	Former Casting Facility
🟦	On-Site Landfill/Site Boundary
⬜	Approximate Parcel Boundary
⌒	Groundwater Potentiometric Contour
794.63	Feet Above Mean Sea Level

Note: Site feature boundaries are approximate.

NEW YORK STATE DEPARTMENT OF ENVIRONMENTAL CONSERVATION
SITE NUMBER 754012

Tioga Casting Facility, Owego, New York

POTENTIOMETRIC MAP
October 18, 2018

ARCADIS

FIGURE
3

G:\GISMOD\00266403.0000\PotMap3rdQtr2017.mxd
G:\PROJECT\00266403.0000\Reports\2018\Q4\Figures\Figure 4-1.pdf

Analyte	Units	NYSDEC Class GA Standard	MW-6 10/18/2018
Sodium	ug/L	20,000	29,500

Source: Esri, DigitalGlobe, GeoEye, Earthstar Geographics, CNES/Airbus DS, USDA, USGS, AeroGRID, IGN, and the GIS

Legend

- ● Monitoring Well
- ○ Abandoned Well
- ▭ Former Casting Facility
- ▭ On-Site Landfill/Site Boundary
- ▭ Approximate Parcel Boundary

0 60 120 240 360 480 Feet

N

Notes: Site feature boundaries are approximate.
ug/L = micrograms per liter

NEW YORK STATE DEPARTMENT OF ENVIRONMENTAL CONSERVATION
SITE NUMBER 754012
Tioga Casting Facility, Owego, New York

METALS EXCEEDANCES IN GROUNDWATER

ARCADIS

FIGURE
4

Document Path: G:\GISMOD\00266403.0000\Hitboxes.mxd

APPENDIX A – EXCAVATION WORK PLAN

A-1 NOTIFICATION

At least 15 days prior to the start of any activity that is anticipated to encounter remaining contamination, the Site owner or their representative will notify the Department. Currently, this notification will be made to:

Payson Long

New York State Department of Environmental Conservation

625 Broadway

Albany, NY 12233-0001

This notification will include:

- A detailed description of the work to be performed, including the location and areal extent, plans for Site re-grading, intrusive elements or utilities to be installed below the soil cover, estimated volumes of contaminated soil to be excavated and any work that may impact an engineering control,
- A summary of environmental conditions anticipated in the work areas, including the nature and concentration levels of contaminants of concern, potential presence of grossly contaminated media, and plans for any pre-construction sampling;
- A schedule for the work, detailing the start and completion of all intrusive work,
- A summary of the applicable components of this EWP,
- A statement that the work will be performed in compliance with this EWP and 29 CFR 1910.120,
- A copy of the contractor's health and safety plan, in electronic format,
- Identification of disposal facilities for potential waste streams, and

- Identification of sources of any anticipated backfill, along with all required chemical testing results.

A-2 SOIL SCREENING METHODS

Visual, olfactory and instrument-based soil screening will be performed by a qualified environmental professional during all remedial and development excavations into known or potentially contaminated material (remaining contamination). Soil screening will be performed regardless of when the invasive work is done and will include all excavation and invasive work performed during development, such as excavations for foundations and utility work, after issuance of the COC.

Soils will be segregated based on previous environmental data and screening results into material that requires off-site disposal, material that requires testing, material that can be returned to the subsurface, and material that can be used as cover soil.

A-3 STOCKPILE METHODS

Soil stockpiles will be continuously encircled with a berm and/or silt fence. Hay bales will be used as needed near catch basins, surface waters and other discharge points.

Stockpiles will be kept covered at all times with appropriately anchored tarps. Stockpiles will be routinely inspected and damaged tarp covers will be promptly replaced.

Stockpiles will be inspected at a minimum once each week and after every storm event. Results of inspections will be recorded in a logbook and maintained at the Site and available for inspection by NYSDEC.

A-4 MATERIALS EXCAVATION AND LOAD OUT

A qualified environmental professional or person under their supervision will oversee all invasive work and the excavation and load-out of all excavated material.

The owner of the property and its contractors are solely responsible for safe execution of all invasive and other work performed under this Plan.

The presence of utilities and deed restrictions on the Site will be investigated by the qualified environmental professional. It will be determined whether a risk or impediment to the planned work under this SMP is posed by utilities or deed restrictions on the site.

Loaded vehicles leaving the Site will be appropriately lined, tarped, securely covered, manifested, and placarded in accordance with appropriate Federal, State, local, and New York State Department of Transportation (NYSDOT) requirements (and all other applicable transportation requirements).

A truck wash will be operated on-site. The qualified environmental professional will be responsible for ensuring that all outbound trucks will be washed at the truck wash before leaving the Site until the activities performed under this section are complete.

Locations where vehicles enter or exit the Site shall be inspected daily for evidence of off-site soil tracking.

The qualified environmental professional will be responsible for ensuring that all egress points for truck and equipment transport from the Site are clean of dirt and other materials derived from the site during intrusive excavation activities. Cleaning of the adjacent streets will be performed as needed to maintain a clean condition with respect to Site-derived materials.

A-5 MATERIALS TRANSPORT OFF-SITE

All transport of materials will be performed by licensed haulers in accordance with appropriate local, State, and Federal regulations, including 6 NYCRR Part 364. Haulers will be appropriately licensed and trucks properly placarded.

Material transported by trucks exiting the site will be secured with tight-fitting covers. Loose-fitting canvas-type truck covers will be prohibited. If loads contain wet material capable of producing free liquid, truck liners will be used.

All trucks will be washed prior to leaving the site. Truck wash waters will be collected and disposed of off-site in an appropriate manner.

All trucks loaded with Site materials will exit the vicinity of the site using only these approved truck routes. This is the most appropriate route and takes into account: (a) limiting transport through residential areas and past sensitive sites; (b) use of city mapped truck routes; (c) prohibiting off-site queuing of trucks entering the facility; (d) limiting total distance to major highways; (e) promoting safety in access to highways; and (f) overall safety in transport.

Trucks will be prohibited from stopping and idling in the neighborhood outside the project Site.

Egress points for truck and equipment transport from the site will be kept clean of dirt and other materials during site remediation and development.

Queuing of trucks will be performed on-site in order to minimize off-site disturbance. Off-site queuing will be prohibited.

A-6 MATERIALS DISPOSAL OFF-SITE

All soil/fill/solid waste excavated and removed from the Site will be treated as contaminated and regulated material and will be transported and disposed in accordance with all local, State (including 6NYCRR Part 360) and Federal regulations. If disposal of soil/fill from this Site is proposed for unregulated off-site disposal (i.e. clean soil removed for development purposes), a formal request with an associated plan will be made to the NYSDEC. Unregulated off-site management of materials from this Site will not occur without formal NYSDEC approval.

Off-site disposal locations for excavated soils will be identified in the pre-excavation notification. This will include estimated quantities and a breakdown by class of disposal facility if appropriate, i.e. hazardous waste disposal facility, solid waste landfill, petroleum treatment facility, C/D recycling facility, etc. Actual disposal quantities and associated documentation will be reported to the NYSDEC in the PRR. This documentation will include: waste profiles, test results, facility acceptance letters, manifests, bills of lading and facility receipts.

Non-hazardous historic fill and contaminated soils taken off-site will be handled, at minimum, as a Municipal Solid Waste per 6NYCRR Part 360-1.2. Material that does not meet Track 1 unrestricted SCOs is prohibited from being taken to a New York State recycling facility (6NYCRR Part 360-16 Registration Facility).

A-7 MATERIALS REUSE ON-SITE

Chemical criteria for on-site reuse of material have been approved by NYSDEC. The qualified environmental professional will ensure that procedures defined for materials reuse in this SMP are followed and that unacceptable material does not remain on-site. Contaminated on-site material, including historic fill and contaminated soil, that is acceptable for re-use on-site will be placed below the demarcation layer or impervious surface, and will not be reused within a cover soil layer, within landscaping berms, or as backfill for subsurface utility lines.

Any demolition material proposed for reuse on-site will be sampled for asbestos and the results will be reported to the NYSDEC for acceptance. Concrete crushing or processing on-site will not be performed without prior NYSDEC approval. Organic matter (wood, roots, stumps, etc.) or other solid waste derived from clearing and grubbing of the site will not be reused on-site.

A-8 FLUIDS MANAGEMENT

All liquids to be removed from the Site, including excavation dewatering and groundwater monitoring well purge and development waters will be handled, transported and disposed in accordance with applicable local, State, and Federal regulations. Dewatering, purge and development fluids will not be recharged back to the land surface or subsurface of the Site, but will be managed off-site.

Discharge of water generated during large-scale construction activities to surface waters (i.e. a local pond, stream or river) will be performed under a SPDES permit.

A-9 LANDFILL CAP RESTORATION

After the completion of soil removal and any other invasive activities the landfill cap will be restored in a manner that complies with the ROD. The demarcation layer, consisting of orange snow fencing material or equivalent material will be replaced to provide a visual reference to the top of the ‘Remaining Contamination Zone’, the zone that requires adherence to special conditions for disturbance of remaining contaminated soils defined in this Site Management Plan. If the type of cover system changes from that which exists prior to the excavation (i.e., a soil cover is replaced by asphalt),this will constitute a modification of the cover element of the remedy and the upper surface of the 'Remaining Contamination. A figure showing the modified surface will be included in the subsequent Periodic Review Report and in any updates to the Site Management Plan.

A-10 BACKFILL FROM OFF-SITE SOURCES

All materials proposed for import onto the Site will be approved by the qualified environmental professional and will be in compliance with provisions in this SMP prior to receipt at the Site.

Material from industrial sites, spill sites, or other environmental remediation sites or potentially contaminated sites will not be imported to the Site.

All imported soils will meet the backfill and cover soil quality standards established in 6NYCRR 375-6.7(d) and DER-10. Soils that meet 'exempt' fill requirements under 6 NYCRR Part 360, but do not meet backfill or cover soil objectives for this Site, will not be imported onto the site without prior approval by NYSDEC. Solid waste will not be imported onto the Site.

Trucks entering the Site with imported soils will be securely covered with tight fitting covers. Imported soils will be stockpiled separately from excavated materials and covered to prevent dust releases.

A-11 STORMWATER POLLUTION PREVENTION

Barriers and hay bale checks will be installed and inspected once a week and after every storm event. Results of inspections will be recorded in a logbook and maintained at the Site and available for inspection by NYSDEC. All necessary repairs shall be made immediately.

Accumulated sediments will be removed as required to keep the barrier and hay bale check functional.

All undercutting or erosion of the silt fence toe anchor shall be repaired immediately with appropriate backfill materials.

Manufacturer's recommendations will be followed for replacing silt fencing damaged due to weathering.

Erosion and sediment control measures identified in the SMP shall be observed to ensure that they are operating correctly. Where discharge locations or points are accessible, they shall be inspected to ascertain whether erosion control measures are effective in preventing significant impacts to receiving waters

Silt fencing or hay bales will be installed around the entire perimeter of the construction area.

A-12 CONTINGENCY PLAN

If underground tanks or other previously unidentified contaminant sources are found during post-remedial subsurface excavations or development related construction, excavation activities will be suspended until sufficient equipment is mobilized to address the condition.

Sampling will be performed on product, sediment and surrounding soils, etc. as necessary to determine the nature of the material and proper disposal method. Chemical analysis will be performed for full a full list of analytes (TAL metals; TCL volatiles and semi-volatiles, TCL pesticides and PCBs), unless the Site history and previous sampling results provide a sufficient justification to limit the list of analytes. In this case, a reduced list of analytes will be proposed to the NYSDEC for approval prior to sampling.

Identification of unknown or unexpected contaminated media identified by screening during invasive Site work will be promptly communicated by phone to NYSDEC’s Project Manager. Reportable quantities of petroleum product will also be reported to the NYSDEC spills hotline. These findings will be also included in the periodic reports prepared pursuant to Section 5 of the SMP.

A-13 COMMUNITY AIR MONITORING PLAN

As part of the detailed planning documentation, a Community Air Monitoring Plan (CAMP) must be included. Guidance can be obtained in Appendix 1A of DER-10, Generic CAMP. At a minimum, the CAMP must include:

- Details of the perimeter air monitoring program;
- Action levels to be used;
- Methods for air monitoring;
- Analytes measured and instrumentation to be used;
- A figure of the location(s) of all air monitoring instrumentation. A figure showing specific locations must be presented for monitoring stations based on generally prevailing wind conditions, with a note that the exact locations to be monitored on a given day will be established based on the daily wind direction.

These locations will be adjusted on a daily or more frequent basis based on actual wind directions to provide an upwind and at least two downwind monitoring stations. If a sensitive receptor, such as a school, day care or residential area is adjacent to the Site, a fixed monitoring station should be located at that site perimeter, regardless of wind direction, and discussed in the text.

Exceedances of action levels listed in the CAMP will be reported to NYSDEC and NYSDOH Project Managers.

A-14 ODOR CONTROL PLAN

This odor control plan is capable of controlling emissions of nuisance odors off-site. Specific odor control methods to be used on a routine basis. If nuisance odors are identified at the Site boundary, or if odor complaints are received, work will be halted and the source of odors will be identified and corrected. Work will not resume until all nuisance odors have been abated. NYSDEC and NYSDOH will be notified of all odor events and of any other complaints about the project. Implementation of all odor controls, including the halt of work, is the responsibility of the property owner’s Remediation Engineer, and any measures that are implemented will be discussed in the Periodic Review Report.

All necessary means will be employed to prevent on- and off-site nuisances. At a minimum, these measures will include: (a) limiting the area of open excavations and size of soil stockpiles; (b) shrouding open excavations with tarps and other covers; and (c) using foams to cover exposed odorous soils. If odors develop and cannot be otherwise controlled, additional means to eliminate odor nuisances will include: (d) direct load-out of soils to trucks for off-site disposal; (e) use of chemical odorants in spray or misting systems; and, (f) use of staff to monitor odors in surrounding neighborhoods.

If nuisance odors develop during intrusive work that cannot be corrected, or where the control of nuisance odors cannot otherwise be achieved due to on-site conditions or close proximity to sensitive receptors, odor control will be achieved by sheltering the excavation and handling areas in a temporary containment structure equipped with appropriate air venting/filtering systems.

A-15 DUST CONTROL PLAN

A dust suppression plan that addresses dust management during invasive on-site work will include, at a minimum, the items listed below:

- Dust suppression will be achieved though the use of a dedicated on-site water truck for road wetting. The truck will be equipped with a water cannon capable of spraying water directly onto off-road areas including excavations and stockpiles.
- Clearing and grubbing of larger sites will be done in stages to limit the area of exposed, unvegetated soils vulnerable to dust production.
- Gravel will be used on roadways to provide a clean and dust-free road surface.
- On-site roads will be limited in total area to minimize the area required for water truck sprinkling.

A-16 OTHER NUISANCES

Planning for other nuisances, such as rodent control and noise will also be incorporated into the planning documentation.

A plan for rodent control will be developed and utilized by the contractor prior to and during site clearing and site grubbing, and during all remedial work.

A plan will be developed and utilized by the contractor for all remedial work to ensure compliance with local noise control ordinances.

APPENDIX B – RESPONSIBILITIES OF OWNER AND REMEDIAL PARTY

Responsibilities

The responsibilities for implementing the Site Management Plan ("SMP") for the Tioga Castings site (the "site"), number 754012, are divided between the site owner(s) and a Remedial Party, as defined below. The owner(s) is/are currently listed as:

Tioga Foundry Corp
2065 Carmichael
Owego, NY 13827 (the "owner").

Solely for the purposes of this document and based upon the facts related to a particular site and the remedial program being carried out, the term Remedial Party ("RP") refers to any of the following: certificate of completion holder, volunteer, applicant, responsible party, and, in the event the New York State Department of Environmental Conservation ("NYSDEC") is carrying out remediation or site management, the NYSDEC and/or an agent acting on its behalf. The RP is:

NYSDEC

Nothing on this page shall supersede the provisions of an Environmental Easement, Consent Order, Consent Decree, agreement, or other legally binding document that affects rights and obligations relating to the site.

Site Owner's Responsibilities:

1) The owner shall follow the provisions of the SMP as they relate to future construction and excavation at the site.

2) In accordance with a periodic time frame determined by the NYSDEC, the owner shall periodically certify, in writing, that all Institutional Controls set forth in a(n) Environmental Notice remain in place and continue to be complied with. The owner shall provide a written certification to the RP, upon the RP's request, in order to allow the RP to include the certification in the site's Periodic Review Report (PRR) certification to the NYSDEC.

3) In the event the site is delisted, the owner remains bound by the Environmental Notice and shall submit, upon request by the NYSDEC, a written certification that the Environmental Notice is still in place and has been complied with.

4) The owner shall grant access to the site to the RP and the NYSDEC and its agents for the purposes of performing activities required under the SMP and assuring compliance with the SMP.

5) The owner is responsible for assuring the security of the remedial components located on its property to the best of its ability. In the event that damage to the remedial components or vandalism is evident, the owner shall notify the site's RP and NYSDEC in accordance with the timeframes indicated in Section [2.4.2]-Notifications.

6) In the event some action or inaction by the owner adversely impacts the site, the owner must notify the site's RP and the NYSDEC in accordance with the time frame indicated in [Section

2.4.2]- Notifications and (ii) coordinate the performance of necessary corrective actions with the RP.

7) The owner must notify the RP and the NYSDEC of any change in ownership of the site property (identifying the tax map numbers in any correspondence) and provide contact information for the new owner of the site property/ies. 6 NYCRR Part contains notification requirements applicable to any construction or activity changes and changes in ownership. Among the notification requirements is the following: Sixty days prior written notification must be made to the NYSDEC. Notification is to be submitted to the NYSDEC Division of Environmental Remediation's Site Control Section. Notification requirements for a change in use are detailed in Section 2.4 of the SMP. A 60-Day Advance Notification Form and Instructions are found at http://www.dec.ny.gov/chemical/76250.html.

8) The owner will maintain the conditions at the site including: maintain fences and conduct mowing on behalf of the RP. The RP remains ultimately responsible for maintaining the engineering controls.

Remedial Party Responsibilities

1) The RP must follow the SMP provisions regarding any construction and/or excavation it undertakes at the site.

2) The RP shall report to the NYSDEC all activities required for remediation, operation, maintenance, monitoring, and reporting. Such reporting includes, but is not limited to, periodic review reports and certifications, electronic data deliverables, corrective action work plans and reports, and updated SMPs.

3) Before accessing the site property to undertake a specific activity, the RP shall provide the owner advance notification that shall include an explanation of the work expected to be completed. The RP shall provide to (i) the owner, upon the owner's request, (ii) the NYSDEC, and (iii) other entities, if required by the SMP, a copy of any data generated during the site visit and/or any final report produced.

4) If the NYSDEC determines that an update of the SMP is necessary, the RP shall update the SMP and obtain final approval from the NYSDEC. Within 5 business days after NYSDEC approval, the RP shall submit a copy of the approved SMP to the owner(s).

5) The RP shall notify the NYSDEC and the owner of any changes in RP ownership and/or control and of any changes in the party/entity responsible for the operation, maintenance, and monitoring of and reporting with respect to any remedial system (Engineering Controls). The RP shall provide contact information for the new party/entity. Such activity constitutes a Change of Use pursuant to 375-1.11(d) and requires 60-days prior notice to the NYSDEC. A 60-Day Advance Notification Form and Instructions are found at http://www.dec.ny.gov/chemical/76250.html.

6) The RP shall notify the NYSDEC of any damage to or modification of the systems as required under Section 2.4.2 - Notifications of the SMP.

7) The RP is responsible for the proper maintenance of any installed vapor intrusion mitigation systems associated with the site.

8) The RP is responsible for the proper monitoring and maintenance of any installed drinking water treatment system associated with the site.

9) Prior to a change in use that impacts the remedial system or requirements and/or responsibilities for implementing the SMP, the RP shall submit to the NYSDEC for approval an amended SMP.

10) Any change in use, change in ownership, change in site classification (*e.g.*, delisting), reduction or expansion of remediation, and other significant changes related to the site may result in a change in responsibilities and, therefore, necessitate an update to the SMP and/or updated legal documents. The RP shall contact the Department to discuss the need to update such documents.

Change in RP ownership and/or control and/or site ownership does not affect the RP's obligations with respect to the site unless a legally binding document executed by the NYSDEC releases the RP of its obligations.

Future site owners and RPs and their successors and assigns are required to carry out the activities set forth above.

APPENDIX C – ENVIRONMENTAL NOTICE

Tioga Casting Facilities
Site No.: 754012
Foundry Street
County of Tioga
Tax Map: 128.07-2-7

ENVIRONMENTAL NOTICE

THIS ENVIRONMENTAL NOTICE is made the 15th day of June 2012, by the New York State Department of Environmental Conservation (Department), having an office for the transaction of business at 625 Broadway, Albany, New York 12233

WHEREAS, that parcel of real property located at the address of 1 Foundry Street in the City of Owego County of Tioga and State of New York, known and designated on the tax map of the County Clerk of Tioga as tax map parcel numbers: Section 128 Block 2 Lot 07, from John Sweet III of 2065 Carmichael St in the city of Owego, the property being more particularly described in Metes and Bounds description and attached hereto as Appendix "A" to this notice and made a part hereof, and hereinafter referred to as "the Property" and is the subject of a remedial program performed by the Department; and

WHEREAS, the Department approved a cleanup to address contamination disposed at the Property and such cleanup was conditioned upon certain limitations.

NOW, THEREFORE, the Department provides notice that:

FIRST, the part of lands subject to this Environmental Notice is as shown on a map attached to this Notice as Appendix "B" and made a part hereof.

SECOND, unless prior written approval by the Department or, if the Department shall no longer exist, any New York State agency or agencies subsequently created to protect the environment of the State and the health of the State's citizens, hereinafter referred to as "the Relevant Agency," is first obtained, where contamination remains at the Property subject to the provisions of the Site Management Plan ("SMP"), there shall be no disturbance or excavation of the Property which threatens the integrity of the engineering controls or which results or may result in a significantly increased threat of harm or damage at any site as a result of exposure to soils. A violation of this provision is a violation of 6 NYCRR 375-1.1 1(b)(2).

THIRD, no person shall disturb, remove, or otherwise interfere with the installation, use, operation, and maintenance of engineering controls required for the Remedy, including but not limited to those engineering controls described in the SMP and listed below, unless in each instance they first obtain a written waiver of such prohibition from the Department or Relevant Agency.

FOURTH, the remedy was designed to be protective for Commercial or Industrial uses. Therefore, any use for purposes other than Commercial or Industrial uses without the express written waiver of such prohibition by the Relevant Agency may result in a significantly increased threat of harm or damage at any site.

FIFTH, the no person shall use the groundwater underlying the Property without treatment rendering it safe for drinking water or industrial purposes, as appropriate, unless the user first obtains permission to do so from the Department or Relevant Agency. Use of the groundwater without appropriate treatment may result in a significantly increased threat of harm or damage at any site.

SIXTH, it is a violation of 6 NYCRR 375-1.11(b) to use the Property in a manner inconsistent with this environmental notice.

IN WITNESS WHEREOF, the undersigned has executed this instrument the day written below.

By: ____________________
Robert Schick, Acting Director
Division of Environmental Remediation

STATE OF NEW YORK) ss:
COUNTY OF ALBANY)

18

On the 15 day of JUNE, in the year 2012, before me, the undersigned, personally appeared Dale Desnoyers, personally known to me or proved to me on the basis of satisfactory evidence to be the individual(s) whose name is (are) subscribed to the within instrument and acknowledged to me that he/she/ executed the same in his/her/ capacity as Designee of the Commissioner of the State of New York Department of Environmental Conservation, and that by his/her/ signature on the instrument, the individual, or the person upon behalf of which the individual acted, executed the instrument.

____
Notary Public - State of New York

David J. Chiusano
Notary Public, State of New York
No. 01CH5032146
Qualified in Schenectady County
Commission Expires August 22, 2014

Appendix A

Tioga Casting Facilities
Site No.: 754012
Foundry Street
County of Tioga
Tax Map: 128.07-2-7

METES AND BOUNDS DESCRIPTION

ALL THAT PIECE OR PARCEL OF PROPERTY hereinafter designated as parcel No. 70, situate in the village of Owego, County of Tioga, State of New York, and described as follows:

BEGINNING AT a point on the division line between the property of the people of New York on the South and the property of Scott Smith and Son, Inc. on north, at the intersection of said division line with the division line between the People of New York on the east and the property of WEBO Radio, Inc. on the west.

1) Thence Southerly 234.58ft. to intersection of division line of Property of the People of New York on north and the property of Tioga Foundry Corporation on the south; thence

2) Southerly along division line between property of Tioga Foundry Corporation on East and property of WEBO radio on west a distance of 50.01+feet to intersection of last mentioned division line with the division line with Tioga Foundry Corporation on the north and the property of Owego-Appalachian Central School District on the south; thence

3) Easterly along last mentioned division line for 471 feet to intersection of northeasterly boundary acquired by People of the state of New York in a permanent easement; thence

4) Northwesterly along easement boundary for 247.00 feet to its intersection with the division line between the property of the people of the state of New York on the west an the property of the Tioga Foundry Corporation on the east; thence

5) Northerly along last mentioned division line for 214.12 feet to its intersection with southerly boundary of property acquired by the people of the State of New York in a permanent easement; thence

6) Along said southerly and easterly permanent easement boundary for the following distances

a. Easterly for 239.84 feet to a point

b. Northerly for 30.00 feet to intersection with Tioga Foundry Corporation on the south and the property of Scott Smith and Son, Inc on the north ; thence

7) Westerly along last mentioned division line and the division line between the People of the State of New York on the South and the property of Scott Smith and Son, Inc. on the north for a distance of 471.89 feet to point of beginning.

Being 1.838 acres about.

Appendix B

Tax Map


①
②
MRB GROUP
TIOGA COUNTY LEGISLATURE
VILLAGE OF OWEGO
128.07

APPENDIX D – HEALTH AND SAFETY PLAN

Site Specific Health and Safety Plan

Revision 13b, 3/9/2016

Project Name: Tioga Castings

Project Number:	00266403.0000
Client Name:	NYSDEC
Date:	10/5/2018
HASP Expires	10/5/2019
Revision:	4

Approvals:

HASP Developer: Jasmine Mullins

Project Manager: Andy Vitolins

HASP Reviewer:

X ______________________

ARCADIS

Control Number:TGM
TGM + *project number plus date as follows: xxxxxxxx.xxxx.xxxxx - dd/mm/year*

TAILGATE HEALTH & SAFETY MEETING FORM

Project Name:

Project Location:

Date:

Time:

Conducted by: B. Quaglieri

Signature/Title:

Issues or concerns from previous day's activities:

Task anticipated to be performed today:

☐ Additonal permits or checklists attached

USE TRACK! Evaluate the hazards (h) for the tasks being performed today and rank as Low (L), Medium (M) or High (H). Use relevant JLAs, FHSHB, permit or other work standard to communicate controls (c) to be used to eliminate or mitigate identified hazards.

☐ Gravity (i.e., ladder, scaffold, trips) (L M H) h: c:	☐ Motion (i.e., traffic, moving water) (L M H) h: c:	☐ Mechanical (i.e., augers, motors) (L M H) h: c:
☐ Electrical (i.e., utilities, lightning) (L M H) h: c:	☐ Pressure (i.e., gas cyl., wells) (L M H) h: c:	☐ Environment (i.e., heat, cold, ice) (L M H) h: c:
☐ Chemical (i.e., fuel, acid, paint) (L M H) h: c:	☐ Biological (i.e., ticks, poison ivy) (L M H) h: c:	☐ Radiation (i.e., alpha, sun, laser) (L M H) h: c:
☐ Sound (i.e., machinery) (L M H) h: c:	☐ Personal (i.e. alone, night) (L M H) h: c:	☐ Driving (i.e. car, ATV, boat, dozer) (L M H) h: c:

☐ Refer to the attached Hazard Analysis Sheet(s) or JSA

Comments:

Signature and Certification: I have read and understand the project specific HASP for this project.

Printed Name/Signature/Company	Sign In Time	Sign Out Time

Place any additional signatures on the back of this form.

I will STOP the job any time anyone is concerned or uncertain about health & safety or if anyone identifies a hazard or additional mitigation not recorded in the site, project, job or task hazard assessment.

I will be alert to any changes in personnel, conditions at the work site or hazards not covered by the original hazard assessments.

If it is necessary to **STOP THE JOB,** I will perform **TRACK**; and then amend the hazard assessments or the HASP as needed.

I will not assist a subcontractor or other party with their work unless it is absolutely necessary and then only after I have done TRACK and I have thoroughly controlled the hazard.

All site staff should arrive fit for work. If not, they should report to the supervisor any restrictions or concerns.

In the event of an injury, employees will call **WorkCare at 1.800.455.6155** and then notify the field supervisor.

Utility strike, motor vehicle accident or 3rd party protperty damage - field supervisor will immediately notify the Project or Task Manager

QUICK VIEW SHIPPING DETERMINATION FORM Revision 8

For Use by Field Staff

Date:	4/21/2016
Project Name:	Tioga Castings
Project Number:	266403

The material you will be shipping includes the following:
Water with ppb or low ppm concentrations of inorganic constituents with no odors: Metals (sodium, iron, maganese)

If this is not what you are shipping or if you need help, contact Breanna Quaglieri
at 518-250-7315 for assistance and guidance.

The material in your shipment has been classified as a: Not Restricted/Not Regulated

This material has been identified as:

PROPER SHIPPING NAME (including applicable modifiers and technical names):

An ID Number, Proper Shipping Name, Hazard Class, and Packing Group are not required for this shipment.

ID NUMBER: **NA** Hazard Class NA (NA) Packing Group NA

☐ The above information in RED is required on the outer package of your shipment as illustrated in the picture

☒ Follow Shipping Guide US-001 to prepare this shipment ☐ Follow Shipping Guide US-015 for dry ice

☐ Refer to the referenced HSSP to right for more information: NA

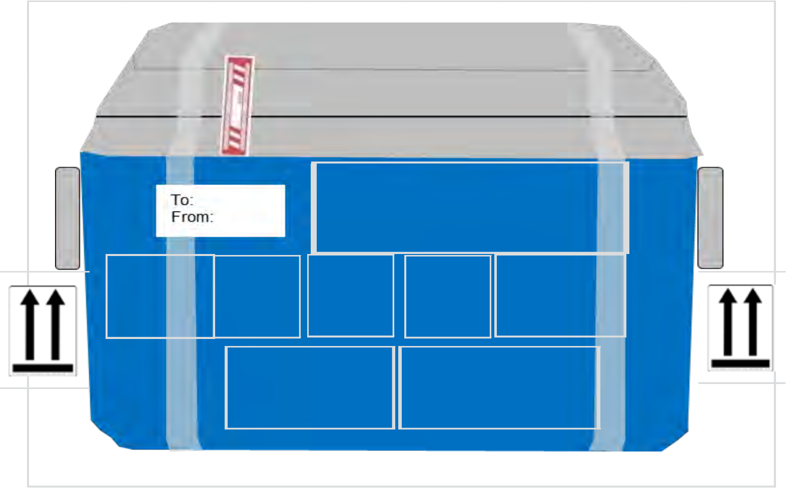
Package preparation configuration per package shipped (not to exceed):

Inner container sizes and quantity:

# of containers	Size	Type	Net Qty Each
4	500 ml	Plastic	500 ml
0	None	None	0 None
0	None	None	0 None
0	None	None	0 None
0	None	None	0 None
0	None	None	0 None

Intermediate packaging:	Plastic bag/liner
Outer packaging:	None

Your completed package must contain all of these marks and labels placed on the same side of the package (orientation arrows are to be placed on each end of the package) as shown below.



If you do not have all of the marks or labels shown above. DO NOT GIVE THE PACKAGE TO FEDEX or UPS. Orientation arrows may be red colored. If required, contact the individual listed above for assistance.

☐ Your supervisor (PM, TM, or Field supervisor) must register this shipment with ChemTel (the Arcadis 24 hour emergency phone number provider).

You must offer this shipment to: Arcadis or Lab Courier Transport

ARCADIS SHIPPING GUIDE NO. US-001

Environmental Sample Cooler Preparation
for Hazardous Materials Shipping
Do Not Use After 12/31/2016

1.0 Overview

This shipping guide provides guidance on the required shipping/transporting configuration for this material per U.S. Department of Transportation (DOT) and the International Air Transport Association (IATA) requirements. This guide **does not exempt** the user from the obligation of performing a proper Shipping Determination for the actual material to be shipped. This guide is subject to the limitations of Section 5.0 below.

2.0 Important Arcadis Prohibitions

Unless otherwise permitted by another Shipping Guide, HazMat Shipping Support Package (HSSP) or as permitted in the project Shipping Determination, ice chests used for hazardous material shipments **must not contain drain plugs** (solid plastic ice chests must be used).

ARCADIS prohibits the use of Igloo® Playmate® type ice chests for hazardous material shipments.

3.0 Preparation of Solid Materials for Shipment

Once collected, soil/solid samples should be promptly placed in a sample cooler on ice for preservation. The following general procedure is applicable to cooler preparation:

1. Select a sample cooler of suitable size for the number of samples to be shipped. In general, sample coolers should not exceed 52 quart capacity to reduce lifting hazards. Sample coolers will be new or clean and should be in good condition (manufacturer supplied handles/lid hinges intact, and no cracks or other impairments that might affect cooler integrity). Samples with large containers (16 oz. soil jars, etc) should be placed in coolers with a nominal capacity of 48 quarts.
2. Line the cooler with a large heavy duty plastic bag.
3. Place absorbent material in the bottom of the plastic bag (usually arrives in the cooler from the analytical laboratory). If not provided or the cooler is new, use vermiculite (approximately 2 inches) or other suitable absorbent. *Absorbent used must be compatible with the sample material, in sufficient quantity to absorb the entire contents of the inner packaging and of a type consistent with project data quality objectives.*
4. Place the soil containers (**with lids taped or secured by other secondary method**) into bubble wrap bags and secure.
5. Group and place soil sample sets **into self-sealing plastic bags**.
6. Place bagged soil sample containers in cooler and **make sure all bottles are in an upright position**.
7. Use blue ice or bag wet ice in self-sealing plastic bags.
8. Place ice on top of sample containers (fill remaining annulus of cooler with as much as possible).
9. Seal bag encompassing the sample containers and ice.
10. Place layer of bubble wrap over bag, if necessary.
11. Place Chain- of- Custody in self sealing plastic bag and secure to lid of cooler with tape.

12. Close and seal cooler with Chain-of-Custody Seals.
13. Tape lid of cooler shut by wrapping strapping tape completely around the cooler and over the Chain-of-Custody Seals.
14. Tape the drain plug, if permitted to be present, of the cooler with duct tape or strapping tape. DO NOT TAPE THE DRAIN PLUG SHUT IF THE COOLER CONTAINS DRY ICE.
15. Affix laboratory name and address label and other labels and marking as required by the applicable shipping guide to the outside of the cooler.
16. Complete air waybill and other shipping papers as required by the Shipping Determination.
17. Offer cooler for shipment.

4.0 Preparation of Liquid Materials for Shipment

Once collected, water samples should be promptly placed in a sample cooler on ice for preservation. The following general procedure is applicable to cooler preparation:

1. Select a sample cooler of suitable size for the number of samples to be shipped. In general, sample coolers should not exceed 52 quart capacity to reduce lifting hazards while maintaining sufficient space for adequate ice placement. Sample coolers will be new or clean and should be in good condition (manufacturer supplied handles/lid hinges intact, and no cracks or other impairments that might affect cooler integrity). Samples with large containers (1L glass, etc.) should be placed in coolers with a nominal capacity of 48 quarts.

2. Line the cooler with a large heavy duty plastic bag.
3. Place absorbent material in the bottom of the plastic bag (usually arrives in the cooler from the analytical laboratory). If not provided or the cooler is new, use vermiculite (approximately 2 inches) or other suitable absorbent. *Absorbent used must be compatible with the sample material, in sufficient quantity to absorb the entire contents of the inner packaging and of a type consistent with project data quality objectives.*
4. Place water containers (**with lids taped or secured by other secondary method)** into bubble wrap bags or wrap in bubble wrap and secure. If VOCs are collected, up to three 40 ml vials may be placed into a single bubble wrap bag. Large glass containers like 1L glass bottles to be double bubble wrapped/bagged for added protection. Sturdy plastic or metal containers do not need to be bubble wrapped.
5. Group and place water sample sets **into self-sealing plastic bags**. Since water sample sets may be large, a sample set may be grouped into several bags. Avoid mixing sample containers from different sample locations into the same bag to reduce potential for cross contamination.
6. Place water sample containers in cooler. **Keep all bottles in upright position**.
7. Use blue ice or bag wet ice in self-sealing plastic bags.
8. Place ice on top of sample containers (fill remaining annulus of cooler with as much as possible).
9. Seal large bag encompassing the sample containers and ice.
10. Place layer of bubble wrap over bag, if necessary.
11. Place Chain- of- Custody in self sealing plastic bag and secure to lid of
12. Close and seal cooler with Chain-of-Custody Seals.
13. Tape lid of cooler shut by wrapping strapping tape completely around the cooler and over the Chain-of-Custody Seals.
14. Tape the drain plug, if permitted to be present, of the cooler with duct tape or strapping tape. DO NOT TAPE THE DRAIN PLUG SHUT IF THE COOLER

CONTAINS DRY ICE.

15. Affix laboratory name and address label along with other required labels and markings as required by applicable shipping guide to the cooler.
16. Affix orientation (“UP”) arrows **on each end of the cooler**.
17. Complete air waybill and other shipping papers as required by the Shipping Determination.
18. Offer cooler for shipment.

5.0 Limitations

This shipping guide is limited to the following conditions:

1) Packaging described must be used, alternate packaging to be approved by ARCADIS Director of Transportation Safety or Transportation Safety Specialist.
2) Sample coolers should be less than or equal to 52 quart in size.
3) Sample cooler used must have good integrity, without any cracks or deformities, with manufacturer supplied handles and lid hinges in good
4) Specific packaging instructions may be presented in selected shipping guides and take precedence over requirements of this guide.
5) Employees preparing coolers for shipment are required to be trained in HazMat #1 or HazMat #12 training.

FLINN SCIENTIFIC, INC.
Safety Data Sheet (SDS)

SDS #: 246.00

Revision Date: June 5, 2014

SECTION 1 — CHEMICAL PRODUCT AND COMPANY IDENTIFICATION

Alconox® Cleaner

Flinn Scientific, Inc. P.O. Box 219, Batavia, IL 60510 (800) 452-1261

CHEMTREC Emergency Phone Number: (800) 424-9300

Signal Word **WARNING**

Pictograms

SECTION 2 — HAZARDS IDENTIFICATION

Hazard class: Skin and serious eye damage, corrosion or irritation (Category 2, 2A). Causes skin and serious eye irritation (H315+H319).

SECTION 3 — COMPOSITION, INFORMATION ON INGREDIENTS

Component Name	CAS Number	Formula	Formula Weight	Concentration
Proprietary mixture manufactured by Alconox, Inc.	None established	Proprietary	Proprietary	

SECTION 4 — FIRST AID MEASURES

Call a POISON CENTER or physician if you feel unwell.
If inhaled: Remove victim to fresh air and keep at rest in a position comfortable for breathing.
If in eyes: Rinse cautiously with water for several minutes. Remove contact lenses if present and easy to do so. Continue rinsing (P305+P351+P338). **If eye irritation persists:** Get medical advice or attention (P337+P313).
If on skin: Wash with plenty of water (P302+P352). **If skin irritation occurs:** Get medical advice or attention (P332+P313).
If swallowed: Rinse mouth. Call a POISON CENTER or physician if you feel unwell.

SECTION 5 — FIRE FIGHTING MEASURES

Nonflammable, noncombustible solid.
When heated to decomposition, may emit toxic fumes.
In case of fire: Use a tri-class dry chemical fire extinguisher.

NFPA CODE
None established

SECTION 6 — ACCIDENTAL RELEASE MEASURES

Sweep up the spill, place in a sealed bag or container, and dispose. Ventilate area and wash spill site after material pickup is complete. See Sections 8 and 13 for further information.

SECTION 7 — HANDLING AND STORAGE

Flinn Suggested Chemical Storage Pattern: Inorganic Miscellaneous, or near washing area.

SECTION 8 — EXPOSURE CONTROLS, PERSONAL PROTECTION

Wear protective gloves, protective clothing, and eye protection (P280). Wash hands thoroughly after handling (P264).

SECTION 9 — PHYSICAL AND CHEMICAL PROPERTIES

White to cream-colored flakes or powder. Slight chlorine odor.
Alconox is a trade name. Anionic detergent. No other details available from the manufacturer.
Soluble: Water

SECTION 10 — STABILITY AND REACTIVITY

Avoid strong acids and oxidizing agents.
Shelf life: Indefinite if kept dry.

SECTION 11 — TOXICOLOGICAL INFORMATION

Acute effects: Irritant.
Chronic effects: N.A.
Target organs: N.A.

ORL-RAT LD_{50}: N.A.
IHL-RAT LC_{50}: N.A.
SKN-RBT LD_{50}: N.A.

N.A. = Not available, not all health aspects of this substance have been fully investigated.

SECTION 12 — ECOLOGICAL INFORMATION

Data not yet available.

SECTION 13 — DISPOSAL CONSIDERATIONS

Please review all federal, state and local regulations that may apply before proceeding.
Flinn Suggested Disposal Method #26b is one option.
Material is completely biodegradable.

SECTION 14 — TRANSPORT INFORMATION

Shipping name: Not regulated. Hazard class: N/A. UN number: N/A.

N/A = Not applicable

SECTION 15 — REGULATORY INFORMATION

Not listed.

SECTION 16 — OTHER INFORMATION

This Safety Data Sheet (SDS) is for guidance and is based upon information and tests believed to be reliable. Flinn Scientific, Inc. makes no guarantee of the accuracy or completeness of the data and shall not be liable for any damages relating thereto. The data is offered solely for your consideration, investigation, and verification. The data should not be confused with local, state, federal or insurance mandates, regulations, or requirements and CONSTITUTE NO WARRANTY. Any use of this data and information must be determined by the science instructor to be in accordance with applicable local, state or federal laws and regulations. The conditions or methods of handling, storage, use and disposal of the product(s) described are beyond the control of Flinn Scientific, Inc. and may be beyond our knowledge. FOR THIS AND OTHER REASONS, WE DO NOT ASSUME RESPONSIBILITY AND EXPRESSLY DISCLAIM LIABILITY FOR LOSS, DAMAGE OR EXPENSE ARISING OUT OF OR IN ANY WAY CONNECTED WITH THE HANDLING, STORAGE, USE OR DISPOSAL OF THIS PRODUCT(S).

Consult your copy of the *Flinn Science Catalog/Reference Manual* for additional information about laboratory chemicals.

Revision Date: June 5, 2014

HORIBA

SAFETY DATA SHEET

00004US

1. Product and company identification

Product name : 100-4(Phthalate standard solution)

Product code : 3200043638, 9003001600

Relevant identified uses of the substance or mixture and uses advised against

Identified uses
Not available.

Uses advised against
Not available.

Supplier's details : HORIBA, Ltd.
2, Miyanohigashi, Kisshoin, Minami-ku, Kyoto 601-8510 JAPAN
Tel: +81-75-313-8121

Section 2. Hazards identification

OSHA/HCS status : While this material is not considered hazardous by the OSHA Hazard Communication Standard (29 CFR 1910.1200), this SDS contains valuable information critical to the safe handling and proper use of the product. This SDS should be retained and available for employees and other users of this product.

Classification of the substance or mixture : Not classified.

Percentage of the mixture consisting of ingredient(s) of unknown toxicity: 1%

GHS label elements

Signal word : No signal word.

Hazard statements : No known significant effects or critical hazards.

Precautionary statements

Prevention : Not applicable.

Response : Not applicable.

Storage : Not applicable.

Disposal : Not applicable.

Hazards not otherwise classified : None known.

Section 3. Composition/information on ingredients

Substance/mixture : Mixture

CAS number/other identifiers

Product code : 3200043638, 9003001600

Any concentration shown as a range is to protect confidentiality or is due to batch variation.

There are no ingredients present which, within the current knowledge of the supplier and in the concentrations applicable, are classified as hazardous to health or the environment and hence require reporting in this section.

Occupational exposure limits, if available, are listed in Section 8.

Section 4. First aid measures

Description of necessary first aid measures

Eye contact	: Immediately flush eyes with plenty of water, occasionally lifting the upper and lower eyelids. Check for and remove any contact lenses. Get medical attention if irritation occurs.
Inhalation	: Remove victim to fresh air and keep at rest in a position comfortable for breathing. Get medical attention if symptoms occur.
Skin contact	: Flush contaminated skin with plenty of water. Remove contaminated clothing and shoes. Get medical attention if symptoms occur.
Ingestion	: Wash out mouth with water. Remove victim to fresh air and keep at rest in a position comfortable for breathing. If material has been swallowed and the exposed person is conscious, give small quantities of water to drink. Do not induce vomiting unless directed to do so by medical personnel. Get medical attention if symptoms occur.

Most important symptoms/effects, acute and delayed

Potential acute health effects

Eye contact	: No known significant effects or critical hazards.
Inhalation	: No known significant effects or critical hazards.
Skin contact	: No known significant effects or critical hazards.
Ingestion	: No known significant effects or critical hazards.

Over-exposure signs/symptoms

Eye contact	: No specific data.
Inhalation	: No specific data.
Skin contact	: No specific data.
Ingestion	: No specific data.

Indication of immediate medical attention and special treatment needed, if necessary

Notes to physician	: Treat symptomatically. Contact poison treatment specialist immediately if large quantities have been ingested or inhaled.
Specific treatments	: No specific treatment.
Protection of first-aiders	: No action shall be taken involving any personal risk or without suitable training.

See toxicological information (Section 11)

Section 5. Fire-fighting measures

Extinguishing media

Suitable extinguishing media	: Use an extinguishing agent suitable for the surrounding fire.
Unsuitable extinguishing media	: None known.

Specific hazards arising from the chemical	: In a fire or if heated, a pressure increase will occur and the container may burst.
Hazardous thermal decomposition products	: Decomposition products may include the following materials: carbon dioxide carbon monoxide metal oxide/oxides
Special protective actions for fire-fighters	: Promptly isolate the scene by removing all persons from the vicinity of the incident if there is a fire. No action shall be taken involving any personal risk or without suitable training.
Special protective equipment for fire-fighters	: Fire-fighters should wear appropriate protective equipment and self-contained breathing apparatus (SCBA) with a full face-piece operated in positive pressure mode.

Section 6. Accidental release measures

Personal precautions, protective equipment and emergency procedures

For non-emergency personnel	No action shall be taken involving any personal risk or without suitable training. Evacuate surrounding areas. Keep unnecessary and unprotected personnel from entering. Do not touch or walk through spilled material. Put on appropriate personal protective equipment.
For emergency responders	If specialised clothing is required to deal with the spillage, take note of any information in Section 8 on suitable and unsuitable materials. See also the information in "For non-emergency personnel".

Environmental precautions	Avoid dispersal of spilled material and runoff and contact with soil, waterways, drains and sewers. Inform the relevant authorities if the product has caused environmental pollution (sewers, waterways, soil or air).

Methods and materials for containment and cleaning up

Small spill	Stop leak if without risk. Move containers from spill area. Dilute with water and mop up if water-soluble. Alternatively, or if water-insoluble, absorb with an inert dry material and place in an appropriate waste disposal container. Dispose of via a licensed waste disposal contractor.
Large spill	Stop leak if without risk. Move containers from spill area. Prevent entry into sewers, water courses, basements or confined areas. Wash spillages into an effluent treatment plant or proceed as follows. Contain and collect spillage with non-combustible, absorbent material e.g. sand, earth, vermiculite or diatomaceous earth and place in container for disposal according to local regulations (see Section 13). Dispose of via a licensed waste disposal contractor. Note: see Section 1 for emergency contact information and Section 13 for waste disposal.

Section 7. Handling and storage

Precautions for safe handling

Protective measures	Put on appropriate personal protective equipment (see Section 8).
Advice on general occupational hygiene	Eating, drinking and smoking should be prohibited in areas where this material is handled, stored and processed. Workers should wash hands and face before eating, drinking and smoking. Remove contaminated clothing and protective equipment before entering eating areas. See also Section 8 for additional information on hygiene measures.

Conditions for safe storage, including any incompatibilities	Store in accordance with local regulations. Store in original container protected from direct sunlight in a dry, cool and well-ventilated area, away from incompatible materials (see Section 10) and food and drink. Keep container tightly closed and sealed until ready for use. Containers that have been opened must be carefully resealed and kept upright to prevent leakage. Do not store in unlabeled containers. Use appropriate containment to avoid environmental contamination.

Section 8. Exposure controls/personal protection

Control parameters

Occupational exposure limits

None.

Appropriate engineering controls	Good general ventilation should be sufficient to control worker exposure to airborne contaminants.
Environmental exposure controls	Emissions from ventilation or work process equipment should be checked to ensure they comply with the requirements of environmental protection legislation. In some cases, fume scrubbers, filters or engineering modifications to the process equipment will be necessary to reduce emissions to acceptable levels.

Individual protection measures

Section 8. Exposure controls/personal protection

Hygiene measures : Wash hands, forearms and face thoroughly after handling chemical products, before eating, smoking and using the lavatory and at the end of the working period. Appropriate techniques should be used to remove potentially contaminated clothing. Wash contaminated clothing before reusing. Ensure that eyewash stations and safety showers are close to the workstation location.

Eye/face protection : Safety eyewear complying with an approved standard should be used when a risk assessment indicates this is necessary to avoid exposure to liquid splashes, mists, gases or dusts. If contact is possible, the following protection should be worn, unless the assessment indicates a higher degree of protection: safety glasses with side-shields.

Skin protection

Hand protection : Chemical-resistant, impervious gloves complying with an approved standard should be worn at all times when handling chemical products if a risk assessment indicates this is necessary.

Body protection : Personal protective equipment for the body should be selected based on the task being performed and the risks involved and should be approved by a specialist before handling this product.

Other skin protection : Appropriate footwear and any additional skin protection measures should be selected based on the task being performed and the risks involved and should be approved by a specialist before handling this product.

Respiratory protection : Use a properly fitted, air-purifying or air-fed respirator complying with an approved standard if a risk assessment indicates this is necessary. Respirator selection must be based on known or anticipated exposure levels, the hazards of the product and the safe working limits of the selected respirator.

Section 9. Physical and chemical properties

Appearance

Physical state : Liquid.

Color : Colorless.

Odor : Odorless.

Odor threshold : Not available.

pH : 4.01

Melting point : 0°C (32°F)

Boiling point : 100°C (212°F)

Flash point : [Product does not sustain combustion.]

Evaporation rate : Not available.

Flammability (solid, gas) : Not available.

Lower and upper explosive (flammable) limits : Not available.

Vapor pressure : Not available.

Vapor density : Not available.

Relative density : Not available.

Solubility : Not available.

Partition coefficient: n-octanol/water : Not available.

Auto-ignition temperature : Not available.

Decomposition temperature : Not available.

Viscosity : Not available.

Section 10. Stability and reactivity

Reactivity : No specific test data related to reactivity available for this product or its ingredients.

Chemical stability : The product is stable.

Possibility of hazardous reactions : Hazardous reactions or instability may occur under certain conditions of storage or use.

Conditions to avoid : No specific data.

Incompatible materials : No specific data.

Hazardous decomposition products : Under normal conditions of storage and use, hazardous decomposition products should not be produced.

Section 11. Toxicological information

Information on toxicological effects

Acute toxicity

Not available.

Irritation/Corrosion

Not available.

Sensitization

Not available.

Mutagenicity

Not available.

Carcinogenicity

Not available.

Reproductive toxicity

Not available.

Teratogenicity

Not available.

Specific target organ toxicity (single exposure)

Not available.

Specific target organ toxicity (repeated exposure)

Not available.

Aspiration hazard

Not available.

Information on the likely routes of exposure : Not available.

Potential acute health effects

Eye contact : No known significant effects or critical hazards.
Inhalation : No known significant effects or critical hazards.
Skin contact : No known significant effects or critical hazards.
Ingestion : No known significant effects or critical hazards.

Symptoms related to the physical, chemical and toxicological characteristics

Section 11. Toxicological information

Eye contact : No specific data.
Inhalation : No specific data.
Skin contact : No specific data.
Ingestion : No specific data.

Delayed and immediate effects and also chronic effects from short and long term exposure

Short term exposure

Potential immediate effects : Not available.
Potential delayed effects : Not available.

Long term exposure

Potential immediate effects : Not available.
Potential delayed effects : Not available.

Potential chronic health effects

Not available.

General : No known significant effects or critical hazards.
Carcinogenicity : No known significant effects or critical hazards.
Mutagenicity : No known significant effects or critical hazards.
Teratogenicity : No known significant effects or critical hazards.
Developmental effects : No known significant effects or critical hazards.
Fertility effects : No known significant effects or critical hazards.

Numerical measures of toxicity

Acute toxicity estimates

Not available.

Section 12. Ecological information

Toxicity

Not available.

Persistence and degradability

Not available.

Bioaccumulative potential

Not available.

Mobility in soil

Soil/water partition coefficient (K_{OC}) : Not available.

Other adverse effects : No known significant effects or critical hazards.

Section 13. Disposal considerations

Disposal methods : The generation of waste should be avoided or minimized wherever possible. Disposal of this product, solutions and any by-products should at all times comply with the requirements of environmental protection and waste disposal legislation and any regional local authority requirements. Dispose of surplus and non-recyclable products via a licensed waste disposal contractor. Waste should not be disposed of untreated to the sewer unless fully compliant with the requirements of all authorities with jurisdiction. Waste packaging should be recycled. Incineration or landfill should only be considered when recycling is not feasible. This material and its container must be disposed of in a safe way. Empty containers or liners may retain some product residues. Avoid dispersal of spilled material and runoff and contact with soil, waterways, drains and sewers.

Section 14. Transport information

	DOT Classification	TDG Classification	Mexico Classification	ADR/RID	IMDG	IATA
UN number	No.	No.	No.	No.	No.	No.
UN proper shipping name	No.	No.	No.	No.	No.	No.
Transport hazard class(es)	No.	No.	No.	No.	No.	No.
Packing group	-	-	-	-	-	-
Environmental hazards	No.	No.	No.	No.	No.	No.
Additional information	-	-	-	-	-	-

Special precautions for user : **Transport within user’s premises:** always transport in closed containers that are upright and secure. Ensure that persons transporting the product know what to do in the event of an accident or spillage.

Section 15. Regulatory information

U.S. Federal regulations : **TSCA 8(a) CDR Exempt/Partial exemption**: Not determined

United States inventory (TSCA 8b): All components are listed or exempted.

Clean Air Act Section 112 (b) Hazardous Air Pollutants (HAPs) : Not listed

Clean Air Act Section 602 Class I Substances : Not listed

Clean Air Act Section 602 Class II Substances : Not listed

DEA List I Chemicals (Precursor Chemicals) : Not listed

DEA List II Chemicals (Essential Chemicals) : Not listed

SARA 302/304

Composition/information on ingredients

No products were found.

Section 15. Regulatory information

SARA 304 RQ : Not applicable.

SARA 311/312

Classification : Not applicable.

Composition/information on ingredients

No products were found.

State regulations

Massachusetts : None of the components are listed.

New York : None of the components are listed.

New Jersey : None of the components are listed.

Pennsylvania : None of the components are listed.

International regulations

Chemical Weapon Convention List Schedules I, II & III Chemicals

Not listed.

Montreal Protocol (Annexes A, B, C, E)

Not listed.

Stockholm Convention on Persistent Organic Pollutants

Not listed.

Rotterdam Convention on Prior Inform Consent (PIC)

Not listed.

UNECE Aarhus Protocol on POPs and Heavy Metals

Not listed.

Section 16. Other information

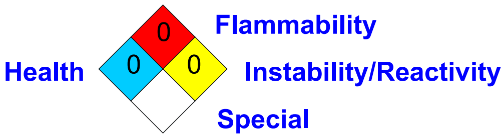
Hazardous Material Information System (U.S.A.)

Health	0
Flammability	0
Physical hazards	0

Caution: HMIS® ratings are based on a 0-4 rating scale, with 0 representing minimal hazards or risks, and 4 representing significant hazards or risks Although HMIS® ratings are not required on SDSs under 29 CFR 1910. 1200, the preparer may choose to provide them. HMIS® ratings are to be used with a fully implemented HMIS® program. HMIS® is a registered mark of the National Paint & Coatings Association (NPCA). HMIS® materials may be purchased exclusively from J. J. Keller (800) 327-6868.

The customer is responsible for determining the PPE code for this material.

National Fire Protection Association (U.S.A.)



Reprinted with permission from NFPA 704-2001, Identification of the Hazards of Materials for Emergency Response Copyright ©1997, National Fire Protection Association, Quincy, MA 02269. This reprinted material is not the complete and official position of the National Fire Protection Association, on the referenced subject which is represented only by the standard in its entirety.

Section 16. Other information

Copyright ©2001, National Fire Protection Association, Quincy, MA 02269. This warning system is intended to be interpreted and applied only by properly trained individuals to identify fire, health and reactivity hazards of chemicals. The user is referred to certain limited number of chemicals with recommended classifications in NFPA 49 and NFPA 325, which would be used as a guideline only. Whether the chemicals are classified by NFPA or not, anyone using the 704 systems to classify chemicals does so at their own risk.

History

Date of issue/Date of revision : 2015/05/29.

Date of previous issue : No previous validation.

Key to abbreviations :
ATE = Acute Toxicity Estimate
BCF = Bioconcentration Factor
GHS = Globally Harmonized System of Classification and Labelling of Chemicals
IATA = International Air Transport Association
IBC = Intermediate Bulk Container
IMDG = International Maritime Dangerous Goods
LogPow = logarithm of the octanol/water partition coefficient
MARPOL 73/78 = International Convention for the Prevention of Pollution From Ships, 1973 as modified by the Protocol of 1978. ("Marpol" = marine pollution)
UN = United Nations

Indicates information that has changed from previously issued version.

Notice to reader

To the best of our knowledge, the information contained herein is accurate. However, neither the above-named supplier, nor any of its subsidiaries, assumes any liability whatsoever for the accuracy or completeness of the information contained herein.

Final determination of suitability of any material is the sole responsibility of the user. All materials may present unknown hazards and should be used with caution. Although certain hazards are described herein, we cannot guarantee that these are the only hazards that exist.

Safety Data Sheet
acc. to OSHA HCS

Printing date 10/02/2013 Reviewed on 10/02/2013

1 Identification

· **Product identifier**

· **Trade name: pH7 Standard Solution 100-7**

· **Article Code:** 3200043637 (9003001700)
· **MSDS No:** 3
· **Relevant identified uses of the substance or mixture and uses advised against**
No further relevant information available.
· **Application of the substance / the preparation** Calibration for pH electrode

· **Details of the supplier of the safety data sheet**
· **Manufacturer/Supplier:**
HORIBA, Ltd.
2 Miyanohigashi, Kisshoin,
Minami-ku Kyoto, Japan, KYOTO
601-8510 JAPAN

· **Information department:** Liquid & Water Quality R&D Dept
· **Emergency telephone number:**
During normal opening times: +81 75 313-8121
USA Contact : Chemtrec (800) 424-9300

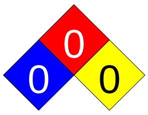
2 Hazard(s) identification

· **Classification of the substance or mixture**
The product is not classified according to the Globally Harmonized System (GHS).

· **Classification according to Directive 67/548/EEC or Directive 1999/45/EC** Not applicable.
· **Information concerning particular hazards for human and environment:**
The product does not have to be labeled due to the calculation procedure of international guidelines.
· **Classification system:**
The classification was made according to the latest editions of international substances lists, and expanded upon from company and literature data.

· **Label elements**

· **Labelling according to EU guidelines:**
Observe the general safety regulations when handling chemicals.
The product is not subject to identification regulations according to directives on hazardous materials.
· **Classification system:**
· **NFPA ratings (scale 0 - 4)**



Health = 0
Fire = 0
Reactivity = 0

· **HMIS-ratings (scale 0 - 4)**

HEALTH	0
FIRE	0
REACTIVITY	0

Health = 0
Fire = 0
Reactivity = 0

· **Other hazards**
· **Results of PBT and vPvB assessment**
· **PBT:** Not applicable.

(Contd. on page 2)

(Contd. of page 1)

· ***vPvB:*** *Not applicable.*

3 Composition/information on ingredients

· ***Chemical characterization: Mixtures***
· ***Description:*** *Mixture of the substances listed below with nonhazardous additions.*

· ***Components:***		
7778-77-0	*potassium dihydrogenorthophosphate*	*Nearly 0.34%*
7558-79-4	*disodium hydrogenorthophosphate*	*Nearly 0.36%*

4 First-aid measures

· ***Description of first aid measures***
· ***General information:*** *No special measures required.*
· ***After inhalation:***
Remove the victim to fresh air, and make him blow his nose and gargle.Refer for medical attenation.
· ***After skin contact:*** *Wash the affect areas under running water.*
· ***After eye contact:*** *Rinse opened eye for several minutes under running water. Then consult a doctor.*
· ***After swallowing:***
Rinse mouth with water. Give the person one or two glasses of water, and let vomit. Refer for medical attenation.
· ***Information for doctor:***
· ***Most important symptoms and effects, both acute and delayed*** *No further relevant information available.*
· ***Indication of any immediate medical attention and special treatment needed***
No further relevant information available.

5 Fire-fighting measures

· ***Extinguishing media***
· ***Suitable extinguishing agents:*** *This product is noncombustible.*
· ***Special hazards arising from the substance or mixture*** *No further relevant information available.*
· ***Advice for firefighters***
· ***Protective equipment:*** *No special measures required.*

6 Accidental release measures

· ***Personal precautions, protective equipment and emergency procedures*** *Not required.*
· ***Environmental precautions:*** *No special measures required.*
· ***Methods and material for containment and cleaning up:***
Sweep up and place in a vessel. Flush residual area with water.
· ***Reference to other sections*** *No dangerous substances are released.*

(Contd. on page 3)

(Contd. of page 2)

7 Handling and storage

- ***Handling:***
- ***Precautions for safe handling***
  Keep away from heat and direct sunlight.
  Keep receptacles tightly sealed.
- ***Information about protection against explosions and fires:*** *No special measures required.*

- ***Conditions for safe storage, including any incompatibilities***
- ***Storage:***
- ***Requirements to be met by storerooms and receptacles:*** *Store in a cool location.*
- ***Information about storage in one common storage facility:*** *Not required.*
- ***Further information about storage conditions:***
  Keep receptacle tightly sealed.
  Protect from heat and direct sunlight.
- ***Specific end use(s)*** *No further relevant information available.*

8 Exposure controls/personal protection

- ***Additional information about design of technical systems:***
  Provide good ventilation. Make available washbasin and eye wash near the work area.

- ***Control parameters***
- ***Components with limit values that require monitoring at the workplace:***
  The product does not contain any relevant quantities of materials with critical values that have to be monitored at the workplace.
- ***Additional information:*** *The lists that were valid during the creation were used as basis.*

- ***Exposure controls***
- ***Personal protective equipment:***
- ***General protective and hygienic measures:***
  The usual precautionary measures for handling chemicals should be followed.
- ***Breathing equipment:*** *Suitable respiratory protective device recommended.*
- ***Protection of hands:***
  The glove material has to be impermeable and resistant to the product/ the substance/ the preparation.
  Due to missing tests no recommendation to the glove material can be given for the product/ the preparation/ the chemical mixture.
  Selection of the glove material on consideration of the penetration times, rates of diffusion and the degradation
- ***Material of gloves***
  The selection of the suitable gloves does not only depend on the material, but also on further marks of quality and varies from manufacturer to manufacturer. As the product is a preparation of several substances, the resistance of the glove material can not be calculated in advance and has therefore to be checked prior to the application.
- ***Penetration time of glove material***
  The exact break through time has to be found out by the manufacturer of the protective gloves and has to be observed.
- ***Eye protection:*** *Goggles recommended during refilling.*

(Contd. on page 4)

(Contd. of page 3)

· ***Body protection:*** *Use protective suit.*

9 Physical and chemical properties

· ***Information on basic physical and chemical properties***	
· ***General Information***	
· ***Appearance:***	
Form:	*Liquid*
Color:	*Colorless*
· ***Odor:***	*Odorless*
· ***pH-value at 25 °C (77 °F):***	*6.86*
· ***Change in condition***	
Melting point/Melting range:	*0 °C (32 °F)*
Boiling point/Boiling range:	*100 °C (212 °F)*
· ***Flash point:***	*Not applicable.*
· ***Auto igniting:***	*Product is not selfigniting.*
· ***Danger of explosion:***	*Product does not present an explosion hazard.*
· ***Density at 20 °C (68 °F):***	*1 g/cm^3 (8.345 lbs/gal)*
· ***Solubility in / Miscibility with***	
Water:	*Fully miscible.*
· ***Other information***	*No further relevant information available.*

10 Stability and reactivity

· ***Reactivity***
· ***Chemical stability***
· ***Thermal decomposition / conditions to be avoided:*** *No decomposition if used according to specifications.*
· ***Possibility of hazardous reactions*** *No dangerous reactions known.*
· ***Conditions to avoid*** *No further relevant information available.*
· ***Incompatible materials:*** *No further relevant information available.*
· ***Hazardous decomposition products:*** *No dangerous decomposition products known.*

11 Toxicological information

· ***Information on toxicological effects***
· ***Acute toxicity:***

· ***LD/LC50 values that are relevant for classification:***		
7778-77-0 potassium dihydrogenorthophosphate		
Oral	*LD50*	*2000 mg/kg (mouse)*
7558-79-4 disodium hydrogenorthophosphate		
Oral	*LD50*	*17000 mg/kg (rat)*

· ***Primary irritant effect:***
· ***on the skin:*** *No irritant effect.*

(Contd. on page 5)

(Contd. of page 4)

- ***on the eye:*** *No irritating effect.*
- ***Sensitization:*** *No sensitizing effects known.*
- ***Additional toxicological information:***
  The product is not subject to classification according to internally approved calculation methods for preparations:
  When used and handled according to specifications, the product does not have any harmful effects according to our experience and the information provided to us.

- ***Carcinogenic categories***
- ***IARC (International Agency for Research on Cancer)***
  None of the ingredients is listed.
- ***NTP (National Toxicology Program)***
  None of the ingredients is listed.

12 Ecological information

- ***Toxicity***
- ***Aquatic toxicity:*** *No further relevant information available.*
- ***Persistence and degradability*** *No further relevant information available.*
- ***Behavior in environmental systems:***
- ***Bioaccumulative potential*** *No further relevant information available.*
- ***Mobility in soil*** *No further relevant information available.*
- ***Additional ecological information:***
- ***General notes:*** *Generally not hazardous for water*
- ***Results of PBT and vPvB assessment***
- ***PBT:*** *Not applicable.*
- ***vPvB:*** *Not applicable.*
- ***Other adverse effects*** *No further relevant information available.*

13 Disposal considerations

- ***Waste treatment methods***
- ***Recommendation:*** *Must be specially treated adhering to official regulations.*

- ***Uncleaned packagings:***
- ***Recommendation:*** *Disposal must be made according to official regulations.*

14 Transport information

· ***UN-Number***	
· ***DOT, ADR, ADN, IMDG, IATA***	*Void*
· ***UN proper shipping name***	
· ***DOT, ADR, ADN, IMDG, IATA***	*Void*
· ***Transport hazard class(es)***	
· ***DOT, ADR, ADN, IMDG, IATA***	
· ***Class***	*Void*

(Contd. on page 6)

(Contd. of page 5)

· **Packing group** · **DOT, ADR, IMDG, IATA**	*Void*
· **Environmental hazards:** · **Marine pollutant:**	*No*
· **Special precautions for user**	*Not applicable.*
· **Transport in bulk according to Annex II of MARPOL73/78 and the IBC Code**	*Not applicable.*
· **Transport/Additional information:**	*Cheak the containers are thghthly sealed. Handle carefully so that they will not be damaged by falling or dropping. Keep away from water.*
· **UN "Model Regulation":**	-

15 Regulatory information

· **Safety, health and environmental regulations/legislation specific for the substance or mixture**

· **Sara**

· **Section 355 (extremely hazardous substances):**

None of the ingredients is listed.

· **Section 313 (Specific toxic chemical listings):**

None of the ingredients is listed.

· **TSCA (Toxic Substances Control Act):**

All ingredients are listed.

· **Proposition 65**

· **Chemicals known to cause cancer:**

None of the ingredients is listed.

· **Chemicals known to cause reproductive toxicity for females:**

None of the ingredients is listed.

· **Chemicals known to cause reproductive toxicity for males:**

None of the ingredients is listed.

· **Chemicals known to cause developmental toxicity:**

None of the ingredients is listed.

· **Carcinogenic categories**

· **EPA (Environmental Protection Agency)**

None of the ingredients is listed.

· **TLV (Threshold Limit Value established by ACGIH)**

None of the ingredients is listed.

· **NIOSH-Ca (National Institute for Occupational Safety and Health)**

None of the ingredients is listed.

(Contd. on page 7)

Safety Data Sheet
acc. to OSHA HCS

(Contd. of page 6)

· **OSHA-Ca (Occupational Safety & Health Administration)**

None of the ingredients is listed.

· **Product related hazard informations:**
Observe the general safety regulations when handling chemicals.
The product is not subject to identification regulations according to directives on hazardous materials.

· **National regulations:**

· **Water hazard class:** *Generally not hazardous for water.*
· **Chemical safety assessment:** *A Chemical Safety Assessment has not been carried out.*

16 Other information

HORIBA, Ltd. provides the information contained herein in good faith but makes no representation as to its comprehensives or accuracy. This document is intended only as a guide to the appropriate precautionary handling of the material by a properly trained person using this product. Individuals receiving the information must exercise their independent judgment in determining its appropriateness for a particular purpose.
HORIBA , Ltd. MAKES NO REPRESENTATION OR WARRANTIES, EITHER EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING WITHOUT LIMITATION ANY WARRANTIES OF MARCHANTABILITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE WITH RESPECT TO THE INFORMOTION SET FORTH HEREIN OR THE PRODUCT TO WHICH THE INFORMATION REFERS. ACCORDINGLY, HORIBA, Ltd. WILL NOT BE RESPONSIBLE FOR DAMAGES RESULTING FROM USE OF OR RELIANCE UPON THIS INFORMATION.

· **Department issuing MSDS:** *Water and Temperature Measurement R&D Dept.*
· **Abbreviations and acronyms:**
RID: Règlement international concernant le transport des marchandises dangereuses par chemin de fer (Regulations Concerning the International Transport of Dangerous Goods by Rail)
IATA-DGR: Dangerous Goods Regulations by the "International Air Transport Association" (IATA)
ICAO: International Civil Aviation Organization
ICAO-TI: Technical Instructions by the "International Civil Aviation Organization" (ICAO)
ADR: Accord européen sur le transport des marchandises dangereuses par Route (European Agreement concerning the International Carriage of Dangerous Goods by Road)
IMDG: International Maritime Code for Dangerous Goods
DOT: US Department of Transportation
IATA: International Air Transport Association
ACGIH: American Conference of Governmental Industrial Hygienists
EINECS: European Inventory of Existing Commercial Chemical Substances
ELINCS: European List of Notified Chemical Substances
CAS: Chemical Abstracts Service (division of the American Chemical Society)
NFPA: National Fire Protection Association (USA)
HMIS: Hazardous Materials Identification System (USA)
LC50: Lethal concentration, 50 percent
LD50: Lethal dose, 50 percent
· **Sources**
HANDBOOK OF ENVIROMENTAL DATA ON ORGANIC CHEMICALS (Karel Verschueren VAN NOSTRAND REINHOLD)
The Sigma-Aldrich Library Regulatory and Safety Data
Safety data sheet guidebook edited by the information center of the Society for Japan Chemical Industry
· *** Data compared to the previous version altered.**

Date	*May. 11, 1999*
Revised	*Dec. 13, 2009*
Revised	*Oct. 2, 2013*

Material Safety Data Sheet
acc. to ISO/DIS 11014

Printing date 02/26/2010 *Reviewed on 03/26/2009*

1 Identification of substance

· **Product details**

· **Trade name: 100-10 (Sodium Carbonate std. sol.)**

· **Article Code:** *3200043635 (9003001900)*
· **MSDS No:** *26*
· **Application of the substance / the preparation** *pH Standard solution*

· **Manufacturer/Supplier:**
HORIBA, Ltd.
2 Miyanohigashi, Kisshoin,
Minami-ku Kyoto, Japan, KYOTO
601-8510 JAPAN

· **Information department:** *Water and Temperature Measurement R&D Dept.*
· **Emergency information:**
During normal opening times: +81 75 313-8121
USA Contact : Chemtrec (800) 424-9300

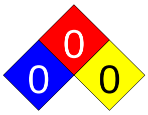
2 Composition/Data on components

· **Chemical characterization**
· **Description:** *Mixture of the substances listed below with nonhazardous additions.*

· **Components:**			
144-55-8	sodium hydrogencarbonate		0.21%
497-19-8	sodium carbonate	Warning: ⚠ 3.3/2A	0.27%

3 Hazards identification

· **Hazard description:** *Not applicable.*
· **Information pertaining to particular dangers for man and environment:**
The product does not have to be labelled due to the calculation procedure of international guidelines.
· **Classification system:**
The classification was made according to the latest editions of international substances lists, and expanded upon from company and literature data.
· **NFPA ratings (scale 0 - 4)**



Health = 0
Fire = 0
Reactivity = 0

· **HMIS-ratings (scale 0 - 4)**

Health = 0
Fire = 0
Reactivity = 0

· **GHS label elements** *Void*

4 First aid measures

· **General information:** *No special measures required.*

(Contd. on page 2)

(Contd. of page 1)

- · ***After inhalation:*** *Supply fresh air; consult doctor in case of complaints.*
- · ***After skin contact:*** *Generally the product does not irritate the skin.*
- · ***After eye contact:*** *Rinse opened eye for several minutes under running water.*
- · ***After swallowing:*** *If symptoms persist consult doctor.*

5 Fire fighting measures

- · ***Suitable extinguishing agents:***
  CO2, extinguishing powder or water spray. Fight larger fires with water spray or alcohol resistant foam.
- · ***Protective equipment:*** *No special measures required.*

6 Accidental release measures

- · ***Person-related safety precautions:*** *Not required.*
- · ***Measures for environmental protection:*** *Dilute with plenty of water.*
- · ***Measures for cleaning/collecting:***
  Absorb with liquid-binding material (sand, diatomite, acid binders, universal binders, sawdust).
- · ***Additional information:*** *No dangerous substances are released.*

7 Handling and storage

- · ***Handling:***
- · ***Information for safe handling:*** *No special measures required.*
- · ***Information about protection against explosions and fires:*** *No special measures required.*

- · ***Storage:***
- · ***Requirements to be met by storerooms and receptacles:*** *No special requirements.*
- · ***Information about storage in one common storage facility:*** *Not required.*
- · ***Further information about storage conditions:*** *None.*
- · ***Class according to regulation on flammable liquids:*** *Void*

8 Exposure controls and personal protection

- · ***Additional information about design of technical systems:*** *No further data; see item 7.*

- · ***Components with limit values that require monitoring at the workplace:***
  The product does not contain any relevant quantities of materials with critical values that have to be monitored at the workplace.
- · ***Additional information:*** *The lists that were valid during the creation were used as basis.*

- · ***Personal protective equipment:***
- · ***General protective and hygienic measures:***
  The usual precautionary measures for handling chemicals should be followed.
- · ***Breathing equipment:*** *Not required.*
- · ***Protection of hands:***
  The glove material has to be impermeable and resistant to the product/ the substance/ the preparation.
  Due to missing tests no recommendation to the glove material can be given for the product/ the preparation/ the chemical mixture.

(Contd. on page 3)

Material Safety Data Sheet

acc. to ISO/DIS 11014

Printing date 02/26/2010 *Reviewed on 03/26/2009*

Trade name: 100-10 (Sodium Carbonate std. sol.)

(Contd. of page 2)

Selection of the glove material on consideration of the penetration times, rates of diffusion and the degradation

· ***Material of gloves***

The selection of the suitable gloves does not only depend on the material, but also on further marks of quality and varies from manufacturer to manufacturer. As the product is a preparation of several substances, the resistance of the glove material can not be calculated in advance and has therefore to be checked prior to the application.

· ***Penetration time of glove material***

The exact break through time has to be found out by the manufacturer of the protective gloves and has to be observed.

· ***Eye protection:*** *Goggles recommended during refilling.*

9 Physical and chemical properties

· ***General Information***	
Form:	*Fluid*
Color:	*According to product specification*
Odor:	*Characteristic*
· ***Change in condition***	
Melting point/Melting range:	*Undetermined.*
Boiling point/Boiling range:	*100°C (212°F)*
· ***Flash point:***	*Not applicable.*
· ***Auto igniting:***	*Product is not selfigniting.*
· ***Danger of explosion:***	*Product does not present an explosion hazard.*
· ***Density at 20°C (68°F):***	*1 g/cm³*
· ***Solubility in / Miscibility with***	
Water:	*Fully miscible.*

10 Stability and reactivity

· ***Thermal decomposition / conditions to be avoided:*** *No decomposition if used according to specifications.*
· ***Dangerous reactions*** *No dangerous reactions known.*
· ***Dangerous products of decomposition:*** *No dangerous decomposition products known.*

11 Toxicological information

· ***Acute toxicity:***

· ***LD/LC50 values that are relevant for classification:***		
144-55-8 sodium hydrogencarbonate		
Oral	*LD50*	*4220 mg/kg (rat)*
497-19-8 sodium carbonate		
Oral	*LD50*	*4090 mg/kg (rat)*

(Contd. on page 4)

(Contd. of page 3)

- ***Primary irritant effect:***
- ***on the skin:*** *No irritant effect.*
- ***on the eye:*** *No irritating effect.*
- ***Sensitization:*** *No sensitizing effects known.*
- ***Additional toxicological information:***

The product is not subject to classification according to internally approved calculation methods for preparations:
When used and handled according to specifications, the product does not have any harmful effects according to our experience and the information provided to us.

12 Ecological information

- ***General notes:*** *Generally not hazardous for water*

13 Disposal considerations

- ***Product:***
- ***Recommendation:*** *Must be specially treated adhering to official regulations.*

- ***Uncleaned packagings:***
- ***Recommendation:*** *Disposal must be made according to official regulations.*
- ***Recommended cleansing agent:*** *Water, if necessary with cleansing agents.*

14 Transport information

- ***DOT regulations:***
- ***Hazard class:*** -

- ***Land transport ADR/RID (cross-border):***
- ***ADR/RID class:*** -

- ***Maritime transport IMDG:***
- ***IMDG Class:*** -
- ***Marine pollutant:*** *No*

- ***Air transport ICAO-TI and IATA-DGR:***
- ***ICAO/IATA Class:*** -

- ***UN "Model Regulation":*** -

15 Regulations

- ***Sara***
- ***Section 355 (extremely hazardous substances):***

None of the ingredients is listed.

- ***Section 313 (Specific toxic chemical listings):***

None of the ingredients is listed.

(Contd. on page 5)

(Contd. of page 4)

· ***TSCA (Toxic Substances Control Act):***

All ingredients are listed.

· ***Proposition 65***

· ***Chemicals known to cause cancer:***

None of the ingredients is listed.

· ***Chemicals known to cause reproductive toxicity for females:***

None of the ingredients is listed.

· ***Chemicals known to cause reproductive toxicity for males:***

None of the ingredients is listed.

· ***Chemicals known to cause developmental toxicity:***

None of the ingredients is listed.

· ***Carcinogenicity categories***

· ***EPA (Environmental Protection Agency)***

None of the ingredients is listed.

· ***IARC (International Agency for Research on Cancer)***

None of the ingredients is listed.

· ***NTP (National Toxicology Program)***

None of the ingredients is listed.

· ***TLV (Threshold Limit Value established by ACGIH)***

None of the ingredients is listed.

· ***NIOSH-Ca (National Institute for Occupational Safety and Health)***

None of the ingredients is listed.

· ***OSHA-Ca (Occupational Safety & Health Administration)***

None of the ingredients is listed.

· ***Product related hazard informations:***
Observe the general safety regulations when handling chemicals.
The product is not subject to identification regulations according to directives on hazardous materials.

· ***National regulations:***

· ***Classification according to VbF:*** *Void*

· ***Water hazard class:*** *Generally not hazardous for water.*

16 Other information

HORIBA, Ltd. provides the information contained herein in good faith but makes no representation as to its comprehensives or accuracy. This document is intended only as a guide to the appropriate precautionary handling of the material by a properly trained person using this product. Individuals receiving the information must exercise their independent judgment in determining its appropriateness for a particular purpose.
HORIBA , Ltd. MAKES NO REPRESENTATION OR WARRANTIES, EITHER EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING WITHOUT LIMITATION ANY WARRANTIES OF MARCHANTABILITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE WITH RESPECT TO THE INFORMOTION SET FORTH HEREIN OR THE PRODUCT TO WHICH THE INFORMATION REFERS. ACCORDINGLY, HORIBA, Ltd. WILL NOT BE RESPONSIBLE FOR DAMAGES RESULTING FROM USE OF OR RELIANCE UPON THIS

(Contd. on page 6)

(Contd. of page 5)

INFORMATION.

· ***Department issuing MSDS:*** *Quality Assurance Center*

· ***Abbreviations and acronyms:***

ADR: Accord européen sur le transport des marchandises dangereuses par Route (European Agreement concerning the International Carriage of Dangerous Goods by Road)
RID: Règlement international concernant le transport des marchandises dangereuses par chemin de fer (Regulations Concerning the International Transport of Dangerous Goods by Rail)
IMDG: International Maritime Code for Dangerous Goods
DOT: US Department of Transportation
IATA: International Air Transport Association
IATA-DGR: Dangerous Goods Regulations by the "International Air Transport Association" (IATA)
ICAO: International Civil Aviation Organization
ICAO-TI: Technical Instructions by the "International Civil Aviation Organization" (ICAO)
GHS: Globally Harmonized System of Classification and Labelling of Chemicals
ACGIH: American Conference of Governmental Industrial Hygienists
EINECS: European Inventory of Existing Commercial Chemical Substances
NFPA: National Fire Protection Association (USA)
HMIS: Hazardous Materials Identification System (USA)
VbF: Verordnung über brennbare Flüssigkeiten, Österreich (Ordinance on the storage of combustible liquids, Austria)
LC50: Lethal concentration, 50 percent
LD50: Lethal dose, 50 percent

· **** Data compared to the previous version altered.***

Data: May. 11, 1999
Reviced: Dec. 17, 2009

Job Safety Analysis

General

JSA ID	22	**Status**	(3) Completed
Job Name	General Industry-Site clearing	**Created Date**	1/29/2009
Task Description	Site clearing	**Completed Date**	01/29/2009
Template	TRUE	**Auto Closed**	FALSE

Client / Project

Client	ARCADIS-AGMI
Project Number	000000100000
Project Name	GENERAL OVERHEAD
PIC	
Project Manager	

User Roles

Role	Employee	Due Date	Completed Date	Supervisor	Active
Developer	Coppola, Mija	3/6/2012	1/29/2009	Coates, Gary	☑
HASP Reviewer	Coppola, Mija	1/31/2009	1/29/2009	Coates, Gary	☑

Job Steps

Job Step No.	Job Step Description		Potential Hazard	Critical Action	H&S Reference
1	Prepping equipment for clearing activities	1	Improperly maintained tools and equipment increase risk for injury to workers using tools/equipment	Maintain tools and equipment according to manufacturer recommendations, including proper oiling and inspection of tool/equipment. Ensure cutting blades are sharp.	
		2	Cuts to hands, fingers, forearms from sharpening tool/equipment blades	Wear protective gloves suitable for the tool/device being sharpened, use proper sharpening techniques and do not hurry through the sharpening process.	
		3	Falls from accessing or egressing from large equipment like tractors or bulldozers	Always use 3 points of contact when access/egressing large heavy equipment. Never attempt to access/egress form moving equipment, wear footwear with good anti-slip tread and ankle support, keep mud off of stepping surfaces. Promptly affix seatbelt when sitting in seat.	
		4	Exposure to fuel during refueling activities	Wear protective gloves during refueling activities, avoid breathing fuel vapors by standing up wind when practical, promptly wash exposed skin or clothing.	
2	Clearing large brush/trees with hand tools	1	Cuts to arms, legs, hands from cutting tools	Wear protective gloves. When using manual tools, cut away from body, maintain large distance between workers using hand tools.	
		2	Physical stresses from repetitive motion or excessive push/pulling during clearing	Use job or task rotation or frequent rest breaks. Don't use excessive force pulling or pushing on vegetation.	
		3	Scrapes, cuts to skin from vegetation	Wear protective gloves, long pants and long sleeve shirt. Wear briar chaps in thorny vegetation.	
3	Clearing small brush/tall grass with mowers/bush hogs	1	Struck by flying debris from mowing activity	Keep unnecessary workers 100 ft from mowing activities	
		2	Foot hazards from slipping into cutting blades using walk behind mowers	Do not remove and promptly repair guards that reduce potential for foot entry into blade housing of mowers. Plan mowing to reduce situations that increase risk of foot slippage towards mower housing, wear steel toe boots with good tread.	

		3	Noise from mowing activities	Wear hearing protection	

PPE Personal Protective Equipment

Type	Personal Protective Equipment	Description	Required
Dermal Protection	coveralls		Recommended
	long sleeve shirt/pants		Required
Eye Protection	safety glasses		Required
Foot Protection	steel-toe boots	or equivalent	Required
Hand Protection	work gloves (specify type)	leather	Required
Head Protection	hard hat		Required
Hearing Protection	ear plugs		Required
Miscellaneous PPE	other		

Supplies

Type	Supply	Description	Required
Communication Devices	mobile phone		Required
Miscellaneous	fire extinguisher		Required
	first aid kit		Required

Review Comments

Reviewer		Comments
Employee: **Role** **Review Type** **Completed Date**	Coppola, Mija HASP Reviewer Approve 1/29/2009	

Job Safety Analysis

General

JSA ID	166	**Status**	(3) Completed
Job Name	Environmental-Sample cooler handling	**Created Date**	5/1/2009
Task Description	Sample cooler handling	**Completed Date**	05/13/2009
Template	TRUE	**Auto Closed**	FALSE

Client / Project

Client	ARCADIS-AGMI
Project Number	000000100000
Project Name	GENERAL OVERHEAD
PIC	
Project Manager	

User Roles

Role	Employee	Due Date	Completed Date	Supervisor	Active
Developer	Coppola, Mija	12/19/2011	5/11/2009	Coates, Gary	☑
HASP Reviewer	Moyers, Sam	5/25/2009	5/13/2009	Kundert, Brian	☑

Job Steps

Job Step No.	Job Step Description		Potential Hazard	Critical Action	H&S Reference
1	Transfer field samples to sample packing area	1	Lifting heavy coolers may result in muscle strain especially to lower back.	Use proper lifting techniques and keep back straight. Use buddy system for large coolers, Use mechanical aids like hand trucks if readily available to move coolers. Do not over fill coolers with full sample containers for temporary movement to the sample prep area. Ensure an adequate supply of sample coolers are in field.	
		2	Hazards to hands from broken glass caused by over tightening lids or improper placement in cooler	Inspect all bottles and bottle caps for cracks/leaks before and after filling container. Do not over tighten sample lids. Clean up any broken bottles immediately, avoid contact with sample preservatives. Wear leather gloves when handling broken glass.	
		3	Exposure to chemicals (acid preservatives or site contaminants) on the exterior of sample bottles after filling.	Wear protective gloves for acid preservatives and safety glasses with side shields during all sample container handling activities (before and after filling), Once filled follow project specific HASP PPE requirements for skin and eye protection.	
		4	Samples containing hazardous materials may violate DOT/IATA HazMat shipping regulations	All persons filling a sample bottle or preparing a cooler for shipment must have complete ARCADIS DOT HazMat shipping training. Compare the samples collected to the materials described in the Shipping Determination for the Project and ensure consistent. Re-perform all Shipping determinations if free product is collected and not anticipated during planning.	
2	Sample cooler selection	1	Sample coolers with defective handles, lid hinges, lid hasps cracked or otherwise damaged may result in injury (cuts to hands, crushing of feet if handle breaks etc)	Only use coolers that are new or in like new condition, No rope handled coolers unless part of the manufacturer's handle design.	ARCADIS Shipping Guide US-001
		2	Selection of excessively large coolers introduces lifting hazards once the cooler is filled.	Select coolers and instruct lab to only provide coolers of a size appropriate for the material being shipped. For ordinary sample shipping sample coolers should be 48 quart capacity or smaller to reduce lifting hazards.	

3	Pack Samples	1	Pinch points and abrasions to hands from cooler lid closing unexpectedly	Beware that lid could slam shut; block/brace if needed; be wary of packing in strong winds. New coolers may be more prone to self closing, tilt cooler back slightly to facilitate keeping lid open.	
		2	Awkward body positions and contact stress to legs and knees when preparing coolers on irregular or hard ground surfaces.	Plan cooler prep activities. Situate cooler where neutral body positions can be maintained if practical, like truck tailgate. Avoid cooler prep on rough gravel surfaces unless knees and legs protected during kneeling.	
		3	Frostbite or potential for oxygen deficiency when packing with dry ice. Contact cold stress to fingers handling blue ice or wet ice	Dry ice temperature is -109.30F. Wear thermal protective gloves. DO NOT TOUCH with bare skin! Dry ice sublimates at room temp and could create oxygen deficiency in closed environment. Maintain adequate ventilation! Do not keep dry ice in cab of truck. Wear gloves when handling blue ice or gaging wet ice. Dry Ice is DOT regulated for air shipping, follow procedures in Shipping Determination.	
4	Sealing, labeling and Marking Cooler	1	Cuts to hands and forearms from strapping tape placement or removing old tape and labels	Do not use a fixed, open-blade knife to remove old tags/labels, USE SCISSORS or other safety style cutting device. Only use devices designed for cutting. Do not hurry through task.	
		2	Lifting and awkward body position hazards from taping heavy coolers, dropping coolers on feet during taping.	Do not hurry through the taping tasks, ensure samples in cooler are evenly distributed in cooler to reduce potential for overhanging cooler falling off edge of tailgate/table when taping.	
		3	Improper labeling and marking may result in violation of DOT/IATA HazMat shipping regulations delaying shipment or resulting in regulatory penalty	Do not deviate from ARCADIS Shipping Guide or Shipping Determination marking or labeling requirements.	
5	Offering sample cooler to a carrier or lab courier for shipment.	1	Lifting heavy coolers may result in muscle strain especially to lower back.	See lifting hazard controls above.	
		2	Carrier refusal to accept cooler may cause shipping delay and/or result in violation of DOT HazMat shipping regulations.	Promptly report all rejected and refused shipments to the ARCADIS DOT Program Manager. Do Not re-offer shipment if carrier requires additional labels markings or paperwork inconsistent with your training or Shipping Determination without contacting the ARCADIS DOT Compliance Manager.	

PPE Personal Protective Equipment

Type	Personal Protective Equipment	Description	Required
Eye Protection	safety glasses		Required
Hand Protection	chemical resistant gloves (specify type)	nitrile	Required
	work gloves (specify type)	leather	Required

Supplies

Type	Supply	Description	Required
Miscellaneous	Other	Scissors	Required

Review Comments

Reviewer		Comments
Employee: **Role** **Review Type** **Completed Date**	Moyers, Sam HASP Reviewer Revise 5/11/2009	Kevlar is required? Leather work gloves are listed. i suggest just leather gloves.

Employee: **Role** **Review Type** **Completed Date**	Moyers, Sam HASP Reviewer Approve 5/13/2009	

Job Safety Analysis

General

JSA ID	HASP 1	**Status**	Complete
Job Name	General Industry-Driving - passenger vehicles	**Created Date**	5/4/2016
Task Description	Driving a car, van, or truck on public roadways.	**Completed Date**	05/04/2016

Client / Project

Client	NYSDEC
Project Number	00266403.0000
Project Name	Tioga Castings
Project Manager	Andy Vitolins

User Roles

Role	Employee	Due Date	Completed Date
Developer	Bree Quaglieri	5/4/2016	5/4/2016
HASP Reviewer	Rottenberg, Melissa	5/4/2016	5/4/2016
Quality Reviewer			

Job Steps

Job Step No.	Job Step Description		Potential Hazard	Critical Action	H&S Reference
1	Pre-Trip Inspection	1	Failing to perform pre-trip inspections may cause mechanical failure, accident or injury	Perform walk around of vehicle with particular attention to tire inflation and condition. Check lights, wipers, seatbelts for proper operating condition. Properly adjust seat and mirrors prior to vehicle operation. Use or review vehicle inspection checklist as required under the MVSP.	ARC HSGE024 Motor Vehicle Safety Standard (MVSP)
		2	Scrapes, cuts, burns to hand if inspecting engine fluids and/or tires. Eye splash hazard if inspecting engine fluids. Pinch or crush hazards when opening or closing hood, trunk or tailgate.	Wear protective gloves and safety glasses as described below when checking under hood or tires. Use TRACK and keep hands clear when opening/closing hood, trunk, or tailgate to avoid crush or pinch hazard.	
		3	Struck by other vehicles while walking around vehicle performing inspections	Wear high visibility vest, shirt, or coat while performing inspections in parking lots or other areas with a traffic hazard. Remain vigilant of moving vehicles or equipment in area, face oncoming vehicles to extent practical.	
		4	Improperly secured cargo may dislodge creating injury, property damage or road hazard.	Ensure all cargo is properly secured to prevent movement while the vehicle is in opertation. This includes cargo in the cab of the vehicle.	

2	Driving a motor vehicle on public streets	1	Failing to observe traffic flow ahead increases risk of hard braking resulting in potential impact of vehicle ahead, being struck by another vehicle from behind and decreases decision making time.	Use Smith System Key #1, "Aim High in Steering". **Look ahead (15 seconds if possible) to observe traffic flow and traffic signals.** Adjust speed accordingly to keep vehicle moving and avoid frequent braking. Select lane of least traffic and adjust speed based on observed signal timing when possible. Avoid following directly behind large vehicles that obscure view ahead.	Smith System "5-Keys" is a registered trademark of Smith System Driver Improvement Institute, Inc.
		2	Failing to observe vehicles, pedestrians, bicyclists and other relevant objects in vicinity of your vehicle increases risk of side swipes, rear ending, and third party injury.	Use Smith System Key #2, "Get the Big Picture". **Maintain 360 degrees of awareness around vehicle.** Check a mirror every 6-8 seconds, maintain space around the vehicle, choose a lane that avoids being boxed in. Look for pedestrian activity ahead in crosswalks or sidewalks. Watch for construction zone approach signs and act early by executing lane changes and reducing speed.	
		3	Failing to keep your eyes moving increases risk of not seeing relevant vehicles, pedestrians and objects in your vicinity that may impair your ability to make timely and appropriate driving decisions and also increases risk of accident.	Use Smith System Key #3, "Keep Your Eyes Moving". **Move your eyes every 2 seconds and avoid staring while evaluating relevant objects.** Scan major and minor intersections prior to entering them. Check mirrors.	
		4	Failing to maintain space around and in front of your vehicle increases risk of striking another vehicle or being struck by another vehicle. Insufficient space shortens time for effective driving decision making resulting in increased accident risk.	Use Smith System #4, "Leave Yourself an Out". **Use 4 second rule when following a vehicle.** Avoid driving in vehicle clusters by adjusting speed and using lanes that permit maximum space and visibility. When stopped, keep one car length space in front of vehicle ahead or white line.	
		5	Failing to communicate with other drivers and pedestrians increases risk of striking vehicles, pedestrians, or being struck by other vehicles, especially from the rear.	Use Smith System Key #5, "Make Sure They See You". **Brake early and gradually when stopping to reduce potential of being rear ended.** Keep foot on brake while stopped. Use turn signals and horn effectively. Establish eye contact with other drivers and pedestrians to extent practical. Use vehicle positioning that promotes being seen.	
		6	Distractions within the vehicle takes focus off driving, increases risk of accident decreases time for making effective driving decisions.	**Cell phone use (any type or configuration) is prohibited while the vehicle is in motion.** Familiarize yourself with vehicle layout and controls (radio, temperature controls, etc.) prior to operating unfamiliar vehicles. Set controls prior to operating vehicle. Use GPS in unfamiliar areas to avoid use of paper maps/directions while driving. Set GPS prior to vehicle operation. Pull over and stop to modify GPS functions. Avoid consuming food or drink while driving.	

3	Parking	1	Parking vehicle in areas of clustered parked vehicles or near facility entrance may impair visibility to oncoming traffic in lot and increase exposure to pedestrian traffic.	**Use pull through parking or back into parking space when permitted or practical.** When practical and safe to do so, park away from other vehicles and avoid parking near the facility entrance or loading docks. If available, use a spotter to aid in backing activity. Back no further than necessary and back slowly. Get out and look (GOAL) if uncertain of immediate surroundings. Tap horn prior to backing.	

PPE Personal Protective Equipment

Type	Personal Protective Equipment	Description	Required
Eye Protection	safety glasses	While checking engine or tires	Required
Hand Protection	work gloves (specify type)	Leather or equivalent checking engine or tires	Required

Supplies

Type	Supply	Description	Required
Communication Devices	mobile phone		Required
	other	Vehicle kit (applies to company trucks)	Required
Miscellaneous	fire extinguisher	Applies to company trucks	Required
	first aid kit	Applies to company trucks	Required

W

General

JSA ID	45	**Status**	(3) Completed
Job Name	Environmental-Groundwater Sampling and	**Created Date**	2/4/2009
Task Description	Groundwater sampling	**Completed Date**	02/06/2009
Template	TRUE	**Auto Closed**	FALSE

Client / Project

Client	ARCADIS-AGMI
Project Number	000000100000
Project Name	GENERAL OVERHEAD
PIC	
Project Manager	

User Roles

Role	Employee	Due Date	Completed Date	Supervisor	Active
Developer	Coppola, Mija	6/12/2012	2/4/2009	Coates, Gary	☑
HASP Reviewer	Coppola, Mija	2/6/2009	2/6/2009	Coates, Gary	☑

Job Steps

Job Step No.	Job Step Description		Potential Hazard	Critical Action	H&S Reference
1	Stage at pre-determined sampling location and set up work zone and sampling equipment	1	Personnel could be hit by vehicular traffic	Set up cones and establish work area. Position vehicle so that field crew is protected from site traffic. Unload as close to work area as safely possible.	
		2	Sampling equipment, tools and monitoring well covers can cause tripping hazard	Keep equipment picked up and use TRACK to assess changes.	
2	Open wells to equilibrate and gauge wells	1	When squatting, personnel can be difficult to see by vehicular traffic.	Wear class II traffic vest if wells are located proximal to vehicular traffic. Use tall cones and the buddy system if practicable.	
		2	Pinchpoints on well vault can pinch or lacerate fingers	Use correct tools to open well vault/cap. Wear leather gloves when removing well vault lids, and chemical protective gloves while gauging. Wear proper PPE including safety boots, knee pads and safety glasses.	
		3	Lifting sampling equipment can cause muscle strain	Unload as close to work area as safely possible; use proper lifting and reaching techniques and body positioning; don't carry more than you can handle, and get help moving heavy or awkward objects.	
		4	Pressure can build up inside well causing cap to release under pressure	Keep head away from well cap when removing. If pressure relief valves are on well use prior to opening well	
3	Begin Purging Well and Collecting Parameter Measurements	1	Electrical shock can occur when connecting/disconnecting pump from the battery.	Make sure equipment is turned off when connecting/disconnecting. Wear leather gloves. Use GFCIs when using powered tools and pumps. Do not use in the rain or run electrical cords through wet areas.	
		2	Purge water can spill or leak from equipment	Stop purging activities immediately, stop leakage and block any drainage grate with absorbent pads. Call PM to notify them of any reportable spill.	
		3	Water spilling on the ground can cause muddy/slippery conditions	Be careful walking in work area when using plastic around well to protect from spillage	
		4	Lacerations can occur when cutting materials such as plastic tubing	When cutting tubing, use tubing cutter. No open fixed blades should ever be used. When possible wear work gloves, leather type.	
		5	Purge water can splash into eyes	Pour water slowly into buckets/drums to minimize splashing. Wear safety glasses.	

4	Collect GW or Free Product Sample	1	Working with bailer rope can cause rope burns on hands.	Slowly raise and lower the rope or string for the bailer. Wear appropriate gloves for the task.	
		2	Sample containers could break or leak preservative	Discard any broken sampleware or glass properly. Do not overtighten sample containers. Wear chemical protective gloves.	

PPE Personal Protective Equipment

Type	Personal Protective Equipment	Description	Required
Dermal Protection	long sleeve shirt/pants		Recommended
Eye Protection	safety glasses		Required
Foot Protection	steel-toe boots		Required
Hand Protection	chemical resistant gloves (specify type)	Nitrile	Required
	work gloves (specify type)	leather	Required
Head Protection	hard hat		Required
Hearing Protection	ear plugs		Recommended
Miscellaneous PPE	other	Knee pads	Required

Supplies

Type	Supply	Description	Required
Communication Devices	mobile phone		Required
Decontamination	Decon supplies (specify type)	alconox, DI water, spray bottle	Required
Miscellaneous	fire extinguisher		Required
	first aid kit		Required
	flashlight		Required
Personal	eye wash (specify type)	bottle	Required
	insect repellant		Recommended
	sunscreen		Recommended
Traffic Control	barricades		Recommended
	traffic cones		Required

Review Comments

Reviewer		Comments
Employee: **Role** **Review Type** **Completed Date**	Coppola, Mija HASP Reviewer Approve 2/6/2009	

APPENDIX E – FIELD FORMS

TIOGA CASTINGS SITE LANDFILL

Post-Closure Operation and Maintenance Checklist

Inspected by: ______________________________

Date: ______________ Time: ______________

Weather Conditions: ______________________________

LANDFILL COVER SYSTEM

Erosion	______	YES	______	NO
Holes or Cracks in Cover	______	YES	______	NO
Cap Settlement	______	YES	______	NO
Ponded Water or Wet Areas	______	YES	______	NO
Burrowing Rodents	______	YES	______	NO
Sparse Vegetation/Bare Soil	______	YES	______	NO
Brush or Other Woody Vegetation,	______	YES	______	NO
Excessive Weeds in Grass	______	YES	______	NO
Grass Mowed	______	YES	______	NO

DRAINAGE DITCHES

Erosion	______	YES	______	NO
Obstructions	______	YES	______	NO
Sediment Accumulation	______	YES	______	NO
Evidence of Surcharging	______	YES	______	NO
Presence of Brush	______	YES	______	NO

Comments: ______________________________

____

Continued

FENCING

Gates and Locks _______ OK _______ OTHER

Posts _______ OK _______ OTHER

Top Tension Wire _______ OK _______ OTHER

Barbed Wire _______ OK _______ OTHER

Comments: ______________________________

____

MONITORING WELLS

Capped and Locked _______ YES _______ NO

Casing Damage _______ YES _______ NO

Comments: ______________________________

____

INSPECTOR'S SIGNATURE ______________________________ DATE __________

Groundwater Sampling Log

ARCADIS Design & Consultancy for natural and built assets

Page ____ of ____

Project No. ____ Well ID ____ Date ____

Project Name/Location ____ Weather ____

Measuring Pt. Description ____

Screen Setting (ft-bmp) ____

Casing Diameter (in.) ____

Well Material: PVC ____
SS ____

Total Depth (ft-bmp) ____

Static Water Level (ft-bmp) ____

Water Column in Well (ft.) ____

Gallons in Well ____

MP Elevation ____

Pump Intake (ft-bmp) ____

Volumes Purged ____

Gallons Purged ____

Sample Method ____

Pump On/Off ____

Sample Time
Label ____
Start ____
End ____

Purge Method ____
Centrifugal ____
Submersible ____
Disp. Bailer ____
Other ____

Replicate/Code No. ____

Sampled By ____

Time	Minutes Elapsed	Rate (gpm) (mL/min)	Depth to Water (ft) TOC	Gallons Purged	pH	Cond. (µmhos) (mS/cm)	Turbidity (NTU)	Dissolved Oxygen (mg/L)	Temp. (^{o}C) (^{o}F)	Redox (mV)	Appearance	
											Color	Odor

Constituents Sampled	**Container**	**Number**	**Preservative**

Well Information

Well Location: ____ Well Locked at Arrival: ____

Condition of Well: ____ Well Locked at Departure: ____

Well Completion: Flush Mount / Stick Up Key Number To Well: ____

NOTES:

Well Casing Volumes

Gallons/Foot
1" = 0.04
1.25" = 0.06
1.5" = 0.09
2" = 0.16
2.5" = 0.26
3" = 0.37
3.5" = 0.50
4" = 0.65
6" = 1.47

APPENDIX F – QUALITY ASSURANCE PROJECT PLAN

Imagine the result

New York State Department of Environmental Conservation

Site Number 7-54-012

Tioga Castings Site Specific Quality Assurance Project Plan

January 2015

ARCADIS

Tioga Castings Site Specific Quality Assurance Project Plan

Site Number 7-54-012

Prepared for:

New York State Department of Environmental Conservation

Prepared by:

Malcolm Pirnie, Inc.
855 Route 146
Suite 210
Clifton Park
New York 12065
Tel 518 250 7300
Fax 518 250 7301

Our Ref.:

00266403.0000

Date:

January 2015

Malcolm Pirnie, Inc. was acquired by ARCADIS in July 2009.

Appendices

Acronyms Used in the Report

ASP	Analytical Services Protocol
CRQLs	Contract Required Quantitation Limits
DCA	Dichloroethane
DCE	Dichloroethene
FSP	Field Sampling Plan
GW	Groundwater
gpm	gallons per minute
HASP	Site Specific Health and Safety Plan
IDL	Instrument Detection Limit
MDL	Minimum Detection Limit
MS	Matrix spikes
MSD	Matrix spike duplicate
NBS	National Bureau of Standards
NYSDEC	New York State Department of Environmental Conservation
OSWER	Office of Solid Waste and Emergency Response
PARCCS	Precision, Accuracy, Representativeness, Completeness, Comparability, and Sensitivity
PCBs	Polychlorinated Biphenyl's
PCE	Perchloroethene (Tetrachloroethene)
RCRA	Resource Conservation and Recovery Act
PID	Photoionization Detector
PPE	Personal protective equipment
RFI	RCRA Facility Investigation
RPD	Relative percent difference
SCG	Standards, Criteria, and Guidance Values
SMP	Site Management Plan
SOPs	Standard Operating Procedures
SVOCs	Semi-volatile organic compounds
SWMU	Solid Waste Management Unit
TAGM	Technical and Administrative Guidance Memorandum
TCA	Trichloroethane
TCE	Trichloroethene
VC	Vinyl chloride
VOA	Volatile Organic Analysis
VOCs	Volatile Organic Compounds
QA	Quality Assurance
QC	Quality Control
QAPP	Quality Assurance Project Plan
EPA	United States Environmental Protection Agency

1. Purpose and Objectives

1.1. Purpose

This Site Specific Quality Assurance Project Plan (QAPP) has been prepared as an appendix to the Tioga Castings Site Management Plan (SMP) developed for the New York State Department of Environmental Conservation (NYSDEC). The purpose of this document is to provide quality assurance/ quality control (QA/QC) methods, procedures, and protocols for the collection, analysis, and evaluation of data collected during site activities.

1.2. QAPP Objectives

The objective of this Site Specific QAPP is to support that data collected during site activities are of suitable quality and quantity to meet the project objectives. To meet this objective, the following topics are presented and discussed in this QAPP.

- Project organization and responsibilities
- Data quality objectives
- Analytical method requirements
- Data validation requirements
- Preventative maintenance
- Quality assurance procedures
- Corrective actions

This QAPP has been prepared to address laboratory analysis of samples and data evaluation of the laboratory sample results. In addition, this QAPP addresses components that influence these processes and provides a plan to support that decisions being made from the analytical data are valid, accurate, and defensible in support of subsequent recommendations.

2. Project Organization and Responsibilities

2.1. Project Organization

The project consultant will provide oversight, coordination, health and safety, field support, and evaluation of analytical data. The project consultant will also be responsible for evaluation of analytical test results, which will be submitted to NYSDEC.

2.2. Analytical Laboratories

Analytical laboratories have been selected in accordance with the NYSDEC Standby Contract procurement procedures.

Each laboratory has their own provisions for performing internal QA/QC review of the data prior to transmittal to the project consultant. In addition, the project consultant may be required to contract a data validation service to review the methods and protocols performed by the laboratory to validate the analytical results. A Data Usability Summary Report (DUSR) is not required for this project. If a DUSR is required for future work, a summary of the data validation results will be provided by the data validation service (Section 7.2.2).

3. Data Measurement and QA/QC Objectives

This section defines the QA/QC objectives for environmental sampling and analysis, including the data quality objectives (DQOs) for measurement data and the criteria for measuring performance within these objectives. Data collected during the project may include both field measurements and analytical samples. This Section discusses the various types of data anticipated and provides QA/QC objectives for data collected during the project.

3.1. Data Quality Objectives

DQOs are qualitative and quantitative statements that specify the quality of the data to support decisions, and are developed to address specific procedures for collecting, analyzing, and evaluating results to meet overall project objectives. DQOs are developed and implemented to ensure that the quality of the data is such that the data is legally and scientifically defensible and is applicable for its anticipated use. DQOs developed for each specific site, measurement, and media assume project objectives, data objectives, and data collection methods.

Site-specific DQOs have been developed based on the factors presented above, and are presented below. These include the specific DQOs for each planned data collection task, which identifies the particular sampling protocols, analysis methods, and laboratory deliverables to be provided for each data type anticipated.

3.1.1. DQOs for Groundwater

Groundwater will be sampled and analyzed to evaluate the nature and extent of groundwater contamination at the site. Field instrumentation will be used during sampling activities to support the collection of representative samples. As such, data from the field instrumentation must be of sufficient quality to measure groundwater conditions prior to sampling. Analytical data will be used to identify the location of any groundwater contamination, to aid in evaluating contaminant source locations, and to assess if any standards, criteria, and guidance values (SCGs) have been exceeded. To meet these objectives, the data from the groundwater samples must be of known quality. Therefore, USEPA SW-846 analytical methodologies with NYSDEC ASP Category B deliverables have been selected for all groundwater analyses. These deliverables are characterized by rigorous QA/QC protocols and documentation, which historically have provided high quality data able to meet the DQOs for this media. Site-specific groundwater sample analyses are summarized in the SMP. Groundwater samples will be critical samples for the evaluation of potential risks to human health and the environment.

3.2. Field Measurement Quality Assurance Objective

Tasks requiring field measurements may include field screening of samples, evaluating the progress of monitoring well development, monitoring well sample collection, collection of soil conductivity data, in-situ measurements, surveying sampling locations, and field analysis of samples using test kits. To support the accuracy and quality of the data provided by field measurements, section 4 provides DQOs for recording field measurements during site investigations, including the following:

- Water Quality Parameters

The DQOs developed for each method will ensure that the data is appropriate and reliable for the extent they will be used in the investigation. A summary of field measurement methods, documentation, DQOs, and QA/QC protocols is provided in section 4.

3.3. Laboratory Quality Assurance Objectives

Laboratory generated data are used to accurately identify and quantify hazardous substances, while the field generated data are used in conjunction with the laboratory data for further investigation of contamination at the site. Both laboratory and field internal QC programs include steps to confirm the data are reliable for the extent they will be used in the investigation. In general, laboratory QC programs are more rigorous than field QC programs.

The scope and description of QC samples and QC methods are well detailed in the applicable USEPA methodologies for the particular analyses. The methodologies for organic and inorganic analyses describe the type of QC samples and required QC methods, and the required frequency of analysis. QC limits have been established for standards, blanks, duplicates, matrix spikes, and surrogates, and are contained in the methodologies.

Laboratory QC data will be reviewed by the project consultant’s personnel. The NYSDEC may request a subcontracted third-party data validation service to assess the validity of the data and determine if the DQOs have been met. This objective will be met by implementing the following:

- *Evaluation of Laboratory Method Performance* – QC criteria for method performance will be reviewed and assessed for target analyses. Analysis methods will be performed based on documented procedures by certified laboratories.
- *Sample Matrix Effects* – QC samples will be collected and analyzed to determine measurement bias due to the sample matrix. If criteria are not met, matrix interferences will be confirmed by reanalysis or inspection of laboratory control samples to verify laboratory method performance is in control.
- *Planning and Management* – Laboratories will perform preventive maintenance and routine calibration of equipment. A managed program of internal and external QC checks will be followed to ensure data quality.
- *Corrective Actions* – If QC issues are detected during QA audits or QC checks, corrective actions will be taken to stop work and modify procedures to ensure data quality.

4. Field Investigation Procedures

A summary of objectives, equipment, and procedures for the following field activities is provided in this section:

- Field quality control samples
  - Field blanks
  - Matrix spike/matrix spike duplicates
  - Field duplicates
- Field measurements
  - Water level measurements
  - Water quality parameters
- Sample equipment decontamination
- Groundwater sampling
- Storage and disposal of investigation derived waste
- Field documentation
- Sample handling

4.1. Field Quality Control Samples

Quality control procedures will be employed to ensure that sampling, transportation and laboratory activities do not bias sample analytical quality. Trip blanks, field blanks, duplicate samples, matrix spike samples and matrix spike duplicates will provide a quantitative basis for validating the analytical data.

4.1.1. Field Blanks

A field blank consists of an empty set of laboratory-cleaned sample containers. At the field location, deionized, analyte-free water is passed through decontaminated sampling equipment and placed in the empty set of sample containers for analysis of the same parameters as the samples collected with the sampling equipment. One field blank will be collected per every 20 environmental samples sent to the analytical laboratory, per media.

4.1.2. Matrix Spike/Matrix Spike Duplicates

Matrix spike (MS) and matrix spike duplicate (MSD) sample pairs are analyzed by the laboratory to provide a quantitative measure of the laboratory's precision and accuracy. When performing USEPA SW-846 volatile organic or organic extractable analysis with NYSDEC Category B deliverables, the laboratory must be supplied with triple sample volume for each Sample Delivery Group (SDG) in order to perform MS/MSD analyses. Blanks do not require separate matrix spike or duplicate analyses regardless of their matrix.

The limits on an SDG are:

- Each Case for field samples, or
- Each 20 field samples within a Case, or
- Each fourteen calendar day period during which field samples in a Case are received (said period beginning with receipt of the first sample in the SDG), whichever comes first.

Field personnel will specify samples for MS/MSD analysis. Extra volume is not required for aqueous samples for inorganic analysis. Non-aqueous samples (soils) do not require that any extra volume of sample be submitted to the laboratory for MS/MSD samples.

4.1.3. Field Duplicates

For each sample matrix, a field duplicate sample will be collected for the analytical laboratory at a rate of one sample per 20 environmental samples, per media. The duplicate sample is collected at the same location as the environmental sample. The field duplicate sample is identified using the sample designation system described in Section 4.6.1. The identity of the field duplicate is not revealed to the laboratory. The analytical results of the environmental sample will be compared to the field duplicate sample, to evaluate field sampling precision.

4.2. Field Measurements

Tasks requiring recording of field measurements include monitoring well sample collection, and field analysis of samples using test kits. A summary of field measurements is provided below. Specific procedures for inspection and calibration of the related field equipment are provided in Section 5.

4.2.1. Water Level Measurements

4.2.1.1. Measurement Objectives

Water levels in monitoring wells will be measured and used in conjunction with horizontal and vertical ground survey data to determine horizontal and vertical components of groundwater flow. Water level measurements will also be used to determine the volume of standing water in monitoring wells for development and purging activities. These measurements made during the initial site activities will be utilized to provide a baseline of groundwater elevations and flow at the site prior to subsequent activities.

4.2.1.2. Measurement Equipment

The following equipment will be used for the measurement of water levels:

- Electronic water level indicator and/or interface probe.
- Field logbook and pen.
- Photoionization Detector.
- Deionized Water.
- Low Phosphate Detergent.

4.2.1.3. Measurement Procedure

The first time water levels are measured at sites where VOCs are the contaminant of concern, at each monitoring well, the expansion cap will be removed and the head space and breathing zone's air quality will be monitored with a PID. This step may be omitted in subsequent rounds of water level measurements in those monitoring wells that yielded no detectable amounts of vapors or gases from prior sampling rounds. If air quality readings in the breathing space around the well exceed action levels set in the site-specific health and safety plan (HASP), appropriate measures will be taken as listed in the HASP.

The battery of the electric water level indicator will be checked by pushing the battery check button, and waiting for the audible signal to sound or the instrument light to come on. The water level indicator will be decontaminated before collecting a measurement in each monitoring well by using an Alconox® wash and deionized water rinse. The instrument will then be turned on and the probe will be slowly lowered into the monitoring well, until the audible signal is heard or the instrument light goes on, indicating that the sensor in the probe has made contact with the water surface in the monitoring well.

In the presence of NAPL, an interface probe, which can indicate and differentiate between the contact surfaces of NAPL and water, will be used in the place of an electric water level indicator. The probe is checked, decontaminated, and used in the same manner as an electric water level indicator. When the sensor probe makes contact with the NAPL or water surfaces in a monitoring well, an audible signal will be heard. To distinguish between NAPL and water surfaces, a different audible signal is used for each medium (i.e., constant signal for NAPL, intermittent signal for water).

The depth to water will be recorded to the nearest one-hundredth of a foot, from the top of the measuring mark on the monitoring well riser. The date, time, monitoring well number, and depth to water will be recorded in the field book.

4.2.2. Water Quality Parameters

Water quality parameters, including pH, conductivity, dissolved oxygen, temperature, and turbidity are often measured during monitoring well development and groundwater and surface water sampling tasks. The parameters are typically measured using a multi-parameter water quality instrument equipped with a flow-through cell (e.g., Horiba U-52 or equivalent). A Standard Operating Procedure (SOP) for measuring water quality parameters is provided in the Low-flow Groundwater Sampling SOP presented in Appendix A.

At a minimum, the multi-parameter water quality instrument will measure the following field parameters:

- Temperature
- Conductivity
- Dissolved oxygen (DO)
- pH
- Turbidity
- Salinity

4.2.2.1. Instrument Operation

A thermistor is used by the instrument to measure temperature. The thermistor also measures the change in electrical resistance accompanying changes in temperature. The instrument uses the temperature data in conductivity temperature conversions, DO temperature compensation, and pH temperature compensation. The unit of measurement for temperature is ºC (Celsius). The conductivity of water is determined by measuring the resistance of ion flow in between charged plates because conductivity is inversely proportional to resistance. The instrument reports conductivity as mS/cm (milli Siemen / centimeter). The instrument uses the membrane-electrode method for Dissolved Oxygen (DO). A reduction reaction in the cathode is caused by oxygen diffusing through the membrane of the sensor to create a current. This current is proportional to the concentration of oxygen dissolved in water. DO is reported as mg DO/L.

The instrument uses a glass-electrode method to determine pH. The known pH of a reference solution is determined by using two electrodes, a glass electrode and a reference electrode, and measuring the voltage (difference in potential) generated between the two electrodes. The difference in pH between solutions inside and outside the thin glass membrane creates electromotive force in proportion to this difference in pH. The reporting unit is the standard unit of pH (for example, 7.00 pH units). The instrument measures turbidity using the light-transmission scattering method. The unit for turbidity is NTU (Nephelometric Turbidity Unit).

4.2.2.2. Water Quality Measurement Procedures

The Horiba U-52 utilizes a water flow-through cell during groundwater sampling, or can be used without the cell for measuring surface water parameters. Field personnel will follow all procedures outlined for calibration and operation of the Horiba U-52 or equivalent instrument when collecting field parameter measurements. Specific procedures for operation and calibration of the multi-parameter water quality instrument are provided in Appendix B.

4.3. Sampling Equipment Decontamination

Cross contamination of samples from any source is to be avoided. All sampling equipment must be clean and free from the residue of any previous samples. All non-dedicated sampling equipment must be cleaned initially and prior to being re-used. The following is the procedure for decontamination and does not apply to heavy equipment or drilling equipment, with the exception of split spoons or equivalent samplers. All heavy equipment and drilling equipment will be steam cleaned in a predesignated location prior to use and between locations.

4.3.1. Equipment and Supplies

The following equipment may be needed to decontaminate equipment and tools used to collect water samples:

1. Tap water for initial cleaning and rinsing of equipment.
2. Distilled water for final rinsing of equipment after tap water or solvent rinse.
3. Non-phosphate detergent (e.g., Alconox™) for cleaning equipment.
4. Dishwashing detergent to remove oily or organic residue.
5. Personnel protective equipment (PPE) - including disposable gloves (Nitrile preferred), first aid kit, and waterproof outerwear (if necessary).
6. Re-sealable buckets approved for waste collection.
7. Squirt bottles for water.
8. Brushes for cleaning equipment.
9. Field notebooks, pens and pencils.

4.3.2. Decontamination Guidelines

1. Non-dedicated soil and water sampling and processing equipment should be decontaminated between sampling intervals and between locations.
2. All instruments that come into contact with the sample water must be cleaned in the same manner as the sampling device.
3. Liquids collected into the chemical waste container must be discarded in an appropriate waste stream.
4. Staff performing decontamination procedures are required to wear appropriate PPE, gloves (e.g., Nitrile) and eye protection.
5. Care should be taken during cleaning to prevent cleaning solution contact with clothing. If circumstances dictate that contact will occur (e.g., high wind), waterproof outer clothing (e.g., foul weather gear or rain gear) and face shields must be worn.
6. The project work plan may designate collection of equipment rinse samples to document effectiveness of cleaning.

4.3.3. Decontamination Procedure

The following procedures will be followed for decontamination:

1. Disassemble item(s) (if necessary).
2. Rinse each item with tap water.
3. Thoroughly scrub the item with a brush and soapy water, using non-phosphate detergent such as Alconox™ for non-oily residue, or a detergent for items with oily or other sticky organic residue.
4. During the scrubbing process, be sure to bleed Alconox™ solution or equivalent through small passageways/nozzles/vents, etc.
5. Rinse the item with tap water to remove all residual soap. Be sure to bleed tap water through small passageways/nozzles/vents, etc.
6. Rinse the item with de-ionized water. Be sure to bleed de-ionized water through small passageways/nozzles/vents, etc.
7. Rinse the item with organic solvent (e.g., hexane or equivalent) if deemed necessary. Be sure to bleed organic solvent through small passageways/nozzles/vents, etc.
8. Rinse the item with de-ionized or analyte-free water and allow to air dry. Be sure to bleed de-ionized or analyte-free water through small passageways, nozzles, vents, etc.
9. Re-assemble item(s) (if necessary).
10. Wrap the item(s) in aluminum foil or plastic bag to protect it until it is used.

Equipment used for sampling water from monitoring wells such as pneumatic bladder pumps will be decontaminated by thoroughly washing all internal and external surfaces with soapy water and rinsing with deionized water prior to use. All tubing must be dedicated to individual monitoring wells (i.e., tubing cannot be reused). Field instrumentation will be cleaned per manufacturer's instructions (Appendix B). Probes, such as those used in pH and conductivity meters, and thermometers will be rinsed prior to and after each use with deionized water.

4.4. Groundwater Sampling

4.4.1. Sampling Objectives

Groundwater samples will be collected to evaluate the nature and extent of contaminants at concentrations greater than NYSDEC Class GA standards in groundwater. Specific sampling objectives are outlined in the SMP.

4.4.2. Sampling Equipment

The following equipment may be required for groundwater sampling:

- Electric water level indicator and/or interface probe
- Peristaltic pump.
- Polyethylene or Teflon®-lined polyethylene tubing.
- Silicone tubing.
- Temperature, pH, dissolved oxygen, ORP, specific conductivity, and turbidity meters.
- Photoionization detector.
- Field logbook and field data sheets.
- Laboratory prepared sample containers.
- Polyethylene tubing.
- Decontamination equipment.
- Disposable nitrile gloves.

4.4.3. Sampling Procedures (Permanent Monitoring Wells)

Groundwater sampling will typically be conducted in accordance with the USEPA Low-Flow Sampling Protocol (USEPA, 2010). Alternative methods, such as the collection of groundwater samples with passive diffusion bags or following purging of three well volumes, may be used based on sample requirements and site conditions and in consultation with NYSDEC. Specific sampling procedures are provided in the low-flow groundwater sampling and passive diffusion bag GAPs provided in Appendix A. General low-flow sampling procedures using a peristaltic pump are summarized below.

Refer to section 4.2.1.3. regarding well head space measurement. The PID will be calibrated before the start of each sampling event.

Clean, new polyethylene or Teflon®-lined polyethylene tubing will be lowered into the water column to a maximum depth of two feet above the bottom of the monitoring well. The polyethylene tubing will be connected to a piece of silicone tubing that is inserted into the mechanical rollers of a peristaltic pump. By using the process of mechanical peristalsis, the peristaltic pump draws groundwater through the tubing to the surface, so that a sample can be collected. The well will be purged at a rate suitable to minimize drawdown. Field parameters, consisting of pH, specific conductance, temperature, dissolved oxygen, ORP, and turbidity will be measured in each sample collected from a monitoring point through the use of individual meters. Both the pH and the specific conductivity meters will be calibrated for water temperature before each sampling event.

The volume of water removed from each monitoring well will be dependent upon the amount of time required for stabilization of the field parameters. In general, the well will be considered stabilized for sample collection when field parameters have stabilized for three consecutive readings as follows:

- pH: +/- 0.1 standard units
- Specific Conductance: +/- 3%
- Oxidation-Reduction Potential: +/- 10 millivolts
- Dissolved Oxygen +/- 10%
- Turbidity +/- 10%

When the field parameters have stabilized, the volume of water purged will be recorded, and the monitoring point will be sampled in the same manner as was used to purge the well. Once a groundwater sample is collected from the well, the polyethylene tubing will be disposed of as ordinary solid waste.

The sample bottles will be pre-preserved by the laboratory. The sample bottles will be immediately placed in a cooler held at 4°C. Disposable nitrile gloves will be worn by the sampling personnel and changed between sampling points. Data to be recorded in the field logbook will include purging and sampling methods, depth to water, volume of water removed during purging, pH, temperature, ORP, dissolved oxygen, turbidity, and specific conductivity values, and PID readings.

Groundwater that is purged from monitoring wells will be discharged to the ground surface within 50 feet of each monitoring well location in accordance with the NYSDEC Proposed Technical and Administrative Guidance Memorandum (TAGM) - Disposal of contaminated groundwater generated during Site Investigations, if the following criteria are met:

1. There is a defined site which is the source of the groundwater contamination;
2. There is no free product observed such as DNAPLs or LNAPLs;
3. The infiltrating groundwater is being returned to the same water bearing zone from which it is being purged;
4. Prior approval has been granted by the NYSDEC project manager.

If there is no recharge surface (i.e., grass, uncovered soil, etc.) located within 50 feet of a well, then the purge water will be containerized and disposed of off-site. Purge water requiring off-site disposal will be handled in accordance with Section 4.5.

4.5. Storage and Disposal of Investigation Derived Waste

Investigation derived wastes (IDW) will be handled in accordance with the NYSDEC Final TAGM for the Disposal of Drill Cuttings. Purged water requiring off-site disposal will be containerized in UN-approved, 55-gallon steel drums. If disposable personal protective equipment (PPE) and decontamination fluids are generated, attempts will be made to wash surface contamination off so that PPE (i.e., gloves and other disposable items) may be disposed of as ordinary solid waste. If contamination is suspected, these materials will be collected and containerized in UN-approved, 55-gallon steel drums (separately from contaminated soil and groundwater) and disposed of off-site.

Containerized materials will be labeled and staged at a location designated by the NYSDEC. The project consultant will maintain a log of the containers and their contents. The contents will be evaluated upon receipt of analytical results from the field investigations. Containerized IDW will be transported by a licensed waste hauler and disposed of at an approved facility in accordance with applicable regulations.

4.6. Field Documentation

Documentation of an investigative team's field activities often provides the basis for technical site evaluations and other such related written reports. All records and notes generated in the field will be considered controlled evidentiary documents and may be subject to scrutiny in litigation.

Personnel designated as being responsible for documenting field activities must be aware that all notes may provide the basis for preparing responses for legal interrogatories. Field documentation must provide sufficient information and data to enable reconstruction of field activities. Numerically serialized field logbooks provide the basic means for documenting field activities. The following information must be provided on the inside front cover of each field logbook:

- Project Name (Site Name).
- Site Location.
- Site Manager.
- Date of Issue.

Control and maintenance of field logbooks is the responsibility of the Field Team Leader.

4.6.1. Sample Designation

A sample numbering system will be used to identify each sample. This system will provide a tracking procedure to allow retrieval of information about a particular sample, and will assure that each sample is uniquely numbered. The sample identification will consist of at least three components as described below. Identification numbers for soil boring samples will also have a fourth component.

Project Identification: The first component consists of a two- or three-letter designation, which identifies the project site.

- Sample type: The second component, which identifies the sample type, will consist of a two-letter code as follows:
    - MW - Monitoring Well (Groundwater Sample)
- Sample Location: The third component identifies the sample location using a two-digit number.
- Sample Identification: The fourth component will only be used for soil boring samples to indicate the vertical interval from which the sample was collected.
- Quality Assurance/Quality Control Samples: The samples will be labeled with the following suffixes:
    - FB - Field Blank
    - MS - Matrix Spike
    - MSD - Matrix Spike Duplicate

Duplicate samples will be numbered uniquely as if they were samples. A record of identification for duplicate samples will be maintained.

An example of identification numbers are given below:

- XX-MW-03-MSD: Monitoring well groundwater sample, monitoring well sample location 3, matrix spike duplicate.

4.6.2. Documentation of Field Activities

Field logbook entries must be legibly written and provide an unbiased, concise, detailed picture of all field activities. Use of preformatted data reporting forms must be identifiable and referenced to field notebook entries.

Step-by-step instructions and procedures for documenting field activities are provided below and in following sub-sections. Instruction and procedures relating to the format and technique in which field logbook entries are made are as follows:

- Leave the first two pages blank. They will provide space for a table of contents to be added when the field logbook is complete.
- The first written page for each day identifies the date, time, site name, location, personnel and their responsibilities, other non-personnel and observed weather conditions. Additionally, during the course of site activities, deviations from the SMP must also be documented.
- All photos taken must be traceable to field logbook entries. It is recommended to reference photo locations on the site sketch or map.
- All entries must be made in ink. Waterproof ink is recommended.
- All entries must be accompanied by the appropriate military time (such as 1530 instead of 3:30).
- Errors must be lined through and initialed. No erroneous notes are to be made illegible.
- The person documenting must sign and date each page as it is completed.
- Isolated logbook entries made by a team member other than the team member designated responsible for field documentation, must be signed and dated by the person making the entry.
- Additions, clarifications, or corrections made after completion of field activities must be dated and signed.

4.6.3. General Site Information

General site characteristics must be recorded. Information may include:

- Type of access into facility (locked gates, etc.).
- Anything that is unexpected on-site (e.g., appearance of drums that have not been previously recorded).
- Information obtained from interview with access or responsible party personnel (if applicable), or other interested party contact on-site.
- Names of any community contacts on-site.
- A site map or sketch may be provided. It can be sketched into the logbook or attached to the book.

4.6.4. Sample Activities

A chronological record of each sampling activity must be kept that includes:

- Explanation of sampling at the location identified in the sampling plan (e.g., discolored soil, stressed vegetation).
- Exact sample location, using permanent recognizable landmarks and reproducible measurements.
- Sample matrix.
- Sample descriptions, i.e., color, texture, odor (e.g., soil type) and any other important distinguishing features.
- Decontamination procedures, if used.

As part of chain-of-custody procedures, recorded on-site sampling information must include sample number, date, time, sampling personnel, sample type, designation of sample as a grab or composite, and any preservative used. Sample locations should be referenced by sample number on the site sketch or map. The offer and/or act of providing sample splits to a thirty party (e.g., the responsible party representative; state, county, or municipal, environmental and/or health agency, etc.) must be documented.

4.6.5. Sample Dispatch Information

When sampling is complete, all sample documentation such as chain-of-custody forms shall be copied and copies placed in the project files. A notation of numbers of coolers shipped, carrier and time delivered to pick-up point should be made in a field notebook.

4.7. Sample Handling

The analytical laboratory will provide the sample containers necessary for all groundwater samples. Container closures for all samples will be screw-on type and made of inert materials. Sample containers will be cleaned and prepared by the laboratory prior to being sent to the site. Trip blanks will be used to check for false positives due to laboratory cleaning procedures or cross contamination during sample shipment.

All samples collected will be identified with a sample label. A label will be attached to each bottle and each sample will be identified with a unique sample number.

Immediately following sample collection, each sample container will be marked with the following information:

- Sample Code.
- Project Number.
- Date/Time.
- Sample Type.
- Requested Analysis.
- Preservative, if used.
- Sampler's Initials.

The sample code will indicate the site location, media sampled, and the sample station.

After all sample identification information has been recorded, each sample label will be covered with waterproof clear plastic tape to preserve its integrity. All samples will be recorded and tracked under strict chain-of-custody protocols. In the field, each sample will be checked for proper labeling. The samples will then be packed into coolers with ice and shipped to the laboratory, if applicable. A chain-of-custody form will be completed for each cooler. The form will be signed and dated by the person who collected the samples, the person the samples were relinquished to for transport to the laboratory, and the laboratory sample controller/custodian who receives the samples.

4.7.1. Chain-of-Custody Record

A chain-of-custody record is a printed form that accompanies a sample or group of samples as custody is transferred from person to person. A sample chain-of-custody form is included in Appendix C. It documents custody transfer from person to person and sample information recorded on bottle labels. A chain-of-custody record is a controlled document.

As soon as practicable after sample collection, preferably after decontamination, the following information must be entered on the chain-of-custody form. All information is to be recorded in black ink:

- Project consultant project number that uniquely identifies the project site.
- Project name. Enter site name.
- Samplers. Sign the name(s) of the sampler(s).
- Station number.
- Date. Enter a six-digit number, indicating the year, month, and day of sample collection (YYMMDD); for example, 051125.
- Time. Enter a four-digit number indicating the military time of collection; for example, 1354.
- Composite or grab. Indicate the type of sample.
- Station location. Describe the location where the sample was collected.
- Number of containers. For each sample number, enter the number of sample bottles that are contained in the shipment.
- Remarks. Enter any appropriate remarks.

4.7.2. Transferring to Common Carrier

Instructions for transferring custody of samples to a common carrier are as follows:

1. Sign, date, and enter time under "Relinquished by" entry.
2. Enter name of carrier (e.g., UPS, Federal Express) under "Received by."
3. Enter bill-of-lading of Federal Express airbill number under "Remarks."
4. Place the original of the chain-of-custody form in the appropriate sample shipping package. Retain a copy with field records.

5. Sign and date the custody seal. The custody seal is part of the chain-of-custody process and is used to prevent tampering with samples after they have been collected in the field.
6. Wrap the seal across filament tape that has been wrapped around the package at least twice.
7. Fold the custody seal over on itself so that it sticks together.
8. Complete other carrier-required shipping papers.

Common carriers will usually not accept responsibility for handling chain-of-custody forms; this necessitates packing the record in the sample package.

4.7.3. Transferring Custody Directly to a Courier

To transfer custody of samples from the sampler directly to a carrier, proceed as above, except eliminate the shipper's signature.

5. Calibration Procedures

Instruments must be properly calibrated to produce technically valid data. Documented calibration and calibration check results verify that the instruments used for measurement are in proper working order and the data produced is reliable. The calibration requirements described or referenced in this section are necessary to support the data quality objectives for this project. When calibration requirements are met, the data will support the focused investigation decisions dealing with the nature and extent of contamination and safety concerns.

5.1. Calibration Procedures for Field Equipment

The manufacturer specifications for operation and maintenance procedures for the field equipment to be used during these tasks are provided in Appendix B. General calibration procedures and requirements include the following:

- All instruments will be calibrated at least once a month.
- All instruments will have the calibrations checked at a minimum at the start of each day before measurements are made.
- The calibration and calibration checks will indicate that the sensitivity of the instrument (practical detection limit) is adequate to meet project needs and that the instrument is accurate over the working range.
- All calibration information will be recorded in the field log book. This includes date and time, technician signature, calibration procedure, calibration results, calibration problems, recalibration and maintenance, and instrument serial numbers.

All calibration standards will be of National Bureau of Standards (NBS) quality and their sources listed and documented so that standards are traceable. In addition, only technicians trained in the use of the field instruments will operate them. If the instrument readings are incorrect at the time of the initial calibration, the instrument will either be calibrated by the technician or returned to the manufacturer for calibration. If the instrument readings are incorrect after a continuing calibration check, the preceding sample results will be reviewed for validity, and reanalyzed if necessary.

5.2. Laboratory Calibration Procedures

All samples analyzed according to the USEPA SW-846 analytical methodologies shall follow the procedures described in the applicable Statement of Work (SOW). The calibration procedures and frequency are specifically described for each analysis contained in the SOW. All calibration results shall be recorded and kept on file, and will be reviewed and evaluated by the data validator as part of analytical data validation procedures.

Instrument calibration will be checked with a reference standard prior to the analysis of any sample. The standards used for calibrations will be traceable to the NBS, and each calibration will be recorded in the laboratory notebook for the particular analysis. Any printouts, chromatograms, etc., generated for the calibration will be kept on file.

6. Analytical Procedures

All groundwater samples collected for laboratory analysis will be analyzed by a NYSDEC ASP-certified laboratory for metals, using USEPA SW-846 analytical methodologies accompanied by NYSDEC ASP Category B deliverables. The SMP summarizes the analytical procedures and methods that will be utilized for the site.

The analytical methods listed in each work assignment are sufficient to support the DQOs for each project. In particular, the detection limits of these methods are adequate to support the DQOs. The general SW-846 methods and procedures used for the analysis of metals (Methods 6010C and 7470A) are summarized as follows:

- All instruments will have the calibrations checked at a minimum at the start of each day before measurements are made.
- The calibration and calibration checks will indicate that the sensitivity of the instrument (practical detection limit) is adequate to meet project needs and that the instrument is accurate over the working range.
- All calibration information will be recorded in the laboratory log book. This includes date and time, technician signature, calibration procedure, calibration results, calibration problems, recalibration and maintenance, and instrument serial numbers.

7. Data Reduction, Validation, and Reporting

The purpose of this section is to ensure that the large amounts of data produced by the laboratory are presented in a clear and useable format. In addition, data quality and technical validity must be verified prior to data use. The samples collected at the site will be analyzed according to USEPA SW-846 analytical methodologies, in which data reduction and reporting schemes are well developed and clearly defined. The employment of this method ensures comparability with other similarly analyzed environmental samples. Reduction, validation and reporting specifications for these analyses are detailed below.

7.1. Data Reduction

Data reduction is the process by which raw analytical data generated from the analytical instrument systems is converted into useable concentrations. The raw data, which takes the form of area counts or instrument responses, is processed by the laboratory and converted into concentrations expressed in terms of milligrams per kilogram (mg/kg), milligrams per liter (mg/L), micrograms per kilogram (ug/kg), micrograms per liter (ug/L), parts per million (ppm), parts per billion (ppb), or micrograms per cubic meter (ug/m3). These concentrations are the standard method for expressing the level of contamination present in environmental samples.

The process used to convert the instrument output into useable concentrations is clearly defined in the USEPA SW-846 methodologies. The resulting concentrations are comparable to other environmental samples in general and will be comparable to data previously collected for each site.

7.2. Data Validation

Data validation identifies invalid data and qualifies the usability of the remaining data. The output of data validation is qualitative or quantitative statements of data quality. Once the quality of individual measurements is known, a compilation of all data points into a cohesive statement can be made. The confidence associated with a statement incorporates both the confidence in individual measurements as well as in the decision.

Although rigorous validation of the data generated by the laboratory may be performed by a third party data validation subcontractor, the laboratory will be responsible for reviewing data to determine if any analytical problems exist. Specifically, the laboratory will develop a case narrative describing how closely the data meet the DQOs presented in this QAPP.

7.2.1. Data Review

The data review process shall consist of a contractual review that shall include an evaluation of the analysis and specific requirements of the published method in addition to the laboratory SOP. Data qualification shall be performed following the intent of the National Functional Guidelines in conjunction with the data validator's professional judgment, where applicable, since there are no formal validation guidelines written for this analysis.

Data will be declared invalid whenever documented evidence exists demonstrating that an sample was not collected under representative conditions, such as a air sampling canister leaking to ambient pressure during shipment.

The laboratory will provide a data reporting package. One copy of the ASP Category B data packages will be delivered to a third party data validation subcontractor for data assessment. If required by NYSDEC, the data packages will include the case narrative, sampling analysis, and summary forms.

Data validation will be performed using guidance from the following documents:

- USEPA Region 2 Evaluation of Metals Data for the Contract Laboratory Program (SOP# HW2 Rev. 13);
- USEPA Region 2 Validating Semi-volatile Organic Compounds by SW-846 Method 8270 (SOP# HW22 Rev. 4);
- USEPA Region 2 Validating Volatile Organic Compounds by SW-846 Method 8260B (SOP# HW24 Rev. 2).
- USEPA Region 2 Validating Polychlorinated Biphenyls by SW-846 Method 8082 (SOP# HW23B Rev. 1).
- USEPA Region 2 Validating Volatile Organic Analysis of Ambient Air in canister by Method TO-15 (SOP# HW31 Rev. 4).

The QA/QC Task Leader will coordinate the validation of the data set based on information from the field team and information supplied from the laboratory on the analysis. The Validator shall review the submitted data package to determine compliance with those portions of the this QAPP and site documents that pertain to the production of laboratory data. Compliance is defined by the following criteria:

1. The data package is complete.
2. The data has been produced and reported in a manner consistent with the data requirements of the QAPP and the laboratory subcontract.
3. All protocol required QA/QC criteria have been met.
4. All instrument tune and calibration requirements have been met for the time frame during which the analyses were completed.
5. All protocol required initial and continuing calibration data is present and documented.
6. All data reporting forms are complete for all samples submitted. This will include all sample dilution/concentration factors and all pre-measurement sample cleanup procedures.
7. All problems encountered during the analytical process have been reported in the case narrative along with any and all actions taken by the laboratory to correct these problems

The data validation task requires that the Data Validator conduct a detailed comparison of the reported data with the raw data submitted as part of the supporting documentation package.

Data are never declared invalid solely because they are unlikely to occur in nature, but may be flagged as suspect and be subjected to further review until the cause for the apparent anomaly is determined. The results from all QA/QC checks are evaluated to determine if the DQOs for each measurement are being met. Evidence of overwhelming measurement bias, external influences on the representativeness of the data, or lack of reproducibility of the measurement data may be cause for the data to be judged invalid.

7.2.2. Data Usability Summary Report (DUSR)

If a DUSR is required by the NYSDEC for future work, the Data Validator shall submit a DUSR covering the results of the data review process. This report shall include the following:

- A general assessment of the data package.

- Detailed descriptions of any and all deviations from the required protocols. (These descriptions must include references to the portions of the protocols involved in the alleged deviations).
- Any and all failures in the Validator's attempt to reconcile the reported data with the raw data from which it was derived. (Again, specific references must be included). Telephone logs should be included in the validation report.
- A detailed assessment by the Validator of the degree to which the data has been comprised by any deviations from protocol, QA/QC breakdowns, lack of analytical control, etc., that occurred during the analytical process.
- The report shall include, as an attachment, a copy of the laboratory's case narrative including the NYSDEC required sample and analysis summary sheets.
- The report shall include an overall appraisal of the data package.

The validation report shall include a chart presented in a spreadsheet format, consisting of site name, sample numbers, data submitted to laboratory, year of analytical protocol used, matrix, fractions analyzed, e.g., volatiles, semi-volatiles, metals, cyanide, PCBs. Space should be provided for a reference to the NYSDEC ASP when non-compliance is involved and a column for an explanation of such violation.

7.3. Reconciliation with Data Quality Objectives

Calculations and determinations for data precision, accuracy and completeness will be performed in accordance with the procedures presented in Section 7.4 upon the receipt of the validated analytical data. Results will be compared to the project specifications discussed in the work assignment and site documents. If the results do not meet the project specifications, the data will be flagged as questionable and the cause of the failure (i.e., analytical methods, equipment failure, or sampling error) will be evaluated. The Project Manager and Quality Assurance Officer (QAO) will be responsible for decisions regarding use of questionable data. Potential outcomes of this evaluation will include limitations on the use of the data, rejection of the data, and/or re-sampling. Any limitations on the use of the data will be detailed in site reports. Corrective action procedures are discussed further in Section 10.

7.4. Data Reporting

The laboratory will report TCL and TAL data consistent with ASP reporting requirements. The QA reporting will include the following accuracy and precision protocols as performed on the appropriate QA samples.

If any of the data quality measures indicate performance outside the desired objective, the data associated with that result are not considered useless. The burden is on the project team to determine the extent to which a quality issue affects the related data, and ultimately how the issue impacts the fitness for use of the data.

Most often a single isolated incident in which the performance objective is not met does not automatically render the data useless, but rather slightly reduces the confidence that the measurement is reliable, and indicates that increased quality control measures are needed. Any potential limitations of the data set will be identified and communicated. The project team will present all known or potential limitations on the data in the final report.

Data quality is measured by how well the data meet the QA/QC goals for the project. QC elements include precision, accuracy, representativeness, completeness, comparability, and sensitivity:

- Precision is a measure of mutual agreement among individual measurements of the same property, usually under prescribed conditions. Assessing precision measures the random error component of the data collection process. Precision is determined by measuring the agreement among individual measurements of the same property, under similar conditions. The degree of agreement, expressed as the RPD, is calculated using the formula below.

$$\mathrm{RPD} = \frac{(V_1 - V_2)}{\frac{(V_1 + V_2)}{2}} \times 100$$

where: V1 = value 1
V2 = value 2

Analytical precision is assessed by analyzing MS/MSD pairs and laboratory duplicate samples. Field precision is assessed by measurement of field duplicate samples. The objective for precision is to equal or exceed the precision demonstrated for similar samples and should be with the established control limits for the methods. Precision control limits and QC RPD limits are noted within the laboratory SOP.

- Accuracy is the degree of agreement of a measurement with an accepted reference or true value. Accuracy measures the bias or systematic error of the entire data collection process. Sources of these errors include the sampling process, field and laboratory contamination, sample preservation and handling, sample matrix interferences, sample preparation methods, and calibration and analytical procedures. To determine accuracy, a reference material of known concentration is analyzed or a sample which has been spiked with a known concentration is reanalyzed. Accuracy is expressed as a percent recovery and is calculated using the following formula:

- Completeness is calculated as follows:

$$\%\,\text{Completeness} = 100 \times \frac{V}{n}$$

where: *V = number of measurements judged valid*
n = total number of measurements

The objective is to generate a sufficient database with which to make informed decisions. To help meet the completeness objective, every effort must be made to avoid sample loss through accidents or inadvertence. The completeness goal for this project is 100%.

- Comparability expresses the confidence with which one data set can be compared to another.
- Sensitivity is the capability of a method or instrument to discriminate between small differences in analyte concentration.

8. Preventative Maintenance

The purpose of the preventative maintenance program is to ensure that the sampling, field testing, and analytical equipment perform properly thereby avoiding erroneous results, and minimizing equipment downtime. The preventative maintenance program also provides for the documentation of all maintenance to be used as evidence of instrument maintenance and for scheduling of future maintenance. This section describes the equipment maintenance program for field instruments and those responsible for implementation of the program at the Site. The specific field equipment maintenance procedures are given in the manufacturer specifications and operating manuals provided in Appendix B. The laboratory preventative maintenance program is the responsibility of the laboratory and only the minimum requirements are mentioned here.

8.1. Responsibilities

Responsibilities of key project personnel are described below:

Personnel	Responsibilities
Field Team Leader	• Keeping all maintenance records. • Development and implementation of maintenance program.
Equipment Manager	• Maintaining storage of equipment within the equipment inventory. • Carrying out all maintenance according to schedule. Informing field team members of specific maintenance requirements. • Keeping records of all maintenance performed under his care. Sending out equipment for service/repair. Maintaining adequate supply of spare parts.
Field Personnel	• Maintenance of all equipment located on-site on a regular basis and after each use. Keeping supply of spare parts on-hand.

8.2. Preventative Maintenance Program

The preventative maintenance program consists of three parts, normal upkeep, service and repair, and formal recordkeeping. Normal upkeep consists of daily procedures that include cleaning, lubrication and checking the batteries of the equipment. The following is a partial list of normal upkeep procedures and a partial list of important spare parts:

- Normal upkeep for environmental monitoring equipment performed daily or after each use:
    - Cleaning.
    - Lubrication of moving parts.
    - Check/charge battery.
    - Inspect for damage.
    - Check for operation problems.
    - Inspect all hoses and lines.
- Partial list of important spare parts for environmental monitoring instruments frequently used:
    - Fuses.
    - Mini Rae-UV lamp.
    - Spare battery.

The normal upkeep is performed daily after each use and includes inspecting for damage, signs of problems, and charging the batteries if necessary. Specific equipment upkeep procedures are described in the manufacturer specifications and operation manuals for each instrument provided in the Generic Field Activities Plan.

Minor service and repair will be performed by the Equipment Manager who is experienced in the service and repair of field instruments. Equipment in need of major or more complex repair and service will be sent to the manufacturer.

All maintenance, servicing and repair of equipment shall be recorded and kept on file. Field personnel shall record maintenance and instrument problems in the field instrument log books. These will ultimately be kept on file by the Field Team Leader. The Equipment Manager shall keep a record of all equipment released to the field and a record of all maintenance and service on file.

8.3. Laboratory Instrument Maintenance

Preventative maintenance procedures will be clearly defined and written for each measurement system. Maintenance activity, preventative or repair, will be documented on standard forms, which are maintained in log books. Written procedures will include maintenance schedules, problem identification procedures, space for describing problems and repair notes, and failure analysis protocols. Service contracts and regularly scheduled in-house maintenance will be included, along with a list of critical spare parts. Laboratory instrument maintenance and calibration and corrective action procedures are incorporated in the laboratory SOPs.

8.4. Rental Equipment

Rental equipment will be obtained only from known, reputable rental suppliers. The equipment will require a pre-receipt to verify accuracy, maintenance and upkeep of the equipment.

9. Quality Assurance Procedures

In order to monitor the quality of the analytical data generated for each work assignment, an appropriate number of QC methods will be employed for all field and laboratory measurement systems. The employment of QC methods permits the validation of the analytical methodology utilized and provides a measure of the suitability of the methodology to meet the DQOs prior to the beginning of measurement or analysis. Once the measurement and analysis has begun, the employment of QC methods permits the monitoring of the system output for quality. The QC results presented with the environmental sample data, allows the data to be assessed for quality, and a determination made on how well the data has met the DQOs.

Laboratory generated data is used to accurately identify and quantify hazardous substances, while the field generated data is used in conjunction with the laboratory data for further investigation of contamination at the site. Both laboratory and field internal QC programs include steps to assure the data are reliable for the extent they will be used in the focused investigation. In general, laboratory QC programs are more rigorous than field QC programs.

9.1. Field Quality Control

The intended data uses have been identified and the DQOs established for all field measurement activities in Sections 3 and 5 of this QAPP. Section 3 contains SOPs, which describe the use and calibration of field instruments. QC methods will be used to demonstrate that the instruments are capable of producing reliable data. The QC checks employed for field instruments are as follows:

QC METHOD	PURPOSE	FREQUENCY
Calibration Check Sample	• Documents proper working order of instrument.	Daily
Background Sample	• Measures instrument accuracy and sensitivity.	Daily
Duplicate Sample	• Measures instrument	5%

	precision.	
Trip Blanks	• Measures potential contamination from sample transport, the environment and/or shipping.	Minimum of one per cooler of aqueous volatile samples.
Field Blanks	• Measures potential contamination due to poor sampling device decontamination procedures.	One per every 20 environmental samples per media.

The calibration check samples will be analyzed daily and duplicate samples will be analyzed at a minimum frequency of five percent. The calibration check verifies that the instrument is capable of accurately identifying and quantifying contaminants of concern. The duplicates provide a quantitative measurement of the precision of the instrument. Background samples are similar to blanks and provide information regarding instrument reliability. The information is recorded in field logbooks. The field technician uses the results from these QC methods to monitor the instrument at the time of the analysis. If QC results indicate a problem with the instrument, corrective action will be taken and, if necessary, the samples will be reanalyzed. Because field measurements are generally easy to repeat, measurements should be repeated as necessary so the data are as complete as possible. The QC results are used as an indication of data quality and reliability when the data are being reviewed.

9.2. Laboratory Quality Control

The scope and description of QC samples and QC methods are well detailed in the applicable USEPA SW-846 methodologies for the particular analysis. The methodologies for organic and inorganic analyses describe the type of QC samples and required QC methods, and the required frequency of analysis. QC limits have been established for standards, blanks, duplicates, matrix spikes, and surrogates, and are contained in the methodologies. QC data will be reviewed by the project consultant’s personnel to assess the validity of the data and determine if the DQOs have been met.

10. Corrective Actions

10.1. Non-conformance Reports

Corrective action will be undertaken when a non-conforming condition is identified. A non-conforming condition occurs when QA objectives for precision, accuracy, completeness, representativeness or comparability are not met, or when procedural practices or other conditions are not acceptable.

A non-conformance report will be prepared by the site QAO, approved by the Project Officer, and issued to the Project Manager and other appropriate parties. The non-conformance report will describe the unacceptable condition and the nature of corrective measures recommended and will include a discussion of specific data involved, the impact to data quality, and ultimate data usability. A schedule for compliance will also be provided.

10.2. Corrective Actions

The non-conformance report will be transmitted to a responsible officer of the ASP laboratory, the NYSDEC, the Project Officer and the Project Manager. The non-conformance report will specify, in writing, the corrective action recommended including measures to prevent a recurrence of the original deficiency. Appropriate documentation of corrective action will also be prepared. The site QAO will monitor implementation of the corrective action, and provide written record as to whether the original problem has been resolved.

10.3. Stop Work Orders

A Stop-Work Order may be issued, upon authorization, by the site QAO, if corrective action does not adequately address a problem or if no resolution can be reached. To issue a Stop-Work Order, written authorization is required from the Project Manager and the NYSDEC Representative. If disagreement occurs among these individuals, it will be brought before successively higher levels of management until the issue is resolved.

10.3.1. Stop Work Order Documentation

The conditions and need for a Stop-Work Order will be documented in sufficient detail to permit evaluation of the deficiency and determination of proper corrective action. Pertinent communications will be attached to the Stop-Work Order and referenced in the appropriate spaces. Such communications include discussions, correspondences, or telephone conversations that pertain to evaluation of the problem and potential solutions, and implementation of the preferred solution.

10.3.2. Resumption of Work

In order for work to resume following a Stop-Work Order, the Project Manager and the NYSDEC Representative must rescind it in writing.

10.4. Course and Action to Prevent Recurrence

The site QAO is responsible for tracking non-conforming conditions, evaluating the effectiveness of corrective measures, and assuring that the necessary steps have been taken to prevent recurrence of the original problem.

10.5. Field Changes

The Project Manager is responsible for all site activities. In this capacity the Project Manager will at times be required to modify site programs in response to changing site conditions. At such times the responsible Field Team Leader will notify the Project Manager of the anticipated change, and obtain the approval of the Project Manager and implement the necessary changes. The Project Manager will notify in writing the site QAO, the Project Officer, and the NYSDEC Representative. A copy of the notification will be attached to the file copy of the affected document. If an unapproved action has been taken during a period of deviation, the action will be evaluated to determine the significance of any departure from established procedures.

11. Quality Assurance Reports

Field staff will promptly report any difficulties to the Project Manager. The laboratory will provide a written description on any quality assurance, problems to the project consultant with submission of the analytical data packages.

Following any quality assurance audits, the site QAO will submit a Quality Assurance report to the Project Manager describing the performance of the quality assurance program. Problems or issues that arise independent of audits, may be identified to project management at any time.

12. References

American Society for Testing and Materials (ASTM), 1994. Standard Practice for Decontamination of Field Equipment Used at Nonradioactive Waste Sites. Designation: D 5088 – 90.

NYSDEC, 1993. “Engineering Investigations and Evaluations of Inactive Hazardous Waste Disposal Sites – Preliminary Site Assessment Report”. New York State Department of Environmental Conservation, Division of Hazardous Waste Remediation, Bureau of Hazardous Site Control - Eastern Investigation Section.

NYSDEC, 2002. "Draft DER-10 Technical Guidance for Site Investigation and Remediation." New York State Department of Environmental Conservation, Division of Environmental Remediation. December 2002.

NYSDEC, 2005. “Draft Handbook for Standby Consultant Contracts”. New York State Department of Environmental Conservation, Division of Environmental Remediation.

NYSDOH, 2006. “Final Guidance for Evaluating Soil Vapor Intrusion in the State of New York”. New York State Department of Health Center for Environmental Health, Bureau of Environmental Exposure Investigation. October, 2006.

USEPA, 1986, Test Methods for Evaluating Solid Waste, Physical/Chemical Methods, SW 846, Third Edition.

USEPA, 1987, Data Quality Objectives for Remedial Response Activities, CDM Federal Programs Corporation.

USEPA, 1988, Guidance for Conducting Remedial Investigations and Feasibility Studies Under CERCLA, Interim Final, 540G89004.

USEPA, 1989, Region II CERCLA Quality Assurance Manual, Final Copy, Revision 1.

USEPA, 1989, Soil Sampling Quality Assurance User’s Guide, Second Edition, EPA 600/8-89/046.

USEPA, 1992, Region II Evaluation of Metals Data for the Contract Laboratory Program, SOP ID: HW-2, Revision 11, 3/90.

USEPA, 1997, Multi-Agency Radiation Survey and Site Investigation Manual (MARSSIM), EPA 402-R-97-016, Revision 1.

USEPA, 1999, Contract Laboratory Statement of Work for Organic Analysis, Multi Media, Multi-Concentration OLMO4.2.

USEPA, 1999, Region II Validating Volatile Organic Compounds by SW-846 Method 8260B, SOP ID: HW-24, Revision 1.

USEPA, 2000, Guidance for the Data Quality Objectives Process, EPA QA/G-4, August 2000.

USEPA, 2001, Region II Validating Semivolatile Organic Compounds by SW-846 Method 8270, SOP ID: HW-22, Revision 2.

USEPA, 2002, Region II Validating PCB Compounds by SW-846 Method 8082, SOP ID: HW-23B, Revision 1.

USEPA, 2005, Contract Laboratory Program Statement of Work for Inorganic Analysis Multi-Media, Multi-Concentration ILMO6.X, Draft.

USEPA, 2010, Region II Low Stress (Low-Flow) Purging and Sampling Procedure for Collecting Ground Water Samples from Monitoring Wells, Final.

ARCADIS

Appendix A

Generally Acceptable Procedure for Low Stress (Low Flow) Groundwater Sampling

GENERALLY ACCEPTABLE PROCEDURE

FOR

LOW STRESS (LOW FLOW) GROUNDWATER SAMPLING

PURPOSE/APPLICATION

This low flow groundwater purging and sampling procedure presents a standard method for collecting groundwater samples that are representative of the formation from which they are being withdrawn. By using low flow rates for purging and sampling to minimize drawdown within the well, three primary benefits gained. First, using a low flow rate during sampling promotes laminar flow, which minimizes the disturbance of sediment at the bottom of a well or fine particles in the well's filter pack. Groundwater samples are therefore less turbid, which reduces sampling time and generally eliminates the need to filter. Second, the amount of groundwater purged from the sampling well is significantly reduced, minimizing investigation derived waste. Third, low flow purging and sampling reduces aeration and therefore helps to preserves the natural chemical characteristics of the groundwater sample. Low flow sampling may be used to collect groundwater samples for analysis of contaminants of concern, as well as geo-chemical and biological parameters.

This guideline is for information purposes and should not take precedence over the requirements of project specific plans. This is especially true for federal project sites, which are governed by regionally directed United States Environmental Protection Agency (USEPA) low flow groundwater sampling protocols.

EQUIPMENT

Low flow groundwater sampling requires traditional groundwater sampling equipment with the addition of the following:

- Multi-parameter water quality monitoring system (e.g. Horiba U-22 or equivalent) equipped with a flow through cell.
- An adjustable rate, positive displacement, groundwater pump (e.g., centrifugal, submersible, or bladder pumps) constructed of stainless steel or Teflon capable of achieving low flow pumping rates (i.e., 100 to 500 ml/min).
- Polyethylene tubing or equivalent.
- Flow measurement device (e.g., a graduated container and stop watch).
- A water level probe or oil/water interface probe.

PRE-SAMPLING PROCEDURES

The pre-sampling procedures for low flow groundwater sampling and purging are as follows:

1. To minimize the risk of cross-contamination, if possible, begin with the monitoring well that is known or believed to have the lowest contaminant concentrations.

2. Position a sheet of polyethylene over the monitoring well for placement of all sampling equipment.

3. Where applicable, measure the concentration of volatile organic compounds (VOCs) in the well’s headspace with a photoionization detector (PID) and record the concentration in the field log book.

4. Measure and record the depth to water and if applicable, the depth to light non-aqueous phase liquid (LNAPL).

SAMPLING PROCEDURES

The procedures for collecting groundwater samples using low flow are as follows:

1. **Pump Installation:** Install the pump by slowly lowering the pump assembly and tubing into the well. The pump should be set to the appropriate depth with the intake being a minimum of two-feet above the bottom of the well to prevent disturbing and re-suspending any sediment at the bottom of the well.

2. **Water Level Measurement:** Measure the depth to groundwater from the top of the well casing using a water level probe. Leave the probe in the well for subsequent water level measurements.

3. **Purging:** Begin purging the well at a rate of 200 to 500 milliliters per minute (ml/min) and measure the water level. If excessive drawdown is observed in the well (i.e. greater that 0.3 feet), reduce the flow rate until the water level stabilizes. When the water level has stabilized, subsequent measurements should be made on five minute intervals. The flow rate, as well as flow rate adjustments should be recorded on a field purge log.

4. **Field Parameter Monitoring:** Field parameters (pH, conductivity, reduction/oxidation potential, DO, and turbidity) should be recorded every five minutes with water level measurements. The well is considered stable and ready to be sampled once the field parameters are stable over three consecutive readings (USEPA Region 2, 1998). The following criteria identify stabilized field parameters:
   - ± 0.1 for pH
   - ± 3.0 percent for conductivity
   - ± 10.0 mv for redox potential
   - ± 10.0 percent for DO and turbidity

   The pump should **not** be removed or shut off between purging and sampling.

5. **Sample Collection:** If necessary, reduce the flow rate to 100 to 250 ml/min to reduce turbulence while filling sample containers during sample collection. Where wells are purged at a flow rate less than 100 ml/min, maintain the same flow rate during sample collection. Disconnect the inflow line from the flow through cell and collect the groundwater sample. All sample containers should be filled directly from the tubing. Allow water to flow from the tubing gently down the inside of the containers to minimize turbulence during sample collection. Groundwater samples should be collected in order of importance, according to the project requirements.

6. **Pump Removal:** Once sampling is complete, slowly remove the pump assembly and tubing from the well. If the tubing is dedicated to the well, disconnect the tubing from the pump, re-insert the tubing into the well, and secure the tubing so it is easily accessible.

7. **Secure Well:** Secure the top of the well casing with a locking cap or expansion plug and close the well. In the case of a stick-up protective well cover, , lock the outer casing.

DECOMTAMINATION

All dedicated or “single use” groundwater sampling equipment should be disposed in accordance with all applicable local and federal regulations. The decontamination procedures for non-dedicated low flow groundwater sampling equipment are as follows:

1. **Pre-rinse:** Operate the pump and flush equipment thoroughly with deionized or distilled water for approximately five minutes.

2. **Wash:** Operate the pump and flush equipment thoroughly with Alconox or other non-phosphate detergent solution for approximately five minutes.

3. **Rinse:** Operate the pump and flush equipment thoroughly with deionized or distilled water for approximately five minutes or until all of the detergent has been removed from the equipment.

FIELD SAMPLING FORM

See attached.

REFERENCES

United States Environmental Protection Agency (USEPA) Region II, 1998, Ground Water Sampling Procedure, Low Stress (low flow) Purging and Sampling, GW Sampling SOP, March 16th.

POTENTIAL PROBLEMS/TROUBLESHOOTING

Insufficient yield, cascading, field parameters failing to stabilize, and aerating the groundwater sample are potential problems when trying to use low flow protocols to collect representative groundwater samples.

Insufficient Yield/Cascading

A low yielding well that cannot sustain a low flow purge rate may eventually go dry. The sampler should take care not to dewater the well below the top of the well screen to prevent cascading of the sand pack. Therefore, pumping a well dry should be avoided in all situations. If a well should go dry, the groundwater sample should be collected as soon as there is sufficient recharge to collect the sample. If the well has not recharged sufficiently within 48 hours, the well should not be sampled.

A low yielding well that consistently demonstrates that it cannot sustain a low flow purge rate of 250 ml/min or less should not be sampled using low flow protocols. Groundwater samples collected from low yielding wells are often representative of the stagnant groundwater within the well and the surrounding sand pack, and not representative of the geologic formation. In addition, these samples are typically very turbid, which can skew the analytical results of groundwater samples being analyzed for organic compounds and metals.

Key Field Parameters Fail to Stabilize

If any key parameters fail to stabilize within four hours of purging, then the following alternatives should be considered:

1. Continue purging until stabilization.
2. Stop purging, do not collect a sample, and document the activity.
3. Stop purging, collect a sample, and document the activity.
4. Stop purging, secure the well, and resume purging the following day.

The key parameter for samples being analyzed for VOCs is dissolved oxygen (DO). The key parameter for all other analytical samples is turbidity. Typically DO and turbidity take the longest to stabilize.

Non-stabilizing turbidity measurements may be avoided by periodically removing sediments that may be trapped in the flow through cell during purging. Trapped sediments may cause artificial fluctuations in turbidity measurements. Additionally, the sampler should visually compare the turbidity of the groundwater in the Cell with the groundwater entering the Cell. If the groundwater entering the Cell is clearer, disconnect the inflow line, drain the turbid groundwater from the Cell, and reconnect the inflow line. Turbidity readings should more accurately reflect true groundwater conditions.

Fluctuations in DO measurements may be caused by air bubbles that form in the flow through cell or sample tubing. Ensure that the inflow tubing is sealed tightly to the flow through cell to prevent the intrusion of air. It may be necessary to drain the flow through cell to remove all air bubbles that may interfere with accurate DO readings.

Aerating the Sample

To prevent inadvertently aerating the groundwater sample, the flow rate should be set so that pump suction and positive groundwater flow through the sample tubing is maintained. The sampler should minimize the length and diameter of the sample tubing. It is recommended that either one-quarter or three-eights-inch inner diameter tubing are used.

Where centrifugal pumps are being used to collect a groundwater sample from a deep well, preventing aeration and sustaining a low flow rate becomes problematic. These issues can be minimized if an impeller is removed from the pump. This allows the pump to run at a lower flow rate and reduces the potential for aerating the groundwater sample. There is also concern that the centrifugal pump will heat the groundwater sample, however, the increases in temperature rarely increases more than two degrees Celsius during sampling.

ARCADIS

Appendix B

Equipment Manuals

Multi Water Quality Checker
U-50 Series

Instruction Manual

CODE:GZ0000144342C

Preface

This manual describes the operation of the Multi Water Quality Checker, U-50 Series.
Be sure to read this manual before using the product to ensure proper and safe operation of the instrument. Also safely store the manual so it is readily available whenever necessary.

Product specifications and appearance, as well as the contents of this manual are subject to change without notice.

■ Warranty and Responsibility

HORIBA warrants that the Product shall be free from defects in material and workmanship and agrees to repair or replace free of charge, at HORIBA's option, any malfunctioned or damaged Product attributable to HORIBA's responsibility for a period of one (1) year from the delivery unless otherwise agreed with a written agreement. In any one of the following cases, none of the warranties set forth herein shall be extended;

- Any malfunction or damage attributable to improper operation
- Any malfunction attributable to repair or modification by any person not authorized by HORIBA
- Any malfunction or damage attributable to the use in an environment not specified in this manual
- Any malfunction or damage attributable to violation of the instructions in this manual or operations in the manner not specified in this manual
- Any malfunction or damage attributable to any cause or causes beyond the reasonable control of HORIBA such as natural disasters
- Any deterioration in appearance attributable to corrosion, rust, and so on
- Replacement of consumables

HORIBA SHALL NOT BE LIABLE FOR ANY DAMAGES RESULTING FROM ANY MALFUNCTIONS OF THE PRODUCT, ANY ERASURE OF DATA, OR ANY OTHER USES OF THE PRODUCT.

■ Trademarks

Generally, company names and brand names are either registered trademarks or trademarks of the respective companies.

April, 2009

Conformable Directive

This equipment conforms to the following directives and standards:

Directives:	the EMC Directive 2004/108/EC
Standards:	[the EMC Directive] EN61326-1:2006 Class B, Portable test and measurement equipment

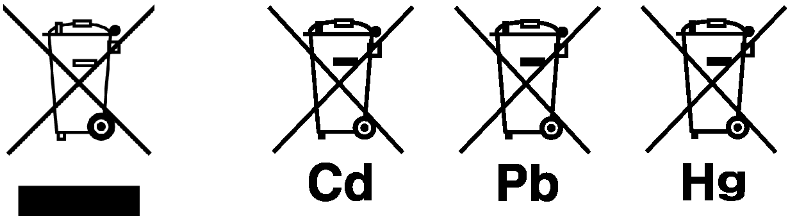
Information on Disposal of Electrical and Electronic Equipment and Disposal of Batteries and Accumulators

The crossed out wheeled bin symbol with underbar shown on the product or accompanying documents indicates the product requires appropriate treatment, collection and recycle for waste electrical and electronic equipment (WEEE) under the Directive 2002/96/EC, and/or waste batteries and accumulators under the Directive 2006/66/EC in the European Union.

The symbol might be put with one of the chemical symbols below. In this case, it satisfies the requirements of the Directive 2006/66/EC for the object chemical.

This product should not be disposed of as unsorted household waste.
Your correct disposal of WEEE, waste batteries and accumulators will contribute to reducing wasteful consumption of natural resources, and protecting human health and the environment from potential negative effects caused by hazardous substance in products.

Contact your supplier for information on applicable disposal methods.



FCC Rules

Any changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance shall void the user's authority to operate the equipment.

WARNING

This equipment has been tested and found to comply with the limits for a Class A digital device, pursuant to part 15 of the FCC Rules. These limits are designed to provide reasonable protection against harmful interference when the equipment is operated in a commercial environment. This equipment generates, uses, and can radiate radio frequency energy and, if not installed and used in accordance with the instruction manual, may cause harmful interference to radio communications.
Operation of this equipment in a residential area is likely to cause harmful interference in which case the user will be required to correct the interference at his own expense.

For your safety

Warning messages are described in the following manner. Read the messages and follow the instructions carefully.

● Meaning of warning messages

⚠ DANGER	This indicates an imminently hazardous situation which, if not avoided, will result in death or serious injury. This signal word is to be limited to the most extreme situations.
⚠ WARNING	This indicates a potentially hazardous situation which, if not avoided, could result in death or serious injury.
⚠ CAUTION	This indicates a potentially hazardous situation which, if not avoided, may result in minor or moderate injury. It may also be used to alert against unsafe practices. Without safety alert indication of hazardous situation which, if not avoided, could result in property damage.

● Symbols

❗	Description of what should be done, or what should be followed
⊘	Description of what should never be done, or what is prohibited

■ Safety Precautions

This section provides precautions to enable you to use the product safely and correctly and to prevent injury and damage. The terms of DANGER, WARNING, and CAUTION indicate the degree of imminency and hazardous situation. Read the precautions carefully as it contains important safety messages.

⚠	**WARNING**
🛇	Do not disassemble or modify the meter. May cause overheating or fire, resulting in accidents.

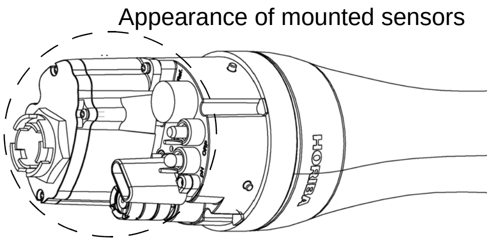
⚠	**CAUTION**
❗	The pH and ORP sensors are made of glass. Handle them carefully to avoid breakage.
❗	Do not ingest the DO, pH or ORP standard solutions. If it comes into contact with the eyes, rinse thoroughly with water. If swallowed, consult a physician.
🛇	Keep away from water when using USB communication. Improper use may result in fire or damage.

Points of concern

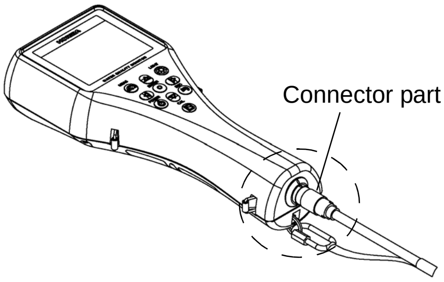
Use of the equipment in a manner not specified by the manufacturer may impair the protection provided by the equipment. It may also reduce equipment performance.

Sensor probe

- Do not immerse the sensor probe in seawater or other samples with high salinity. Doing so may erode metallic parts. After use, promptly wash the sensor probe thoroughly in water.
- Do not immerse the sensor probe in alcohol, organic solvent, strong acid, strong alkaline, and other similar solutions.
- Do not subject to strong shocks.
- Do not perform measurement in environments of magnetic fields. Measurement errors may result.
- The sensor probe is no longer waterproof when the sensors are not mounted.

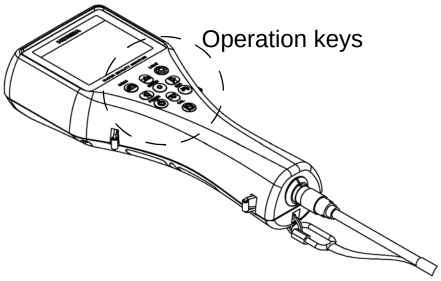


- Does not support measurement of samples containing fluorine.
- To disconnect the sensor cable or interface cable, pull them out with holding the connector part. Do not pull the cable part; it may cause breakage.



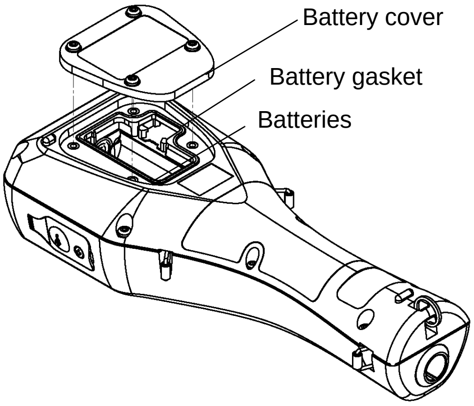
Control unit

- Do not subject to strong shocks.
- The operation keys are designed to operate using the pad of a finger, sharp objects can tear the control unit cover damaging the operation keys.



- The control unit is no longer waterproof when the USB cable is connected.
- When operating the control unit only, protect the connector with the connector cap provided.

- Remove the batteries when not using the control unit for an extended period of time. Battery fluid leakage may cause equipment failure.
- Do not wipe the control unit with organic solvents or powder polish. The surface may deteriorate or its printing may disappear. If the display becomes dirty, wipe the dirt off with a soft cloth soaked in neutral detergent.
- Do not turn the power OFF or disconnect the cable during calibration or setting. Memory data may be erased.
- To perform measurement, connect the sensor probe cable before turning the power ON.
- Do not remove the battery gasket or twist it.
- When opening the battery case, make sure that no foreign matter is attached to the battery gasket.
- Do not use any unspecified batteries; it may cause breakage.



Measurement

- Do not pull the cable when lowering the sensor probe into the sample during measurement. Lower the sensor probe into the sample on a chain or string.
- Before lowering the sensor probe into the sample, do not connect the hook on the unit to a human body.
- The correct values are not displayed if the sensor is not mounted when the measurement display is activated.
- Perform DO measurement with no air bubbles in the internal solution.
- Do not reuse a membrane cap of DO sensor.
- Use the spanner for DO sensor provided to attach or remove the DO sensor.
- Avoid both U-53 and U-53G turbidity measurement in air, since the rubber wiper will quickly become damaged.
- Avoid turbidity measurement in direct sunlight, since the readout may be affected.

Calibration

During atmosphere calibration for the DO electrode with DO salinity compensation set to automatic, values are compensated based on electrical conductivity, but calibration is performed normally.

Location of use and storage

- Storage temperature: –10°C to 60°C
- Relative humidity: Under 80% and free from condensation

Store the meter in locations void of dust, strong vibrations, direct sunlight, corrosive gases, near air conditioners or windy areas.

Disposal of the product

When disposing of the product, follow the related laws and/or regulations of your country for disposal of the product.

Description in this manual

Note

This interprets the necessary points for correct operation and notifies the important points for handling the unit.

Reference

This indicates where to refer for information.

Tip

This indicates reference information.

Contents

1 About this Unit

The U-50 Series Multi Water Quality Checker features an integrated control unit and sensors. It is capable of making a maximum of eleven simultaneous measurements for various parameters, and is perfect for use in the field. The U-50 Series is designed with on-site ease-of-use in mind, provides a wide variety of functions, and can be used for water quality measurements and inspections of river water, groundwater, and waste water.

2 Device Information

2.1 Measurement parameters

Parameters	Model				
	U-51	U-52	U-52G	U-53	U-53G
pH (pH)	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
pH (mV)	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
Oxidation reduction potential (ORP)	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
Dissolved oxygen (DO)	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
Electrical conductivity (COND)	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
Salinity (SAL) [expressed as electrical conductivity]	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
Total dissolved solids (TDS) [expressed as electrical conductivity]	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
Seawater specific gravity (SG) [expressed as electrical conductivity]	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
Water temperature (TEMP)	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
Turbidity (TURB) [LED transmission/front 30° scattering method]	–	✓	✓	–	–
Turbidity (TURB) [tungsten lamp 90° transmission/scattering method] with wiper	–	–	–	✓	✓
Water depth (DEP)	–	–	✓	✓	✓
GPS	–	–	✓	–	✓

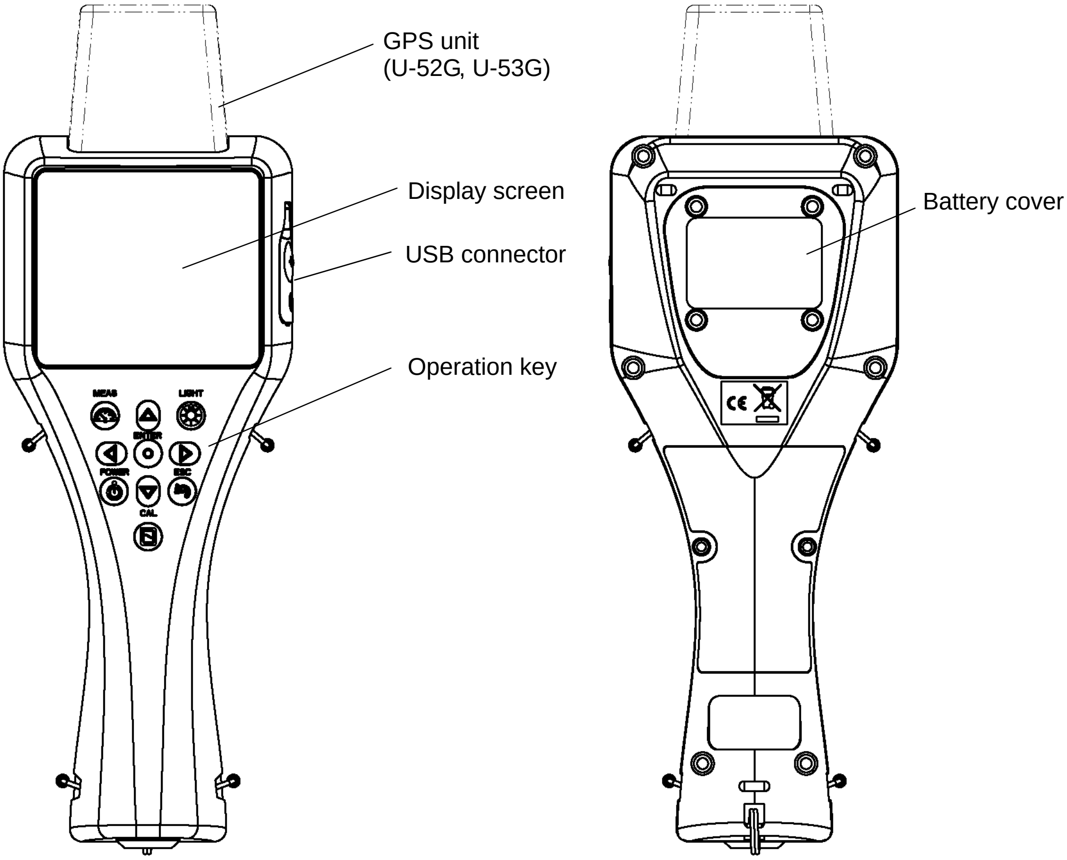
"✓" indicates a measurable parameter.

2.2 Packing list

Parts Name	Quantity	Note
Control unit	1	
Sensor probe	1	
pH sensor (#7112)	1	
ORP sensor (#7313)	1	
Reference electrode (#7210)	1	
DO sensor (#7543)	1	
Turbidity sensor (#7800)	1	With U-52/U-52G only. Attached to the sensor probe.
Turbidity sensor (#7801)	1	With U-53/U-53G only. Attached to the sensor probe.
pH 4 standard solution (#100-4)	1	500 mL
pH reference internal solution (#330)	1	250 mL
DO sensor internal solution set (#306)	1	Internal solution (50 mL), Sandpaper (#8000, #600), Syringe
DO Membrane spare parts set	1	
Spanner for DO sensor	1	
Cleaning brush	1	
calibration cup	1	transparent calibration cup, black calibration cup
Back pack	1	
Strap	1	
Alkaline batteries	4	LR14
Silicon grease	1	
Instruction manual	1	

2.3 Parts name and functions

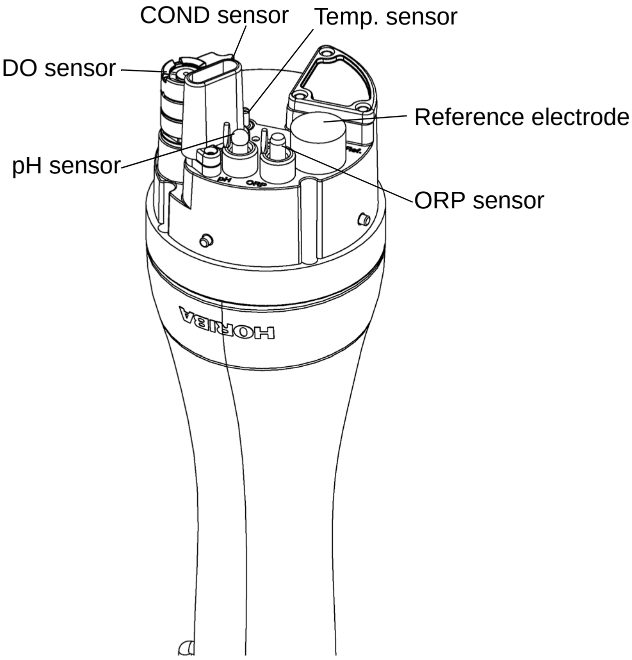
● Display



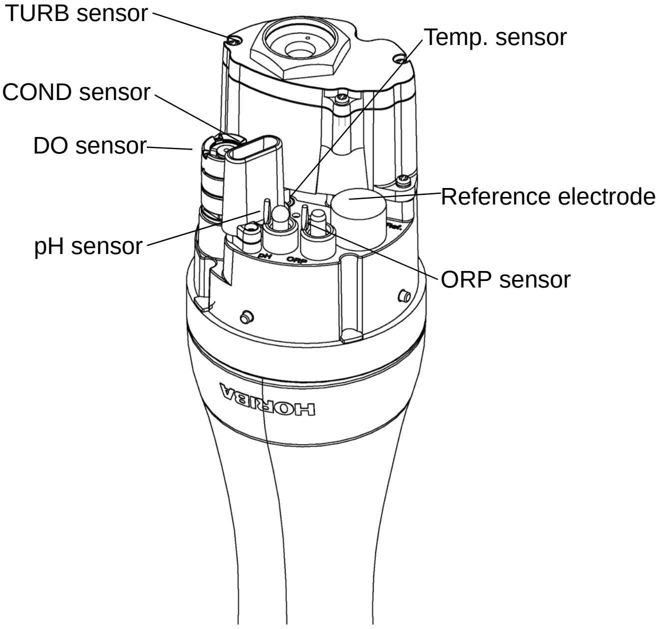
Front view

Back view

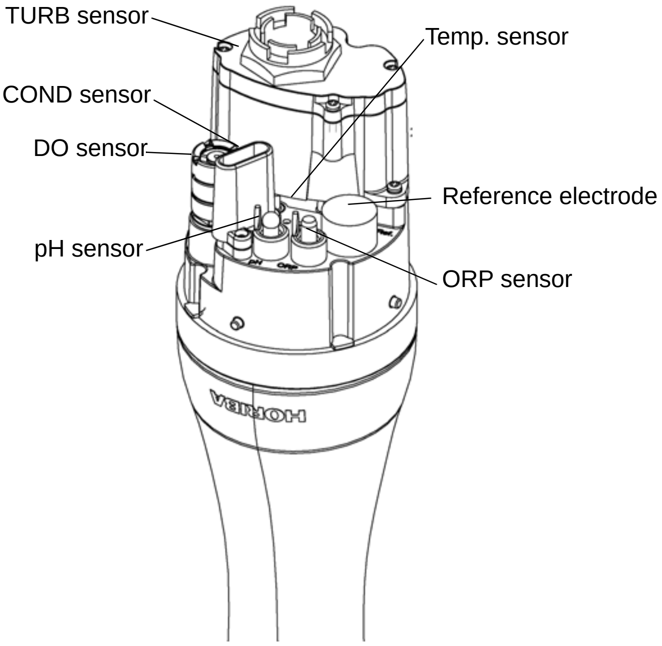
● Sensor probe (U-51)



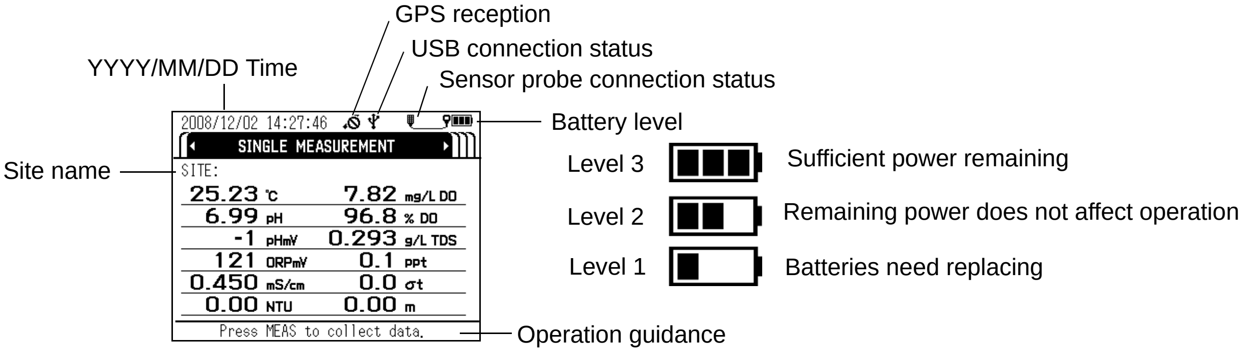
Sensor probe (U-52)



Sensor probe (U-53)



Display screen



```
2008/12/02 14:27:46
 SINGLE MEASUREMENT
SITE:
 25.23 ℃        7.82 mg/L DO
  6.99 pH       96.8 % DO
    -1 pHmV    0.293 g/L TDS
   121 ORPmV     0.1 ppt
 0.450 mS/cm     0.0 σt
  0.00 NTU      0.00 m
 Press MEAS to collect data.
```

Level 3	▮▮▮	Sufficient power remaining
Level 2	▮▮	Remaining power does not affect operation
Level 1	▮	Batteries need replacing

Operation key

	Key name	description
POWER	POWER key	Turns the system’s power ON/OFF. The initial screen appears immediately after turning the power ON. Press and hold down the POWER key for about 3 seconds to turn the power ON and OFF.
MEAS	MEAS key	When pressed in the measurement screen, used to set the measurement values of all the measurement parameters. Measurement values flash until the data stabilizes.
		When pressed in the setting, calibration or data operation screen, returns to the measurement screen.
ENTER	ENTER key	Used to execute functions, set entered values or store data in memory.
CAL	CAL key	Switches to the calibration screen.
ESC	ESC key	Returns to the immediately preceding operation.
LIGHT	LIGHT key	Turns the backlight ON/OFF. ● Using the backlight shortens battery life. ● The backlight does not light for about 3 seconds after power ON. ● When the sensor probe is connected while the display's backlight is lit, the backlight goes out for about 3 seconds.
◁	Left key	Moves the cursor to the left.
▷	Right key	Moves the cursor to the right.
△	Up key	Moves the cursor up.
▽	Down key	Moves the cursor down.

2.4 Setting menu items

Measurement	Single measurement Interval measurement	“ 3.2.1 Setting measurement methods ” (page 18)
Site	Select site Create new site Delete site	“ 3.2.2 Setting sites ” (page 20)
Unit for report	TEMP (temperature) TURB (turbidity) DO (dissolved oxygen) COND (electrical conductivity) SG (seawater specific gravity) Depth (water depth) SALT (salinity)	“ 3.2.3 Unit for report ” (page 23)
Sensor selection	TEMP (temperature) pH pH mV ORP COND (electrical conductivity) TURB (turbidity) DO (dissolved oxygen) TDS (total dissolved solids) SALT (salinity) SG (seawater specific gravity) DEPTH (water depth)	“ 3.2.4 Sensor selection ” (page 25)
Compensation	DO salinity compensation DO atmospheric pressure compensation Electrical conductivity temperature coefficient TDS	“ 3.2.5 Compensation ” (page 26)
System	Language Version Date/time Auto power OFF Display contrast Initialize GPS locate* GPS locating accuracy*	“ 3.2.6 System settings ” (page 32) *Only on models with a GPS unit.

2.5 Calibration menu items

Auto calibration	pH COND (electrical conductivity) TURB (turbidity) DO (dissolved oxygen) DEPTH (water depth)	“ 3.3.1 Auto calibration ” (page 39)
Manual calibration	TEMP (temperature) pH ORP COND (electrical conductivity) TURB (turbidity) DO (dissolved oxygen) DEPTH (water depth)	“ 3.3.2 Manual calibration ” (page 42)

2.6 Data operation menu items

Data operation	View data Delete data Check data memory Calibration record GPS information*	“ 3.5 Data operations ” (page 64) *Only on models with a GPS unit.

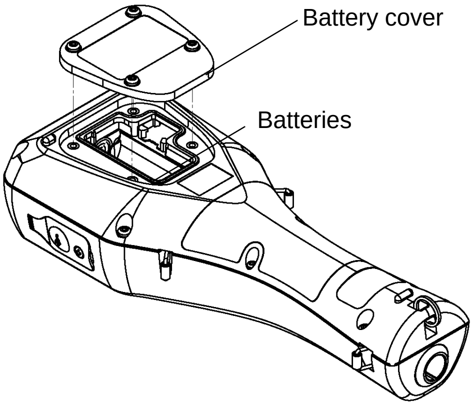
3 Basic Operation

3.1 System setup

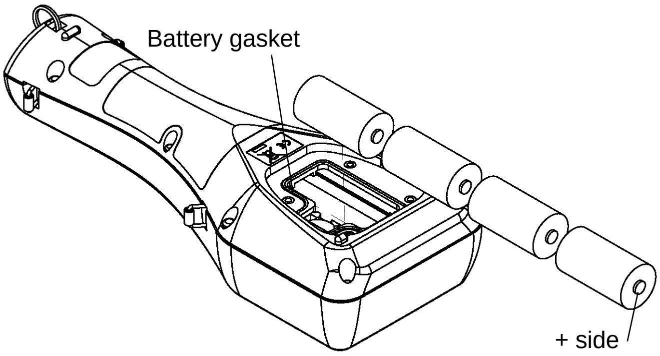
3.1.1 Inserting and replacing the batteries

The control unit is shipped without batteries. Follow the steps below to insert the batteries when using the system for the first time or replacing old batteries.

1. **Loosen the 4 screws on the battery cover by using No. 2 Phillips head screwdriver and remove the cover.**



2. **If replacing the batteries, discard the old batteries.**
3. **Insert new batteries in the control unit.**
   Check that the battery gasket is not dirty or twisted.



4. **Replace the battery cover and fasten it with the 4 screws.**
   Tighten the screws to less than 0.5 N·m.

Note

- **Data and settings will not be lost when the batteries are replaced.**
- **If dirty or twisted, the battery gasket will fail to keep the batteries dry. Check its condition before closing the cover.**
- **To ensure long service life, replacing the battery gasket periodically (once a year) is recommended.**

Precautions when using dry cell batteries

- **Batteries to use: LR14 alkaline dry cell batteries (C-size dry cell batteries) or rechargeable nickel-metal hydride dry cell batteries (C-size)**
  Do not use manganese batteries.
- **Dry cell batteries used incorrectly may leak or burst. Always observe the following**
  - Orient the batteries correctly (positive and negative ends in correct positions).
  - Do not combine new and used batteries, or batteries of different types.
  - Remove the batteries when not using the system for a prolonged period.
  - If batteries leak, have the system inspected at your nearest Horiba service station.

● Battery life

- The battery life for continuous operation when using C-size alkaline dry cell batteries is about 70 hours.
- Using the backlight consumes a proportionate amount of battery power, shortening battery life.
- Searching position information using the GPS unit consumes a proportionate amount of battery power, shortening battery life.
- Nickel-metal hydride secondary batteries can be used, but the battery life is not guaranteed since it will vary according to usage (number of times data is saved, number of charges and amount of each charge). In general, secondary batteries have one-half to one-third the life of C-size alkaline batteries.
- The 70-hour battery life figure applies to a control unit operating temperature of 20°C or more. The battery characteristics shorten the battery life at operating temperatures lower than 20°C, so check the remaining battery level, and replace the batteries before it reaches Level 1.
- The batteries packed with the system at the time of shipment are for checking operation. Their life is not guaranteed.
- The 70-hour battery life figure is the amount of operating time the batteries can provide until the system stops operating. The system may fail during operation if the remaining battery level is low, so it is a good idea to check the remaining battery level and replace the batteries with new ones well before the batteries run out completely.

U-51/52

Battery life: 70 hours (backlight off)

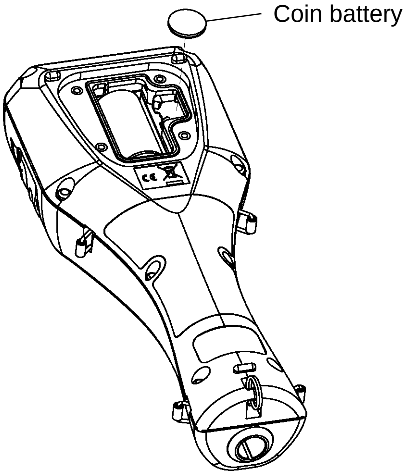
U-53

Battery life: 500 measurements (backlight off)

- Since U-53 is designed for turbidity measurement with wiper, its battery life is estimated in terms of the number of turbidity measurement sequences performed.
- Battery power is also consumed by measurement operations other than turbidity measurement.
- The battery life when turbidity measurement is not performed is about 70 hours.

3.1.2 Replacing the coin battery

- Coin battery to use: CR-2032
- The coin battery is only for the clock. It will provide problem-free operation for three years, but when using the clock continuously, it should be replaced every two years as a precaution.
- When replacing the coin battery for the clock, leave the control unit ON. If the coin battery is replaced when the control unit is turned OFF, the clock will be reset to the default settings.



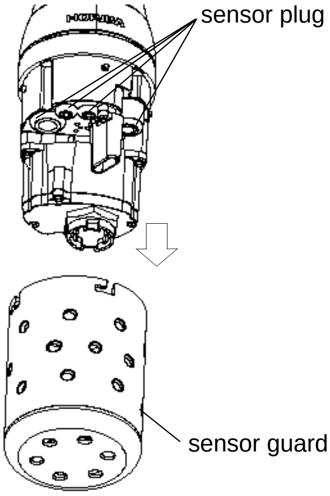
3.1.3 Attaching sensors

Note

- **When attaching or replacing a sensor, wipe any moisture off the sensor probe and sensor.**
- **Be sure to keep water out of sensor connectors. If moisture comes in contact with a sensor connector, blow-dry it with dry air.**
- **The sensor probe is not waterproof when the sensor is not mounted.**
- **Take care not to tighten the sensor too much.**

Attaching the pH sensor

1. **Remove the sensor guard.**

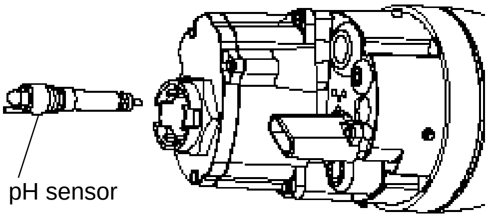


2. **Remove the sensor plug.**
3. **Coat the pH sensor O-ring with a thin layer of silicon grease (part No. 3014017718).**

Note

Be sure no grease from the O-ring gets on the sensor connector. If the sensor connector gets grease on it, wipe it off with a soft cloth soaked in alcohol.

4. **Make sure there is no moisture on the sensor probe’s sensor connector (marked "pH").**
5. **Fasten the pH sensor securely by hand.**



6. **Clean the sensor with an alcohol-soaked cloth.**

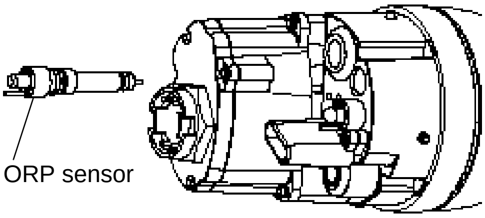
● Attaching the ORP sensor

1. **Remove the sensor guard.**
2. **Remove the sensor plug.**
3. **Coat the ORP sensor O-ring with a thin layer of grease (part No. 3014017718).**

Note

Be sure no grease from the O-ring gets on the sensor connector. If the sensor connector gets grease on it, wipe it off with a soft cloth soaked in alcohol.

4. **Make sure there is no moisture on the sensor probe’s sensor connector (marked "ORP").**
5. **Fasten the ORP sensor securely by hand.**



6. **Clean the sensor with an alcohol-soaked cloth.**

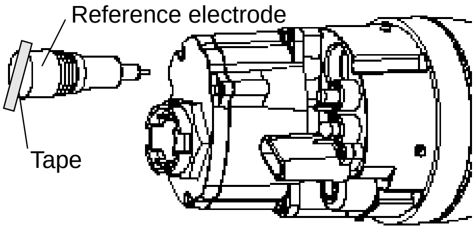
● Attaching the reference electrode

1. **Remove the sensor guard.**
2. **Remove the sensor plug.**
3. **Coat the reference electrode O-ring with a thin layer of grease (part No. 3014017718).**

Note

Be sure no grease from the O-ring gets on the sensor connector. If the sensor connector gets grease on it, wipe it off with a soft cloth soaked in alcohol.

4. **Make sure there is no moisture on the sensor probe’s sensor connector (marked "REF").**
5. **Fasten the reference electrode securely by hand.**
6. **Remove the tape from the liquid junction part of the reference electrode.**



● Attaching the dissolved oxygen (DO) sensor

1. **Remove the membrane cap mounted on the DO sensor beforehand, and replace it with the new membrane cap provided. Replace the internal solution with fresh solution. The main component of the internal solution is potassium chloride (KCl), so the old solution can be disposed of down a sink or other drain.**

Reference

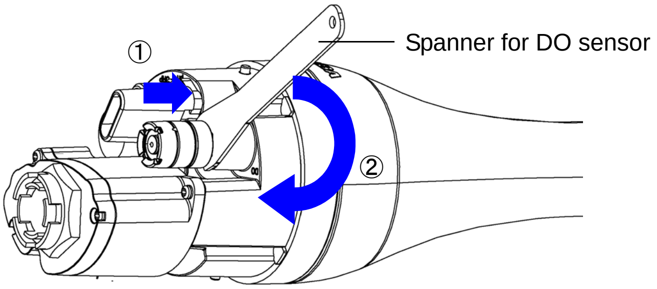
“ 4.5 Replacing the membrane cap ” (page 87)

2. **Screw in the DO sensor to attach it, allowing the internal solution to overflow slightly.**
3. **Use a soft cloth to wipe off the internal solution that overflowed onto the DO sensor.**
4. **Remove the sensor guard.**
5. **Remove the sensor plug.**
6. **Coat the DO sensor O-ring with a thin layer of grease (part No. 3014017718).**

Note

Be sure no grease from the O-ring gets on the sensor connector. If the sensor connector gets grease on it, wipe it off with a soft cloth soaked in alcohol.

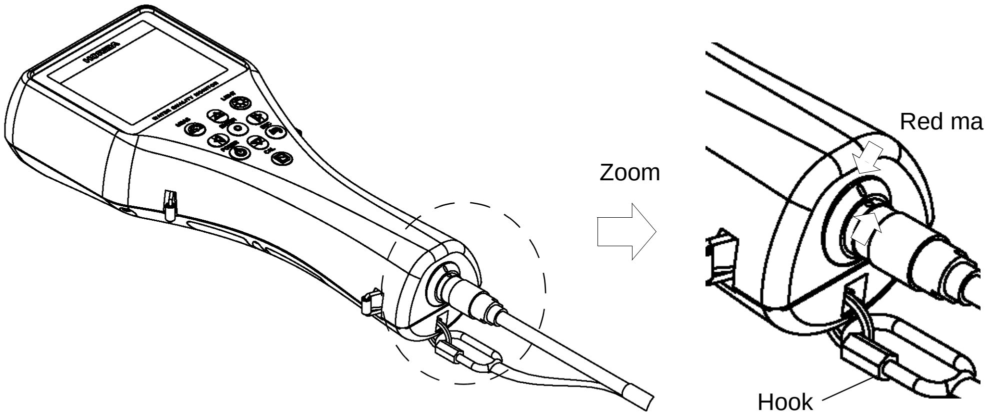
7. **Make sure there is no moisture on the sensor probe’s sensor connector (marked "DO").**
8. **Fasten the DO sensor securely using the spanner for DO sensor.**
   - Hold the DO sensor with the provided spanner for DO sensor and push the sensor down. (Step 1 in figure below)
   - Screw the DO sensor in place. (Step 2 in figure below)



3.1.4 Connecting the control unit and sensor probe

Note

Connect the control unit with its power OFF.



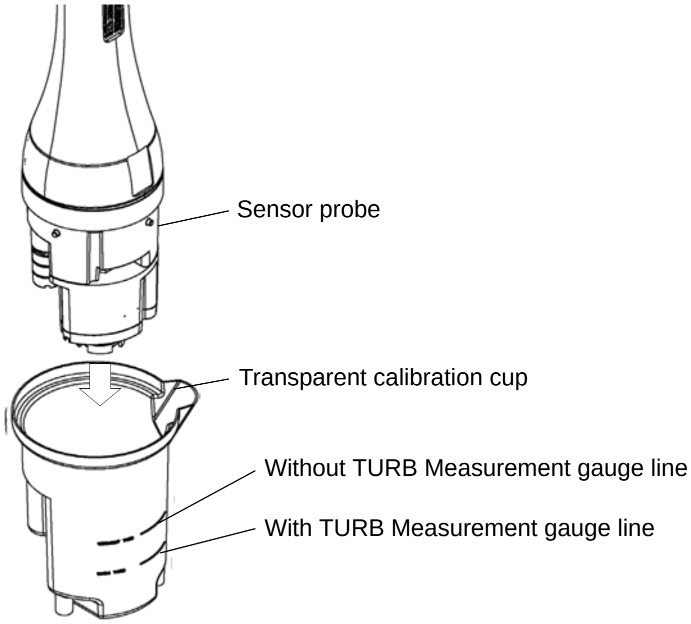
1. **Align the red mark on the connector, and press the connector in until you hear it click.**
2. **Connect the cable's hook to the display.**

3.1.5 Conditioning

Carry out the steps below when using the unit for the first time or when the system has not been used for 3 months or longer.

1. **Fill the transparent calibration cup to the line with pH 4 standard solution.**

   The transparent calibration cup has With TURB Measurement and Without TURB Measurement gauge lines.
2. **Insert the sensor probe in the transparent calibration cup.**



Note

Check that all sensors are attached.

3. **Press and hold down the control unit's POWER key for about 3 seconds to turn the power ON. Leave the unit for at least 20 minutes to condition the sensors.**

Note

The operation keys are designed to operate using the pad of a finger, sharp objects can tear the control unit cover damaging the operation keys.

Tip

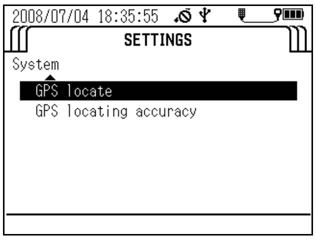
- **The procedure for immersing the sensor probe in the pH standard solution is the same as that described in " 3.3.1 Auto calibration " (page 39).**
  Auto calibration can be performed using the same pH 4 standard solution that was used in the conditioning procedure.
- **Immersing the sensor in the standard solution is generally required for sensor conditioning, but a voltage supply is required for DO sensor conditioning. Turning ON the power of the control unit is necessary during sensor conditioning.**

3.1.6 GPS (U-52G, U-53G)

The GPS position measurement precision is proportional to the GPS position measurement time. When the position measurement precision increases, the position measurement time also increases. See " ● GPS locating accuracy" (page 17) for how to set the position measurement precision. See " ● GPS locate" (page 15) below for how to check acquired GPS data.

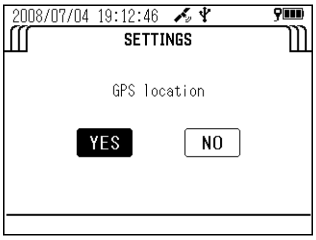
● GPS locate

1. **Press the right (▷) key to switch the display to the "SETTINGS" screen.**
2. **Press the down (▽) key to move the cursor to "System", then press the ENTER key.**
3. **Press the down (▽) key to move the cursor to "GPS locate", then press the ENTER key.**



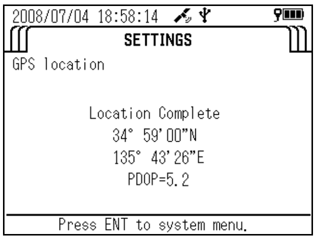
4. **The message "Press ENT key to start position measurement." appears. Press the ENTER key.**

5. **The message "Execute GPS position measurement?" appears. Move the cursor to "YES", then press the ENTER key.**



GPS location

6. **The message "Warming up. Please wait." appears. Wait until the system has finished warming up (about 10 seconds).**
   - Position measurement starts automatically when warmup has finished. Position measurement is performed up to 10 times.
   - The GPS location complete screen appears after successful position measurement.

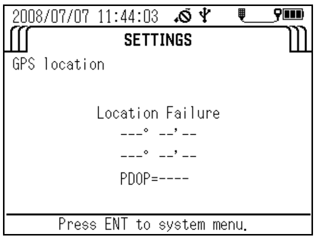


GPS location

Location Complete
34° 59' 00"N
135° 43' 26"E
PDOP=5.2

Press ENT to system menu.

   - The GPS location failure screen appears after position measurement has failed. Redo the measurement in a location free from obstacles, or wait for the meteorological conditions to improve before redoing the measurement.



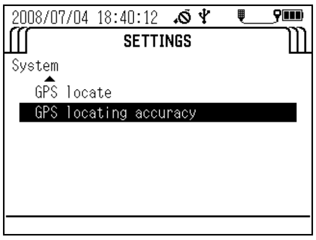
GPS location

Location Failure
---° --' --
---° --' --
PDOP=----

Press ENT to system menu.

● GPS locating accuracy

1. **Press the right (▷) key to switch the display to the "SETTINGS" screen.**
2. **Press the down (▽) key to move the cursor to "System", then press the ENTER key.**
3. **Press the down (▽) key to move the cursor to "GPS locating accuracy", then press the ENTER key.**



2008/07/04 18:40:12

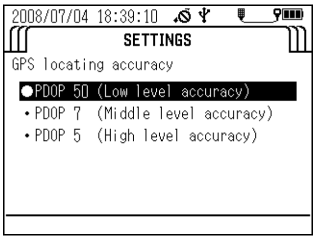
SETTINGS

System

GPS locate

GPS locating accuracy

4. **The screen below appears. Move the cursor to the locating accuracy, then press the ENTER key. The black circle (●) indicates the currently set precision.**



2008/07/04 18:39:10

SETTINGS

GPS locating accuracy

●PDOP 50 (Low level accuracy)
•PDOP 7 (Middle level accuracy)
•PDOP 5 (High level accuracy)

3.2 Settings

3.2.1 Setting measurement methods

This section describes how to set the measurement method.

Measurement methods

U-51/U-52

Single measurement	Pressing the MEAS key acquires the 5-second average for the selected measurement parameter.
Interval measurement	Pressing the MEAS key acquires and saves the 5-second average for the selected measurement parameter in the set interval. The measurement interval can be set to any value between 10 seconds and 24 hours.

U-53

The U-53 turbidity sensor uses a tungsten lamp. The lamp lights for about 10 seconds, and the average measurement value acquired during this interval is displayed.

Single measurement	Pressing the MEAS key acquires the 5-second average for the selected measurement parameter after wiper operation. The 10-second average is acquired when measuring turbidity.
Interval measurement	Pressing the MEAS key acquires and saves the 5-second average for the selected measurement parameter in the set interval. The 10-second average is acquired when measuring turbidity. The measurement interval can be set to any value between 10 seconds (final check of this value required; 30 seconds may be better for U-52) and 24 hour.

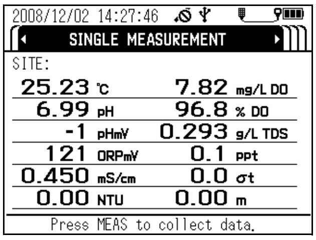
Reference

“ 3.4 Measurement ” (page 61)

Operation method

1. **Press and hold down the control unit’s POWER key for about 3 seconds to turn the power ON.**

   The "MEASUREMENT" screen appears after about 10 seconds.



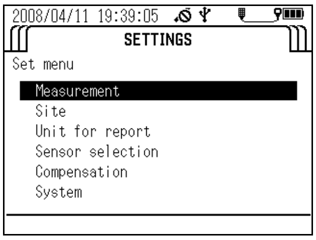
```
2008/12/02 14:27:46
SINGLE MEASUREMENT
SITE:
25.23 ℃        7.82 mg/L DO
 6.99 pH       96.8 % DO
   -1 pHmV    0.293 g/L TDS
  121 ORPmV     0.1 ppt
0.450 mS/cm     0.0 σt
 0.00 NTU      0.00 m
Press MEAS to collect data.
```

Note

The operation keys are designed to operate using the pad of a finger, sharp objects can tear the control unit cover damaging the operation keys.

2. **Press the right (▷) key to switch the display to the "SETTINGS" screen.**

3. **Press the down (▽) key to move the cursor to "Measurement", then press the ENTER key.**



2008/04/11 19:39:05

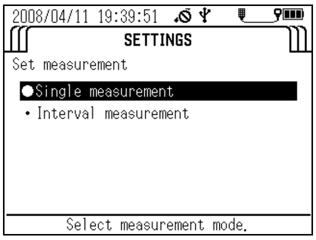
SETTINGS

Set menu

Measurement
Site
Unit for report
Sensor selection
Compensation
System

4. **Press the down (▽) key to move the cursor to the desired measurement mode. Press the ENTER key to save the setting.**

   The black circle (●) indicates the currently selected measurement mode.



2008/04/11 19:39:51

SETTINGS

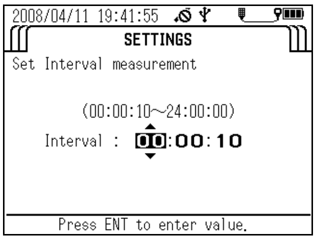
Set measurement

●Single measurement
• Interval measurement

Select measurement mode.

5. **If you selected "Interval measurement", the display switches to the screen used to set the measurement interval. Press the up (△) and down (▽) keys to set the measurement interval.**

   The measurement interval can be set to any value between 10 seconds and 24 hours in the case of the U-51 and U-52, or between 30 seconds and 24 hours in the case of the U-53.



2008/04/11 19:41:55

SETTINGS

Set Interval measurement

(00:00:10~24:00:00)

Interval : 00:00:10

Press ENT to enter value.

3.2.2 Setting sites

The site function allows position data to be connected to corresponding measurement data. Sites have the following specifications and features:

Site names:	Text data consisting of up to 20 one-byte alphanumeric characters, spaces, etc. Site names can be used for control unit searches and as labels for computer processing. Site names allow measurement data to be saved with a name corresponding to the actual location where it was measured.

You can use site information as a search key when viewing data uploaded by a PC or data saved in the control unit (see “ 3.5 Data operations ” (page 64)).

- **Selecting sites**

You can select previously created sites. The black circle (●) indicates the name of the currently selected site. No sites are created at new purchasing or after initialization. Select a site after first creating one from the "Create new site" menu.

- **Creating new sites**

You can create and save new sites. Up to 20 site names can be registered.

- **Deleting sites**

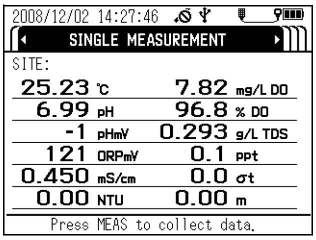
You can select a previously created site and delete it.

● Operation methods

- **Selecting a site**

1. **Press and hold down the control unit’s POWER key for about 3 seconds to turn the power ON.**

The "MEASUREMENT" screen appears after about 10 seconds.

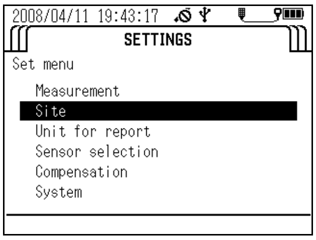


```
2008/12/02 14:27:46
SINGLE MEASUREMENT
SITE:
 25.23 °C       7.82 mg/L DO
  6.99 pH       96.8 % DO
    -1 pHmV    0.293 g/L TDS
   121 ORPmV     0.1 ppt
 0.450 mS/cm     0.0 σt
  0.00 NTU      0.00 m
Press MEAS to collect data.
```

Note

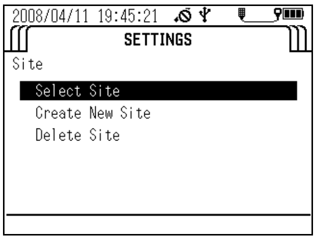
The operation keys are designed to operate using the pad of a finger, sharp objects can tear the control unit cover damaging the operation keys.

2. **Press the right (▷) key to switch the display to the "SETTINGS" screen.**
3. **Press the down (▽) key to move the cursor to "Site", then press the ENTER key.**

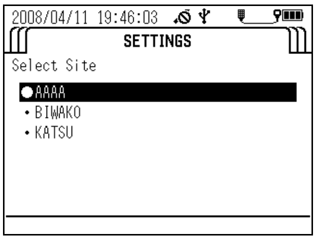


```
2008/04/11 19:43:17
SETTINGS
Set menu
  Measurement
  Site
  Unit for report
  Sensor selection
  Compensation
  System
```

4. **Press the down (▽) key to move the cursor to "Select Site", then press the ENTER key to display the names of the currently saved sites.**

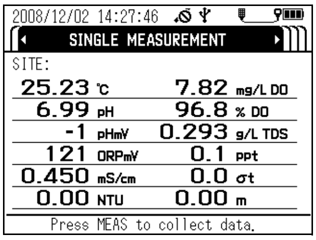


The black circle (●) indicates the currently selected site.



- **Creating a new site**

1. **Press and hold down the control unit's POWER key for about 3 seconds to turn the power ON.**
   The "MEASUREMENT" screen appears after about 10 seconds.

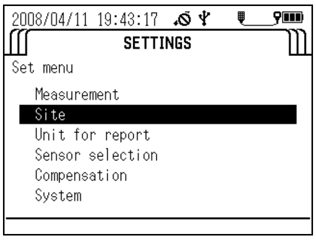


25.23 ℃ 7.82 mg/L DO
6.99 pH 96.8 % DO
-1 pHmV 0.293 g/L TDS
121 ORPmV 0.1 ppt
0.450 mS/cm 0.0 σt
0.00 NTU 0.00 m
Press MEAS to collect data.

Note

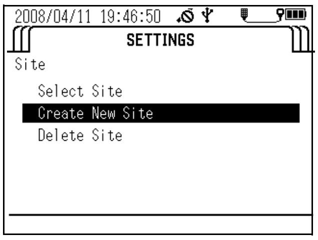
The operation keys are designed to operate using the pad of a finger, sharp objects can tear the control unit cover damaging the operation keys.

2. **Press the right (▷) key to switch the display to the "SETTINGS" screen.**
3. **Press the down (▽) key to move the cursor to "Site", then press the ENTER key.**

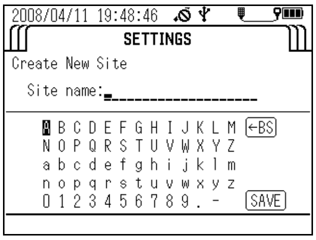


4. **Press the down (▽) key to move the cursor to "Create New Site", then press the ENTER key.**

   Enter the desired site name (up to 20 alphanumeric non-Asian width characters).



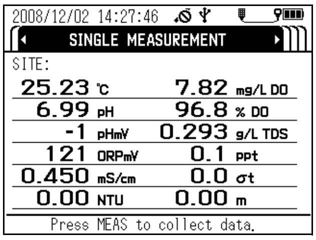
5. **Press the up (△), down (▽), right (▷), and left (◁) keys to move the cursor to each letter or number to use in the name, then press the ENTER key to confirm the entered characters. To delete incorrectly entered characters, move the cursor to "BS" and press the ENTER key to start deleting from the last character. When you have finished entering the name, save it by moving the cursor to "SAVE" and pressing the ENTER key.**



- **Deleting a site**

1. **Press and hold down the control unit's POWER key for about 3 seconds to turn the power ON.**

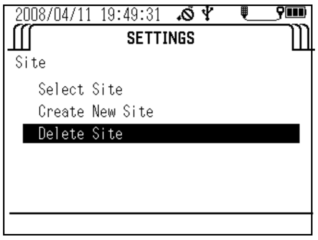
   The "MEASUREMENT" screen appears after about 10 seconds.



Note

The operation keys are designed to operate using the pad of a finger, sharp objects can tear the control unit cover damaging the operation keys.

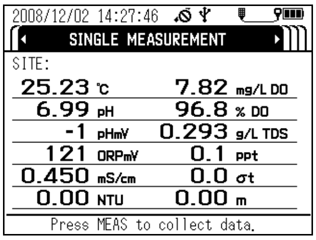
2. **Press the right (▷) key to switch the display to the "SETTINGS" screen.**



3. **Press the down (▽) key to move the cursor to "Site", then press the ENTER key.**

4. **Press the down (▽) key to move the cursor to "Delete Site", then press the ENTER key.**

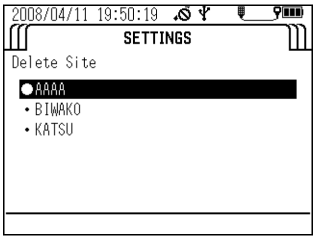
   A list of the currently saved sites appears. The black circle (●) indicates the currently selected site.



```
2008/12/02 14:27:46
SINGLE MEASUREMENT
SITE:
 25.23 ℃          7.82 mg/L DO
  6.99 pH         96.8 % DO
    -1 pHmV      0.293 g/L TDS
   121 ORPmV       0.1 ppt
 0.450 mS/cm       0.0 σt
  0.00 NTU        0.00 m
Press MEAS to collect data.
```

5. **Press the down (▽) key to move the cursor to the site to delete, then press the ENTER key to delete it.**

   The currently selected site can be deleted after a different site has been selected from the site selection menu or after all unselected sites have been deleted. The same site name cannot be registered more than once.



```
2008/04/11 19:50:19
SETTINGS
Delete Site
 ●AAAA
 • BIWAKO
 • KATSU
```

3.2.3 Unit for report

Note

Units can only be selected when the sensor probe is connected.

Follow the steps below to set the measurement units of measurement parameters. No units are displayed if a measurement parameter has not been selected in the measurement parameter selection screen (see “ 3.2.4 Sensor selection ” (page 25)).

1. **Press and hold down the control unit’s POWER key for about 3 seconds to turn the power ON.**

   The "MEASUREMENT" screen appears after about 10 seconds.

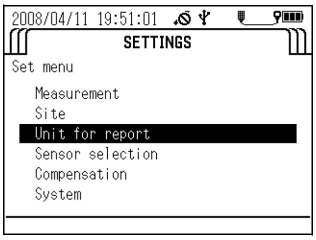
Note

The operation keys are designed to operate using the pad of a finger, sharp objects can tear the control unit cover damaging the operation keys.

2. **Press the right (▷) key to switch the display to the "SETTINGS" screen.**

3. **Press the down (▽) key to move the cursor to "Unit for report", then press the ENTER key.**

   A list of the currently selected measurement parameters and their units appears. Note that measurement parameters not selected (in the measurement parameter selection screen) are not displayed.



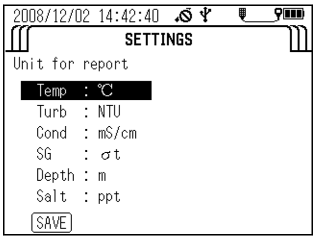
2008/04/11 19:51:01

SETTINGS

Set menu

Measurement
Site
Unit for report
Sensor selection
Compensation
System

4. **Press the up (△) and down (▽) keys to move the cursor to the item to change, then press the ENTER key.**



2008/12/02 14:42:40

SETTINGS

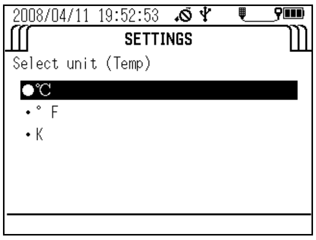
Unit for report

Temp : ℃
Turb : NTU
Cond : mS/cm
SG : σt
Depth : m
Salt : ppt

SAVE

5. **A list of the units that can be selected appears. The black circle (●) indicates the currently selected unit. Press the up (△) and down (▽) keys to move the cursor to the desired unit, then press the ENTER key.**

Fix S/m: Fixes S/m with no auxiliary units for any measurement range.

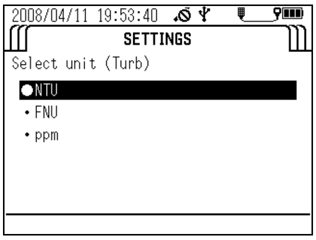


2008/04/11 19:52:53

SETTINGS

Select unit (Temp)

●℃
• ° F
• K

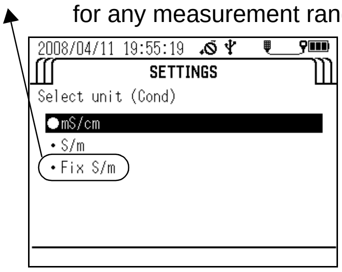


2008/04/11 19:53:40

SETTINGS

Select unit (Turb)

●NTU
• FNU
• ppm

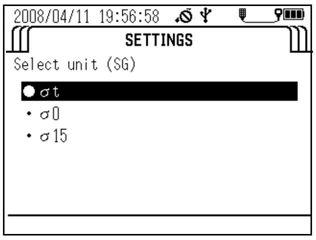


2008/04/11 19:55:19

SETTINGS

Select unit (Cond)

●mS/cm
• S/m
• Fix S/m

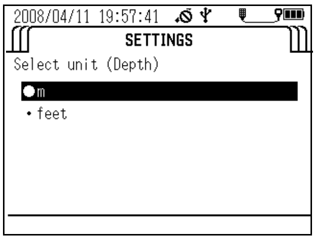


2008/04/11 19:56:58

SETTINGS

Select unit (SG)

●σt
• σ0
• σ15

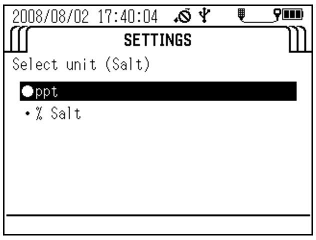


2008/04/11 19:57:41

SETTINGS

Select unit (Depth)

●m
• feet



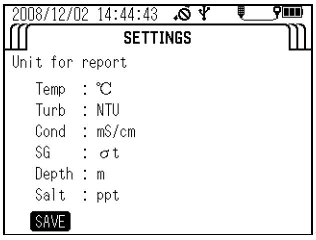
2008/08/02 17:40:04

SETTINGS

Select unit (Salt)

●ppt
• % Salt

6. **To save the changes, press the up (△) and down (▽) keys to move the cursor to SAVE, then press the ENTER key. If you do not want to save the changes, press the ESC key.**



2008/12/02 14:44:43

SETTINGS

Unit for report

Temp : ℃
Turb : NTU
Cond : mS/cm
SG : σt
Depth : m
Salt : ppt

SAVE

3.2.4 Sensor selection

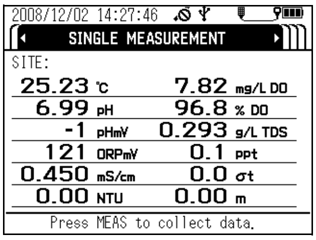
Note

Measurement parameters can only be selected when the sensor probe is connected.

You can set between 1 and 11 measurement parameters to display in the control unit screen. Follow the steps below to select the desired measurement parameters.

1. **Press and hold down the control unit's POWER key for about 3 seconds to turn the power ON.**

   The "MEASUREMENT" screen appears after about 10 seconds.



2008/12/02 14:27:46

SINGLE MEASUREMENT

SITE:

25.23 ℃ 7.82 mg/L DO
6.99 pH 96.8 % DO
-1 pHmV 0.293 g/L TDS
121 ORPmV 0.1 ppt
0.450 mS/cm 0.0 σt
0.00 NTU 0.00 m

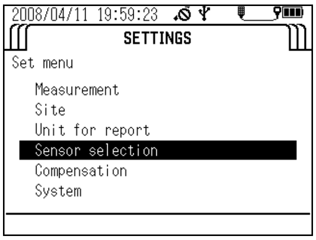
Press MEAS to collect data.

Note

The operation keys are designed to operate using the pad of a finger, sharp objects can tear the control unit cover damaging the operation keys.

2. **Press the right (▷) key to switch the display to the "SETTINGS" screen.**
3. **Press the down (▽) key to move the cursor to "Sensor selection", then press the ENTER key.**

   A list of the measurement parameters that can be set and the currently set units are displayed.



2008/04/11 19:59:23

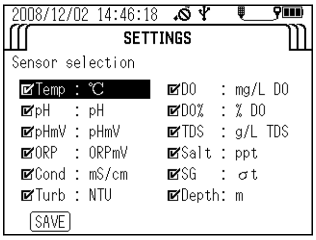
SETTINGS

Set menu

Measurement
Site
Unit for report
Sensor selection
Compensation
System

4. **Move the cursor to each measurement parameter to change, then press the ENTER key.**

   A check in the check box of a measurement parameter indicates it will be displayed.
5. **To save the changes, press the up (△), down (▽), left (◁) and right (▷) keys to move the cursor to SAVE, then press the ENTER key. If you don't want to save the changes, press the ESC key.**



2008/12/02 14:46:18

SETTINGS

Sensor selection

☑Temp : ℃ ☑DO : mg/L DO
☑pH : pH ☑DO% : % DO
☑pHmV : pHmV ☑TDS : g/L TDS
☑ORP : ORPmV ☑Salt : ppt
☑Cond : mS/cm ☑SG : σt
☑Turb : NTU ☑Depth: m

SAVE

Note

Available measurement parameters differ according to product specifications.

3.2.5 Compensation

Note

Compensation settings can only be made when the sensor probe is connected.

U-50 series have following functions of compensation.

- Salinity compensation and atmospheric pressure compensation for dissolved oxygen (DO)
- Temperature compensation for conductivity (COND)
- Setting total dissolved solid (TDS) coefficient for TDS

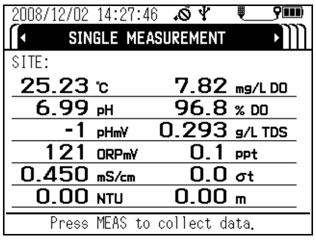
● Salinity compensation (DO)

The dissolved oxygen (DO) value is presented higher than actual value if salinity compensation is not added, because the increase of salinity gives higher DO value. To obtain correct value salinity compensation is needed. The following modes are available for calculation of salinity compensation.

AUTO:	Salinity compensation is performed automatically with salinity converted from conductivity.
Value input:	Press the up (△) and down (▽) keys to enter a setting value when the salinity is known.

1. **Press and hold down the control unit's POWER key for about 3 seconds to turn the power ON.**

   The "MEASUREMENT" screen appears after about 10 seconds.

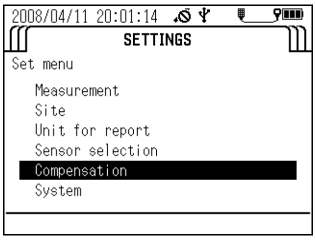


```
2008/12/02 14:27:46
SINGLE MEASUREMENT
SITE:
25.23 ℃        7.82 mg/L DO
 6.99 pH       96.8 % DO
   -1 pHmV    0.293 g/L TDS
  121 ORPmV     0.1 ppt
0.450 mS/cm     0.0 σt
 0.00 NTU      0.00 m
Press MEAS to collect data.
```

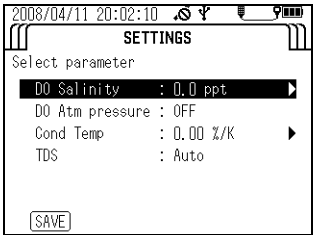
Note

The operation keys are designed to operate using the pad of a finger, sharp objects can tear the control unit cover damaging the operation keys.

2. **Press the right (▷) key to switch the display to the "SETTINGS" screen.**
3. **Press the down (▽) key to move the cursor to "Compensation", then press the ENTER key.**

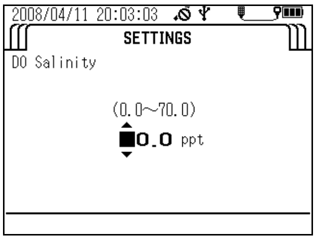


4. **Press the down (▽) key to move the cursor to "DO Salinity", then press the ENTER key to toggle the setting between "Auto" and "Input mode".**
   Default: Auto



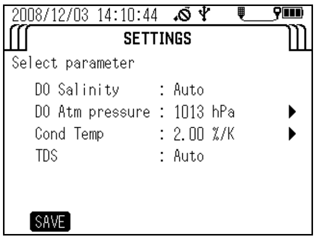
2008/04/11 20:02:10
SETTINGS
Select parameter
DO Salinity : 0.0 ppt
DO Atm pressure : OFF
Cond Temp : 0.00 %/K
TDS : Auto
SAVE

5. **If you selected "Input mode", press the right (▷) key to display the compensation value input screen. Press the up (△) and down (▽) keys to enter the desired value, then press the ENTER key to set it.**



2008/04/11 20:03:03
SETTINGS
DO Salinity
(0.0~70.0)
0.0 ppt

6. **To save the change, press the up (△) and down (▽) keys to move the cursor to SAVE, then press the ENTER key. If you don't want to save the change, press the ESC key.**

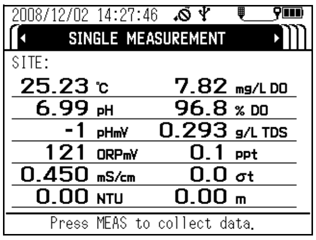


2008/12/03 14:10:44
SETTINGS
Select parameter
DO Salinity : Auto
DO Atm pressure : 1013 hPa
Cond Temp : 2.00 %/K
TDS : Auto
SAVE

● **Atmospheric pressure compensation (DO)**

Differences in the atmospheric pressure of the measurement location influence the Dissolved Oxygen (DO) measurement. By setting (input) the actual atmospheric pressure of the measurement location into the control unit, it is possible to standardize the measured Dissolved Oxygen (DO) value to a value at the standard atmospheric pressure (1013 hPa).

1. **Press and hold down the control unit's POWER key for about 3 seconds to turn the power ON.**
   The "MEASUREMENT" screen appears after about 10 seconds.

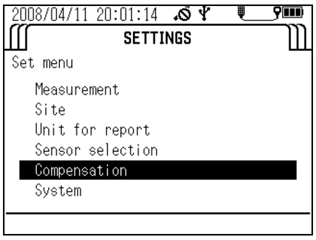


2008/12/02 14:27:46
SINGLE MEASUREMENT
SITE:
25.23 ℃ 7.82 mg/L DO
6.99 pH 96.8 % DO
-1 pHmV 0.293 g/L TDS
121 ORPmV 0.1 ppt
0.450 mS/cm 0.0 σt
0.00 NTU 0.00 m
Press MEAS to collect data.

Note

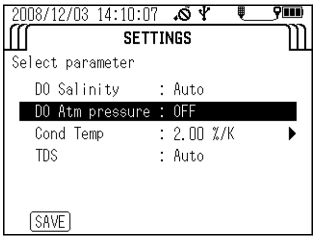
The operation keys are designed to operate using the pad of a finger, sharp objects can tear the control unit cover damaging the operation keys.

2. **Press the right (▷) key to switch the display to the "SETTINGS" screen.**
3. **Press the down (▽) key to move the cursor to "Compensation", then press the ENTER key.**



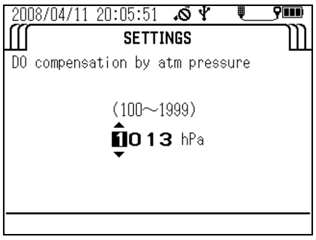
2008/04/11 20:01:14
SETTINGS
Set menu
Measurement
Site
Unit for report
Sensor selection
Compensation
System

4. **Press the down (▽) key to move the cursor to "Cond Temp", then press the ENTER key to toggle the setting between "OFF" and "Input mode".**
   Default: OFF



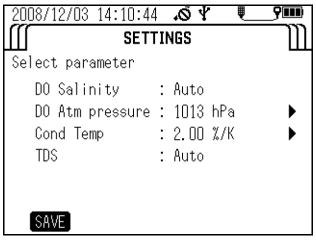
2008/12/03 14:10:07
SETTINGS
Select parameter
DO Salinity : Auto
DO Atm pressure : OFF
Cond Temp : 2.00 %/K
TDS : Auto
SAVE

5. **If you selected "Input mode", press the right (▷) key to display the compensation value input screen. Press the up (△) and down (▽) keys to enter the desired value, then press the ENTER key to set it.**



2008/04/11 20:05:51
SETTINGS
DO compensation by atm pressure
(100～1999)
1013 hPa

6. **To save the change, press the up (△) and down (▽) keys to move the cursor to SAVE, then press the ENTER key. If you don’t want to save the change, press the ESC key.**

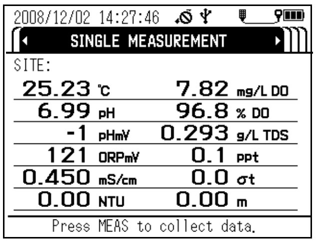


2008/12/03 14:10:44
SETTINGS
Select parameter
DO Salinity : Auto
DO Atm pressure : 1013 hPa
Cond Temp : 2.00 %/K
TDS : Auto
SAVE

● Temperature compensation for conductivity (COND)

Sample conductivity (COND) varies with temperature, and this control unit uses a temperature compensation coefficient to automatically standardize the conductivity (COND) at 25°C. The initial setting coefficient is 2%/K, which is the generally used.

1. **Press and hold down the control unit's POWER key for about 3 seconds to turn the power ON.**
   The "MEASUREMENT" screen appears after about 10 seconds.

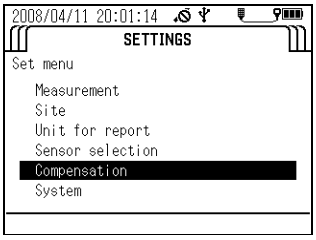


```
2008/12/02 14:27:46
SINGLE MEASUREMENT
SITE:
 25.23 ℃           7.82 mg/L DO
  6.99 pH          96.8 % DO
    -1 pHmV       0.293 g/L TDS
   121 ORPmV        0.1 ppt
 0.450 mS/cm        0.0 σt
  0.00 NTU         0.00 m
Press MEAS to collect data.
```

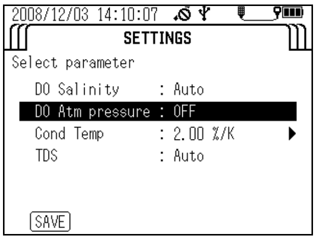
Note

The operation keys are designed to operate using the pad of a finger, sharp objects can tear the control unit cover damaging the operation keys.

2. **Press the right (▷) key to switch the display to the "SETTINGS" screen.**
3. **Press the down (▽) key to move the cursor to "Compensation", then press the ENTER key.**

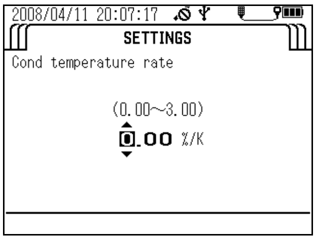


4. **Press the down (▽) key to move the cursor to "Cond Temp", then press the ENTER key to toggle the setting between "OFF" and "Input mode".**
   Default: 2.00%/K



```
2008/12/03 14:10:07
SETTINGS
Select parameter
DO Salinity     : Auto
DO Atm pressure : OFF
Cond Temp       : 2.00 %/K
TDS             : Auto
```

5. **If you selected "Input mode", press the right (▷) key to display the compensation value input screen. Press the up (△) and down (▽) keys to enter the desired value, then press the ENTER key to set it.**



2008/04/11 20:07:17

SETTINGS

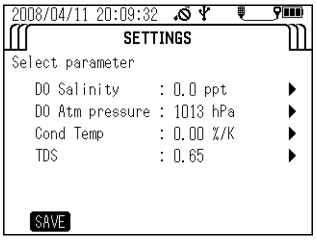
Cond temperature rate

(0.00~3.00)

0.00 %/K

6. **To save the change, press the up (△) and down (▽) keys to move the cursor to SAVE, then press the ENTER key.**

   If you don’t want to save the change, press the ESC key.



2008/04/11 20:09:32

SETTINGS

Select parameter

DO Salinity : 0.0 ppt

DO Atm pressure : 1013 hPa

Cond Temp : 0.00 %/K

TDS : 0.65

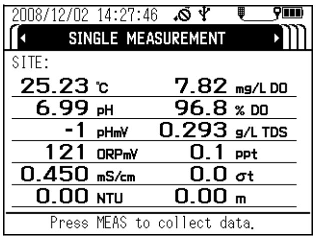
Setting a total dissolved solid (TDS) coefficient

The total dissolved solid amount (TDS) is a converted value obtained by multiplying the conductivity (COND) by a known coefficient. The coefficient initially set for the control unit is based on a conversion for KCl and $CaCO_3$ solutions and it depends on the conductivity (COND) value as shown below.

Conductivity (COND) (S/m)	Conversion coefficient
< 0.05	0.65
0.05 to 0.5	0.64
0.5 to 1	0.63
1 to 3	0.62
3 to 5	0.61
> 5	0.60

1. **Press and hold down the control unit's POWER key for about 3 seconds to turn the power ON.**

   The "MEASUREMENT" screen appears after about 10 seconds.

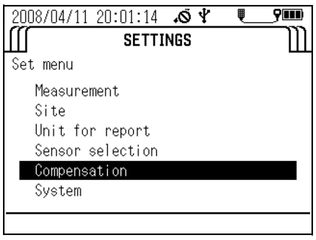


```
2008/12/02 14:27:46
SINGLE MEASUREMENT
SITE:
 25.23 ℃          7.82 mg/L DO
  6.99 pH         96.8 % DO
    -1 pHmV      0.293 g/L TDS
   121 ORPmV       0.1 ppt
 0.450 mS/cm       0.0 σt
  0.00 NTU        0.00 m
Press MEAS to collect data.
```

Note

The operation keys are designed to operate using the pad of a finger, sharp objects can tear the control unit cover damaging the operation keys.

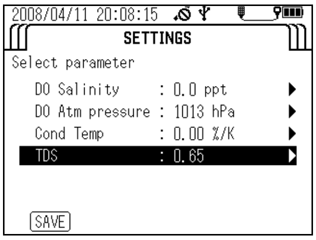
2. **Press the right (▷) key to switch the display to the "SETTINGS" screen.**
3. **Press the down (▽) key to move the cursor to "Compensation", then press the ENTER key.**



```
2008/04/11 20:01:14
SETTINGS
Set menu
  Measurement
  Site
  Unit for report
  Sensor selection
  Compensation
  System
```

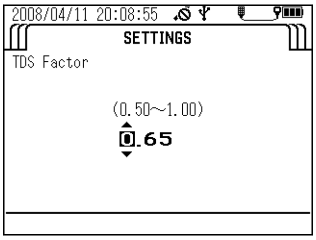
4. **Press the down (▽) key to move the cursor to "TDS", then press the ENTER key to toggle the setting between "AUTO" and "Input mode".**

   Default: Auto



```
2008/04/11 20:08:15
SETTINGS
Select parameter
  DO Salinity     : 0.0 ppt
  DO Atm pressure : 1013 hPa
  Cond Temp       : 0.00 %/K
  TDS             : 0.65
  SAVE
```

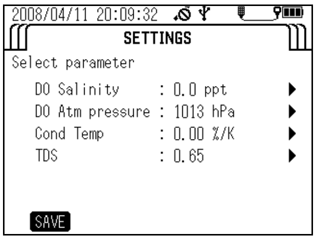
5. **If you selected "Input mode", press the right (▷) key to display the compensation value input screen. Press the up (△) and down (▽) keys to enter the desired value, then press the ENTER key to set it.**



```
2008/04/11 20:08:55
SETTINGS
TDS Factor

(0.50～1.00)
0.65
```

6. **To save the change, press the up (△) and down (▽) keys to move the cursor to SAVE, then press the ENTER key. If you don't want to save the change, press the ESC key.**



```
2008/04/11 20:09:32
SETTINGS
Select parameter
  DO Salinity     : 0.0 ppt    ▶
  DO Atm pressure : 1013 hPa   ▶
  Cond Temp       : 0.00 %/K   ▶
  TDS             : 0.65       ▶

 SAVE
```

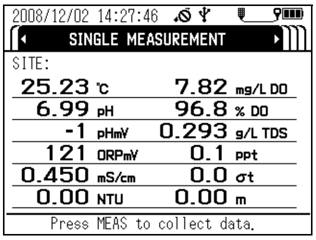
3.2.6 System settings

The system settings let you change the display language, check the system software version, set the date/time, set the auto power OFF time, set the display contrast, and initialize the settings.

● Display language

Follow the steps below to select either English or Japanese as the display language.

1. **Press and hold down the control unit's POWER key for about 3 seconds to turn the power ON.**
   The "MEASUREMENT" screen appears after about 10 seconds.



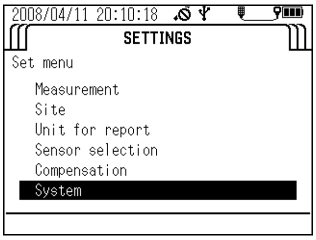
```
2008/12/02 14:27:46
◀ SINGLE MEASUREMENT ▶
SITE:
 25.23 ℃       7.82 mg/L DO
  6.99 pH      96.8 % DO
    -1 pHmV   0.293 g/L TDS
   121 ORPmV    0.1 ppt
 0.450 mS/cm    0.0 σt
  0.00 NTU     0.00 m
Press MEAS to collect data.
```

Note

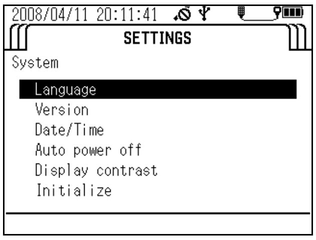
The operation keys are designed to operate using the pad of a finger, sharp objects can tear the control unit cover damaging the operation keys.

2. **Press the right (▷) key to switch the display to the "SETTINGS" screen.**

3. **Press the down (▽) key to move the cursor to "System", then press the ENTER key.**

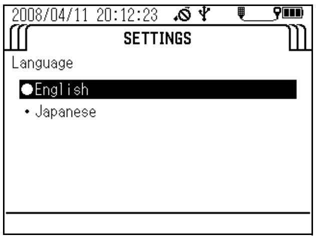


4. **Press the down (▽) key to move the cursor to "Language", then press the ENTER key.**



5. **A list of the supported display languages appears. Press the up (△) and down (▽) keys to move the cursor to the desired language, then press the ENTER key.**

   The black circle (●) indicates the currently selected display language.



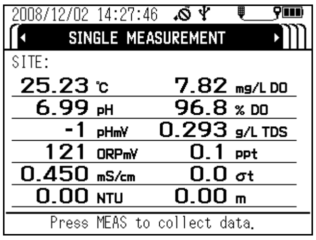
● Version

Follow the steps below to display the program No. and version of the control unit and sensor probe software.

The program No. and version of the sensor probe software will not be displayed if the sensor probe is not connected.

1. **Press and hold down the control unit’s POWER key for about 3 seconds to turn the power ON.**

   The "MEASUREMENT" screen appears after about 10 seconds.



25.23 ℃ | 7.82 mg/L DO
6.99 pH | 96.8 % DO
-1 pHmV | 0.293 g/L TDS
121 ORPmV | 0.1 ppt
0.450 mS/cm | 0.0 σt
0.00 NTU | 0.00 m

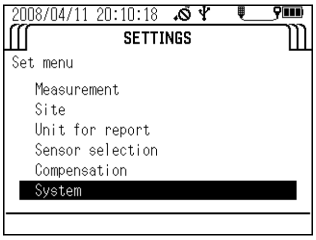
Press MEAS to collect data.

Note

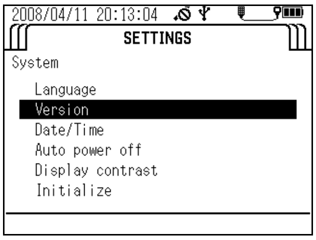
The operation keys are designed to operate using the pad of a finger, sharp objects can tear the control unit cover damaging the operation keys.

2. **Press the right (▷) key to switch the display to the "SETTINGS" screen.**

3. **Press the down (▽) key to move the cursor to "System", then press the ENTER key.**



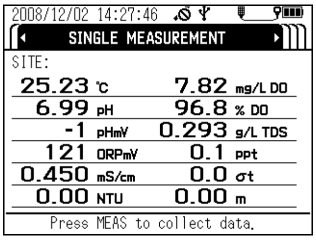
4. **Press the down (▽) key to move the cursor to "Version", then press the ENTER key.**
   The program No. of the control unit and sensor probe software appears.



Setting the date/time

Follow the steps below to set the date and time.

1. **Press and hold down the control unit's POWER key for about 3 seconds to turn the power ON.**
   The "MEASUREMENT" screen appears after about 10 seconds.



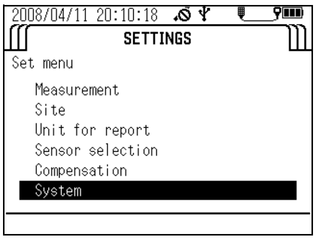
25.23	℃	7.82	mg/L DO
6.99	pH	96.8	% DO
-1	pHmV	0.293	g/L TDS
121	ORPmV	0.1	ppt
0.450	mS/cm	0.0	σt
0.00	NTU	0.00	m

Press MEAS to collect data.

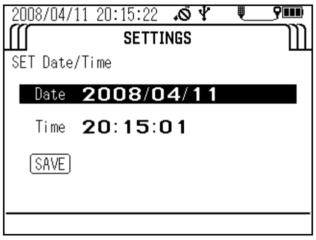
Note

The operation keys are designed to operate using the pad of a finger, sharp objects can tear the control unit cover damaging the operation keys.

2. **Press the right (▷) key to switch the display to the "SETTINGS" screen.**
3. **Press the down (▽) key to move the cursor to "System", then press the ENTER key.**

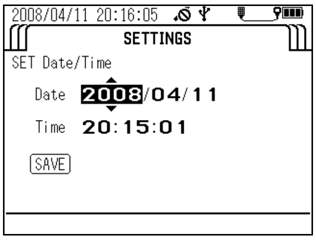


4. **Press the down (▽) key to move the cursor to "Date/time", then press the ENTER key.**



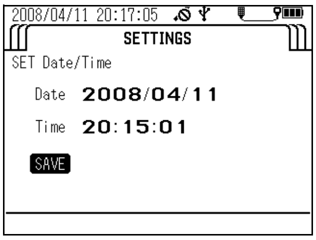
```
2008/04/11 20:15:22
SETTINGS
SET Date/Time
 Date 2008/04/11
 Time 20:15:01
 SAVE
```

5. **Move the cursor to the date, then press the ENTER key.**
6. **Press the right (▷) key to move the cursor to the year, month, day, hour, minute and second, and press the up (△) and down (▽) keys to enter each value.**



```
2008/04/11 20:16:05
SETTINGS
SET Date/Time
 Date 2008/04/11
 Time 20:15:01
 SAVE
```

7. **When finished entering settings, press the ENTER key to move the cursor to SAVE, then press the ENTER key again to save the settings.**



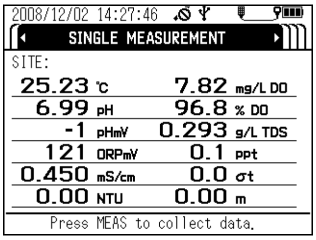
```
2008/04/11 20:17:05
SETTINGS
SET Date/Time
 Date 2008/04/11
 Time 20:15:01
 SAVE
```

- **Setting the auto power OFF time**

  Follow the steps below to set the time for the auto power OFF function (which turns the power OFF automatically when no operation is performed for the preset amount of time).

1. **Press and hold down the control unit’s POWER key for about 3 seconds to turn the power ON.**

   The "MEASUREMENT" screen appears after about 10 seconds.

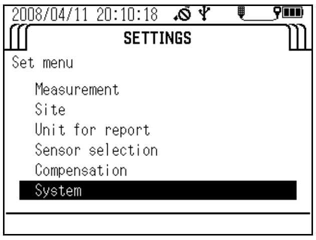


```
2008/12/02 14:27:46
SINGLE MEASUREMENT
SITE:
 25.23 ℃        7.82 mg/L DO
  6.99 pH       96.8 % DO
    -1 pHmV    0.293 g/L TDS
   121 ORPmV     0.1 ppt
 0.450 mS/cm     0.0 σt
  0.00 NTU      0.00 m
Press MEAS to collect data.
```

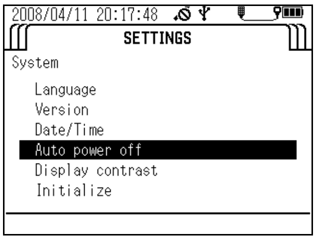
Note

The operation keys are designed to operate using the pad of a finger, sharp objects can tear the control unit cover damaging the operation keys.

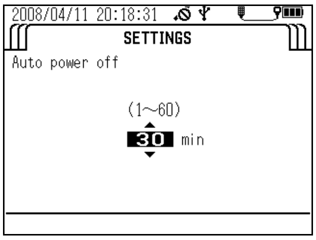
2. **Press the right (▷) key to switch the display to the "SETTINGS" screen.**
3. **Press the down (▽) key to move the cursor to "System", then press the ENTER key.**



4. **Press the down (▽) key to move the cursor to "Auto power off", then press the ENTER key.**



5. **Press the up (△) and down (▽) keys to select the desired time setting, then press the ENTER key.**
   You can select OFF, or settings of 1, 2, 5, 10, 20, 30 or 60 minutes.
   Default: 30 minutes



Auto power off

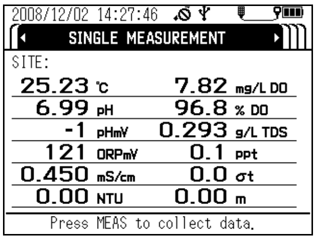
(1~60)

30 min

- **Display contrast**

Follow the steps below to adjust the display’s contrast.

1. **Press and hold down the control unit’s POWER key for about 3 seconds to turn the power ON.**
   The "MEASUREMENT" screen appears after about 10 seconds.



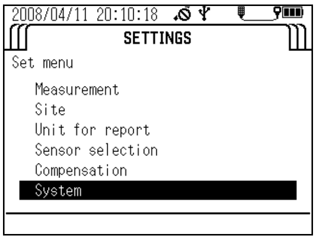
25.23	℃	7.82	mg/L DO
6.99	pH	96.8	% DO
-1	pHmV	0.293	g/L TDS
121	ORPmV	0.1	ppt
0.450	mS/cm	0.0	σt
0.00	NTU	0.00	m

Press MEAS to collect data.

Note

The operation keys are designed to operate using the pad of a finger, sharp objects can tear the control unit cover damaging the operation keys.

2. **Press the right (▷) key to switch the display to the "SETTINGS" screen.**
3. **Press the down (▽) key to move the cursor to "System", then press the ENTER key.**



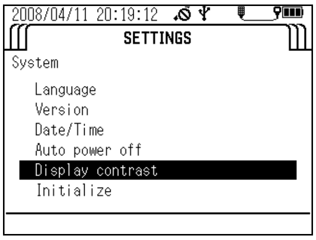
2008/04/11 20:10:18

SETTINGS

Set menu

Measurement
Site
Unit for report
Sensor selection
Compensation
System

4. **Press the down (▽) key to move the cursor to "Display contrast", then press the ENTER key.**



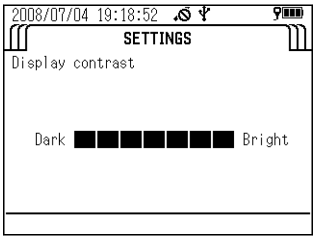
2008/04/11 20:19:12

SETTINGS

System

Language
Version
Date/Time
Auto power off
Display contrast
Initialize

5. **Press the left (◁) and right (▷) keys to adjust the contrast.**
   Adjustment can be made in 26 steps.



2008/07/04 19:18:52

SETTINGS

Display contrast

Dark ■■■■■■■ Bright

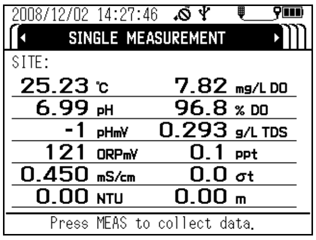
6. **Press the ENTER key.**

● Initialization

Follow the steps below to restore all the settings except date/time to their factory defaults.

Factory default calibration data for the electrical conductivity and turbidity sensors will also be deleted at the same time.

1. **Press and hold down the control unit's POWER key for about 3 seconds to turn the power ON.**
   The "MEASUREMENT" screen appears after about 10 seconds.



2008/12/02 14:27:46

SINGLE MEASUREMENT

SITE:

25.23 ℃ 7.82 mg/L DO
6.99 pH 96.8 % DO
-1 pHmV 0.293 g/L TDS
121 ORPmV 0.1 ppt
0.450 mS/cm 0.0 σt
0.00 NTU 0.00 m

Press MEAS to collect data.

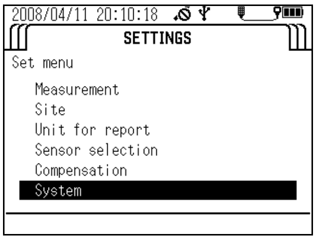
Note

The operation keys are designed to operate using the pad of a finger, sharp objects can tear the control unit cover damaging the operation keys.

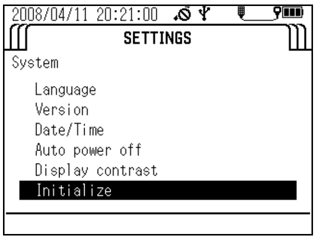
---

2. **Press the right (▷) key to switch the display to the "SETTINGS" screen.**

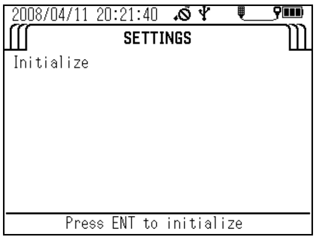
3. **Press the down (▽) key to move the cursor to "System", then press the ENTER key.**



4. **Press the down (▽) key to move the cursor to "Initialize", then press the ENTER key.**



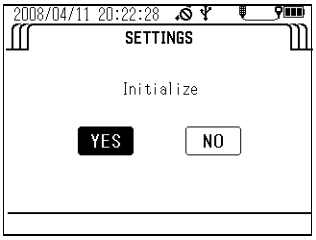
5. **Press the ENTER key again.**



Press ENT to initialize

6. **A confirmation message appears asking whether to execute initialization. Press the left (◁) key to move the cursor to YES, then press the ENTER key.**

The message "Initialize Complete" appears to indicate the process has finished.



3.3 Calibration

To obtain correct measurement values, the sensors need to be calibrated using standard solution before measurement. You can select simultaneous auto calibration of the pH, COND and TURB sensors in pH4 standard solution and DO and DEP sensors simultaneously in air, or manual calibration of individual measurement parameters. You can check the result of the previous calibration using the procedure on " 3.5.4 Checking the calibration record " (page 70).

Note

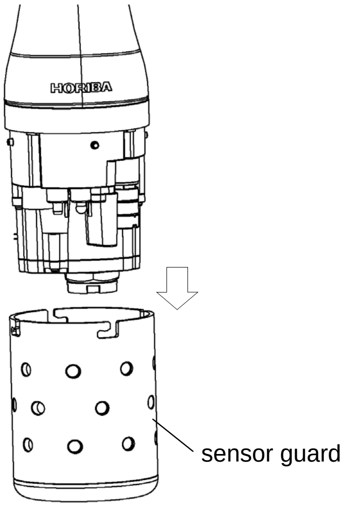
- **Wait at least 20 minutes after turning the system power ON before calibrating the DO sensor.**
- **Make the DO and COND compensation settings before calibration since these settings are applied during calibration.**
- **You can select only the desired parameters for calibration and calibrate just those parameters (see " 3.2.4 Sensor selection " (page 25)).**
- **Use about 200 mL of standard solution in the calibration cup.**
- **Calibration data is stored in the sensor probe.**

3.3.1 Auto calibration

Tip

- **The following parameters are calibrated (at 25°C):**
  pH: Set to 4.01 (zero-point calibration); the span is adjusted to the factory default value.
  COND: 0.449 S/m (4.49 mS/cm, span calibration); the zero point is adjusted to the factory default value.
  TURB: 0 NTU (zero-point calibration); the span is adjusted to the factory default value.
  DO: 8.92 mg/L (span calibration); the zero point is adjusted to the factory default value.
  DEP: 0 m (zero-point calibration); the zero point is adjusted to the factory default value.
- **If the air temperature changes, the readout value may not be stable. Ensure that the ambient air temperature is the same temperature as the calibration solution, because the internal probe temperature sensor and external temperature sensor (in the calibration solution) are used for the auto calibration. Allow the probe and standard solution to equilibrate for 1 hour if a thermometer is not available to verify that these temperatures are the same.**
- **Do not hold the probe while performing the auto calibration. Body temperature may elevate the internal temperature sensor measurement creating DO calibration error.**

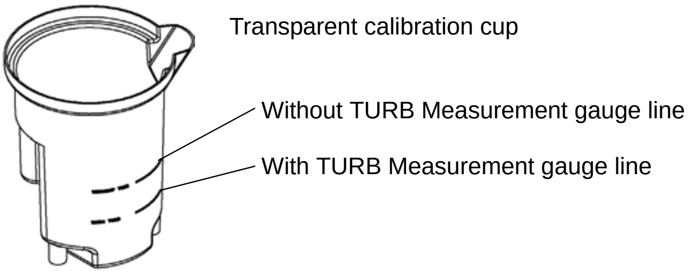
1. **Remove the sensor guard and wash the sensor probe 2 or 3 times with deionized water.**



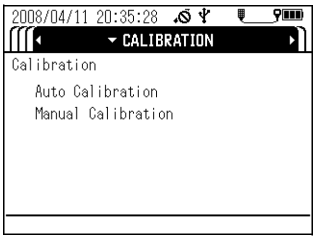
2. **Remove the transparent calibration cup.**

3. **Fill the transparent calibration cup to the line with pH 4 standard solution.**

The transparent calibration cup has With TURB Measurement and Without TURB Measurement gauge lines.



4. **Press the control unit's CAL key to set the calibration mode.**



2008/04/11 20:35:28

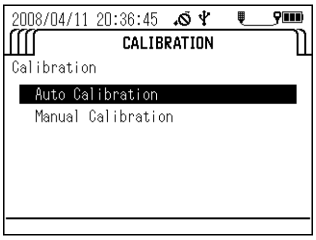
CALIBRATION

Calibration

Auto Calibration

Manual Calibration

5. **Press the down (▽) key to move the cursor to "Auto Calibration", then press the ENTER key.**



2008/04/11 20:36:45

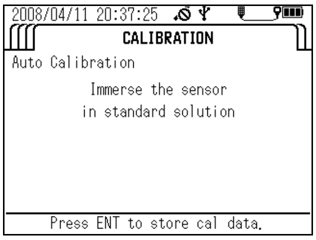
CALIBRATION

Calibration

Auto Calibration

Manual Calibration

6. **Immerse the sensor probe in the transparent calibration cup.**
   Check that the pH sensor, ORP sensor, reference electrode, COND sensor, TURB sensor and temperature sensor are submerged in the pH 4 standard solution and check that there are no air bubbles on the sensor.



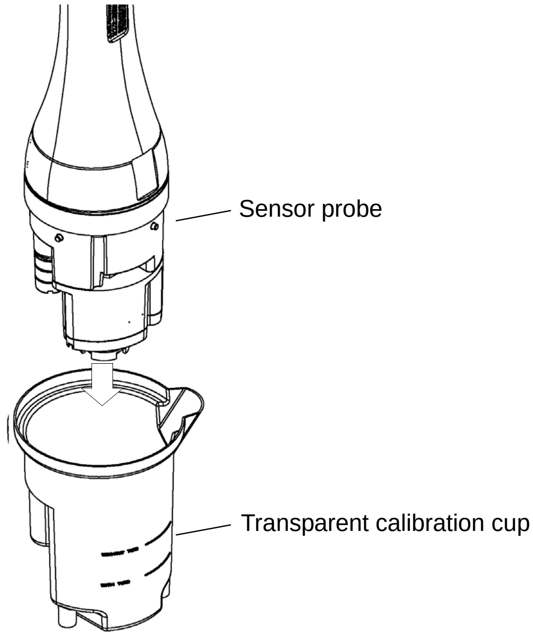
2008/04/11 20:37:25

CALIBRATION

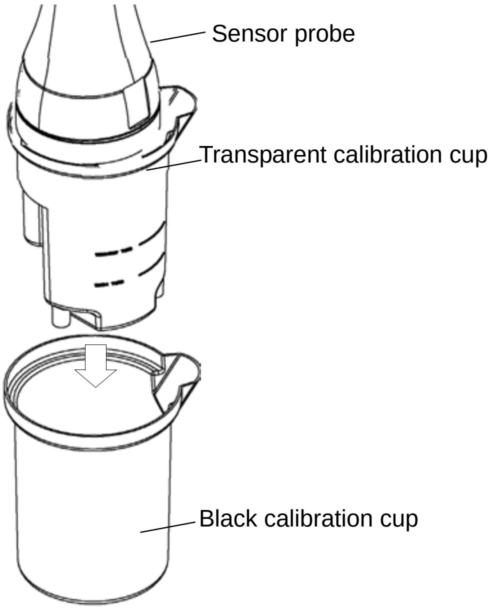
Auto Calibration

Immerse the sensor
in standard solution

Press ENT to store cal data.



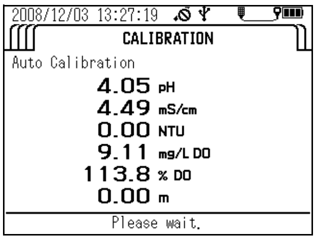
7. **With the sensor probe still in the transparent calibration cup, place the transparent calibration cup into the black calibration cup.**



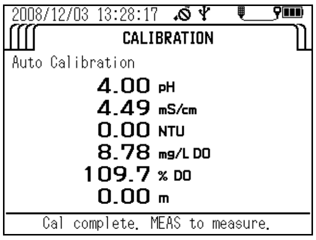
8. **When all the sensor values have stabilized, press the ENTER key to start calibration.**

Note

Do not remove the sensor probe from the calibration solution. U-53 turbidity data will display "----" until the calibration is completed.


2008/12/03 13:27:19
CALIBRATION
Auto Calibration
4.05 pH
4.49 mS/cm
0.00 NTU
9.11 mg/L DO
113.8 % DO
0.00 m
Please wait.

Calibration is finished when the message "Cal complete. MEAS to measure." appears. Press the MEAS key to set the measurement screen, then start measurement.


2008/12/03 13:28:17
CALIBRATION
Auto Calibration
4.00 pH
4.49 mS/cm
0.00 NTU
8.78 mg/L DO
109.7 % DO
0.00 m
Cal complete. MEAS to measure.

If a calibration error occurs, start calibration after first resolving the issue according to the instructions in " 4.6 Troubleshooting " (page 89).

3.3.2 Manual calibration

The procedures below describe how to calibrate each sensor individually.

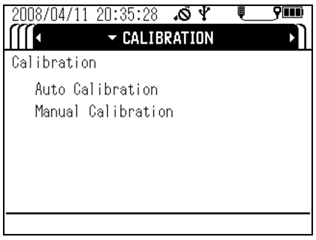
Note

The displayed units are the units set by selecting "Unit for report" in the "SETTINGS" screen.

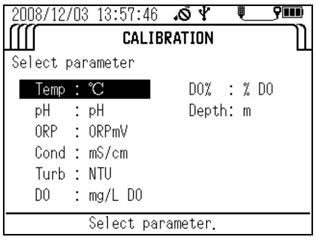
● Temperature (TEMP) calibration

1. **Fill a bucket or similar container with water of a known temperature, and insert the sensor probe in it.**

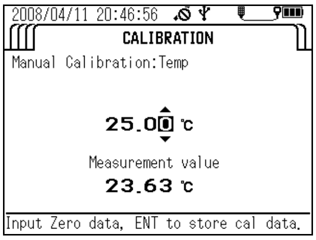
   Wait 5 minutes before starting calibration to allow the sensor probe temperature to stabilize.
2. **Press the control unit's CAL key to set the calibration mode.**
3. **Press the down (▽) key to move the cursor to "Manual Calibration", then press the ENTER key.**


2008/04/11 20:35:28

4. **In the parameter selection screen, move the cursor to “Temp”, then press the ENTER key.**


2008/12/03 13:57:46
CALIBRATION
Select parameter
Temp : ℃
pH : pH
ORP : ORPmV
Cond : mS/cm
Turb : NTU
DO : mg/L DO
DO% : % DO
Depth: m
Select parameter.

5. **Press the up (△) and down (▽) keys to set the calibration value - the temperature of the water containing the submerged sensor probe.**


2008/04/11 20:46:56
CALIBRATION
Manual Calibration:Temp
25.00 ℃
Measurement value
23.63 ℃
Input Zero data, ENT to store cal data.

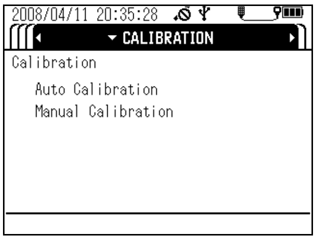
6. **Check that “Measurement value” has stabilized, then press the ENTER key to start calibration.**
   Calibration is finished when the message “Cal complete. CNT to measure.” appears.

● pH calibration

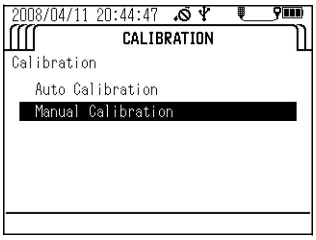
Note

You can select one calibration point (zero-point calibration) or two calibration points (zero-point calibration and span calibration). Carry out two calibration procedures to ensure good measurement precision throughout all measurement ranges.

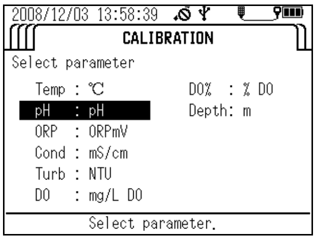
1. **Calibrate the zero point. Wash the transparent calibration cup 2 or 3 times with deionized water, then fill it to the reference line with pH 7 standard solution.**
2. **Wash the sensor probe 2 or 3 times in deionized water to remove any dirt, then submerge the sensor probe in the transparent calibration cup.**
3. **Press the control unit’s CAL key to set the calibration mode.**


2008/04/11 20:35:28
CALIBRATION
Calibration
Auto Calibration
Manual Calibration

4. **Press the down (▽) key to move the cursor to "Manual Calibration", then press the ENTER key.**


2008/04/11 20:44:47
CALIBRATION
Calibration
Auto Calibration
Manual Calibration

5. In the parameter selection screen, move the cursor to "pH", then press the ENTER key.



2008/12/03 13:58:39

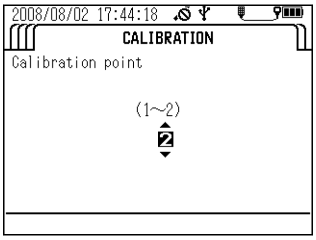
CALIBRATION

Select parameter

Temp : ℃
pH : pH
ORP : ORPmV
Cond : mS/cm
Turb : NTU
DO : mg/L DO
DO% : % DO
Depth: m

Select parameter.

6. Set the number of calibration points, then press the ENTER key.



2008/08/02 17:44:18

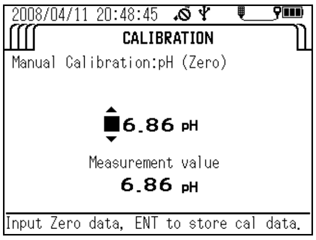
CALIBRATION

Calibration point

(1~2)

2

7. Press the up (△) and down (▽) keys to set the pH value of the pH 7 standard solution containing the submerged sensor probe at the measurement temperature



2008/04/11 20:48:45

CALIBRATION

Manual Calibration:pH (Zero)

6.86 pH

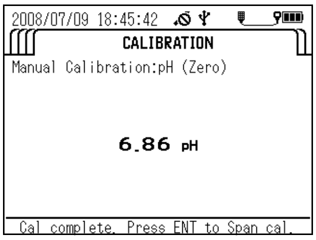
Measurement value
6.86 pH

Input Zero data, ENT to store cal data.

Temp. (°C)	pH 4 standard solution Phthalate	pH 7 standard solution Neutral phosphate	pH 9 standard solution Borate
0	4.01	6.98	9.46
5	4.01	6.95	9.39
10	4.00	6.92	9.33
15	4.00	6.90	9.27
20	4.00	6.88	9.22
25	4.01	6.86	9.18
30	4.01	6.85	9.14
35	4.02	6.84	9.10
40	4.03	6.84	9.07
45	4.04	6.84	9.04

8. Check that "Measurement value" has stabilized, then press the ENTER key to start calibration.

9. **Press the ENTER key to start the span calibration procedure when the message "Cal complete. Press ENT to Span cal." appears.**



2008/07/09 18:45:42

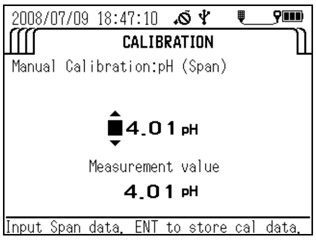
CALIBRATION

Manual Calibration:pH (Zero)

6.86 pH

Cal complete. Press ENT to Span cal.

10. **Wash the transparent calibration cup 2 or 3 times with deionized water, then fill it to the reference line with pH 4 or pH 9 standard solution.**
11. **Wash the sensor probe 2 or 3 times in deionized water to remove any dirt, then submerge the sensor probe in the transparent calibration cup.**
12. **Press the up (△) and down (▽) keys to set the pH value of the pH 4 or pH 9 standard solution containing the submerged sensor probe at the measurement temperature.**



2008/07/09 18:47:10

CALIBRATION

Manual Calibration:pH (Span)

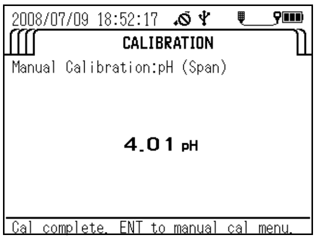
4.01 pH

Measurement value

4.01 pH

Input Span data. ENT to store cal data.

13. **Check that "Measurement value" has stabilized, then press the ENTER key to start calibration.**
14. **Calibration is finished when the message "Cal complete. ENT to manual cal menu." appears. Press the ENTER key to return to the calibration parameter**



2008/07/09 18:52:17

CALIBRATION

Manual Calibration:pH (Span)

4.01 pH

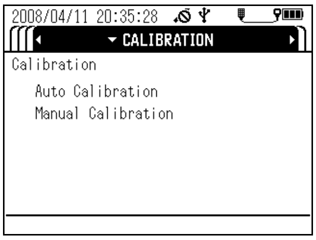
Cal complete. ENT to manual cal menu.

ORP calibration

Note

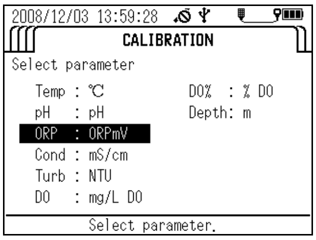
- **If the prepared ORP standard solution is left in open air for one hour or more, the solution may be transformed. For this reason ORP standard solution cannot be stored.**
  Calibrate within one hour of preparing the solution.
- **When measuring sample with low concentrations of oxidants and reductants after conducting an operational check using a standard substance, the measured values may not stabilize or the results of measurement might not be repeatable. If this is the case, start the measurement after immersing the sensors in the sample water sufficiently.**
- **Note that when measuring the ORP of solution with extremely low concentrations of oxidants and reductants, such as tap water, well water, or water treated with purifying equipment, there may be less responsiveness, repeatability, and stability, in general.**
- **When alkaline ion water is left for 5 minutes, its ORP undergoes changes significantly. Always measure alkaline ion water promptly.**

1. **Fill a clean beaker with one bag of ORP standard powder No. 160-22 or No. 160-51. Add 250 mL of deionized water and agitate the solution thoroughly (there will be some excess quinhydrone (a black powder) that floats on the surface when agitating the solution). Fill the transparent calibration cup to the reference line with this standard solution.**
2. **Wash the sensor probe 2 or 3 times in deionized water to remove any dirt, then submerge the sensor probe in the transparent calibration cup.**
3. **Press the control unit's CAL key to set the calibration mode.**
4. **Press the down (▽) key to move the cursor to "Manual Calibration", then press the ENTER key.**



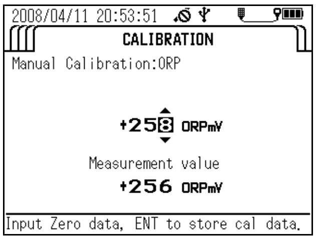
```
2008/04/11 20:35:28
CALIBRATION
Calibration
   Auto Calibration
   Manual Calibration
```

5. **In the parameter selection screen, move the cursor to ORP, then press the ENTER key.**



```
2008/12/03 13:59:28
CALIBRATION
Select parameter
   Temp : ℃            DO%  : % DO
   pH   : pH           Depth: m
   ORP  : ORPmV
   Cond : mS/cm
   Turb : NTU
   DO   : mg/L DO
          Select parameter.
```

6. **Press the up (△) and down (▽) keys to set the mV value of the ORP standard solution containing the submerged sensor probe at the measurement temperature.**



```
2008/04/11 20:53:51
CALIBRATION
Manual Calibration:ORP

          +258 ORPmV

       Measurement value
          +256 ORPmV

Input Zero data, ENT to store cal data.
```

Table 1 Indicated value of ORP standard solution at various temperatures (mV)

Temperature	160-22	16051
5	+274	+112
10	+271	+107
15	+267	+101
20	+263	+95
25	+258	+89
30	+254	+83
35	+249	+76
40	+244	+69

7. **Check that "Measurement value" has stabilized, then press the ENTER key to start calibration.**
8. **Calibration is finished when the message "Cal complete. ENT to manual cal menu." appears. Press the ENTER key to return to the calibration parameter selection screen.**

● Conductivity (COND) calibration

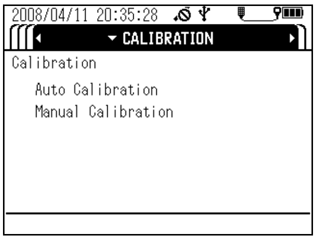
Note

- **To support a wide range of sample concentrations, electrical conductivity is divided into three measurement ranges: 0.0 mS/m to 99.9 mS/m, 0.090 S/m to 0.999 S/m, and 0.9 S/m to 9.99 S/m.**
- **When manually calibrating conductivity, you can select two calibration points (one zero-point calibration point and a span calibration point for one of the three measurement ranges) or four calibration points (one zero-point calibration point and span calibration points for all three measurement ranges). Carry out the four calibration points to ensure good measurement precision throughout all measurement ranges.**
- **Make the compensation setting before calibration since this setting is applied during calibration. (Refer to “ 6.5.3 Temperature coefficient ” (page 104)).**

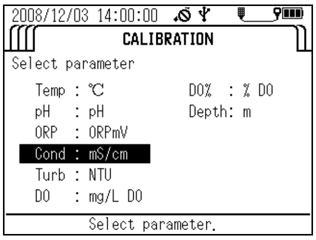
1. **Prepare the standard solution. Dry Potassium chloride (KCl) powder (high-grade commercially available) at 105°C for two hours, and leave it to cool in a desiccator.**
2. **Consult the following table and weigh potassium chloride (KCl), then prepare three standard potassium chloride (KCl) solutions following the procedure below.**

Potassium chloride (KCl) standard solution	Conductivity (COND) value	Potassium chloride (KCl) mass (g) at solution temperature of 25 °C	Calibration range
0.005 mol/L	71.8 mS/m (0.718 mS/cm)	0.373	0.0 mS/m to 99.9 mS/m (0.00 mS/cm to 0.999 mS/cm)
0.050 mol/L	0.667 S/m (6.67 mS/cm)	3.73	0.090 S/m to 0.999 S/m (1.00 mS/cm to 9.99 mS/cm)
0.500 mol/L	5.87 S/m (58.7 mS/cm)	37.2	0.9 S/m to 9.99 S/m (10.0 mS/cm to 99.9 mS/cm)

3. **Dissolve the weighed Potassium Chloride (KCl) in deionized water.**
4. **Put the dissolved Potassium Chloride (KCl) into a 1 L measuring flask, and fill to the 1 L mark with deionized water.**
5. **Calibrate the zero point. Wash the sensor probe 2 or 3 times in deionized water to remove any dirt, then remove all moisture from the sensor probe (it will be calibrated in air).**
6. **Press the control unit’s CAL key to set the calibration mode.**
7. **Press the down (▽) key to move the cursor to "Manual Calibration", then press the ENTER key.**



8. **In the parameter selection screen, move the cursor to “Cond”, then press the ENTER key.**



2008/12/03 14:00:00

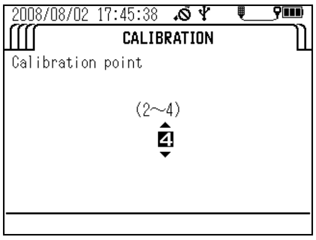
CALIBRATION

Select parameter

Temp : ℃ DO% : % DO
pH : pH Depth: m
ORP : ORPmV
Cond : mS/cm
Turb : NTU
DO : mg/L DO

Select parameter.

9. **Set the number of calibration points, then press the ENTER key.**



2008/08/02 17:45:38

CALIBRATION

Calibration point

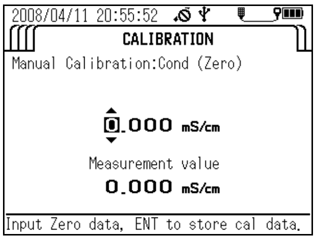
(2~4)

4

The instructions below assume that four calibration points have been set.

10. **Press the up (△) and down (▽) keys to set the "Cond" value to 0.0 mS/m (0.000 mS/cm).**

11. **Check that "Measurement value" has stabilized, then press the ENTER key to start calibration.**



2008/04/11 20:55:52

CALIBRATION

Manual Calibration:Cond (Zero)

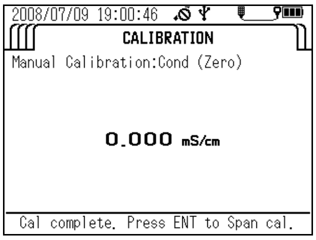
0.000 mS/cm

Measurement value

0.000 mS/cm

Input Zero data, ENT to store cal data.

12. **When the message "Cal complete. Press ENT to Span cal." appears, press the ENTER key to start the first span calibration procedure.**



2008/07/09 19:00:46

CALIBRATION

Manual Calibration:Cond (Zero)

0.000 mS/cm

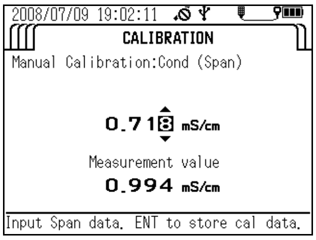
Cal complete. Press ENT to Span cal.

13. **Wash the transparent calibration cup 2 or 3 times with deionized water, then fill it to the reference line with 71.8 mS/m (0.718 mS/cm) standard solution.**

14. **Wash the sensor probe 2 or 3 times in deionized water to remove any dirt, then submerge the sensor probe in the transparent calibration cup.**

15. **Press the up (△) and down (▽) keys to set the "Cond" value to 71.8 mS/m (0.718 mS/cm).**

Calibration range = 0 mS/m to 99.9 mS/m (0 mS/cm to 0.999 mS/cm)



2008/07/09 19:02:11

CALIBRATION

Manual Calibration:Cond (Span)

0.718 mS/cm

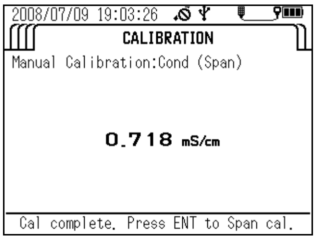
Measurement value

0.994 mS/cm

Input Span data. ENT to store cal data.

16. **Check that "Measurement value" has stabilized, then press the ENTER key to start calibration.**

17. **When the message "Cal complete. Press ENT to Span cal." appears, press the ENTER key to start the next span calibration procedure.**



2008/07/09 19:03:26

CALIBRATION

Manual Calibration:Cond (Span)

0.718 mS/cm

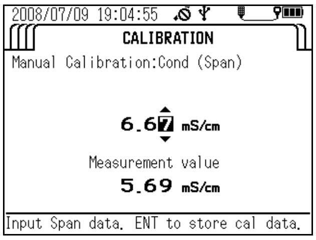
Cal complete. Press ENT to Span cal.

18. **Wash the transparent calibration cup 2 or 3 times with deionized water, then fill it to the reference line with 0.667 S/m (6.67 mS/cm) standard solution.**

19. **Wash the sensor probe 2 or 3 times in deionized water to remove any dirt, then submerge the sensor probe in the transparent calibration cup.**

20. **Press the up (△) and down (▽) keys to set the "Cond" value to 0.667 S/m (6.67 mS/cm).**

Calibration range = 0.100 S/m to 0.999 S/m (1.00 mS/cm to 9.99 mS/cm)



2008/07/09 19:04:55

CALIBRATION

Manual Calibration:Cond (Span)

6.67 mS/cm

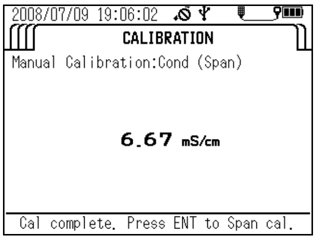
Measurement value

5.69 mS/cm

Input Span data. ENT to store cal data.

21. **Check that "Measurement value" has stabilized, then press the ENTER key to start calibration.**

22. **When the message "Cal complete. Press ENT to Span cal." appears, press the ENTER key to start the next span calibration procedure.**



2008/07/09 19:06:02

CALIBRATION

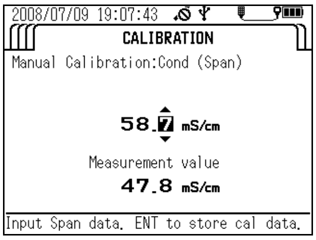
Manual Calibration:Cond (Span)

6.67 mS/cm

Cal complete. Press ENT to Span cal.

23. **Wash the transparent calibration cup 2 or 3 times with deionized water, then fill it to the reference line with 5.87 S/m (58.7 mS/cm) standard solution.**
24. **Wash the sensor probe 2 or 3 times in deionized water to remove any dirt, then submerge the sensor probe in the transparent calibration cup.**
25. **Press the up (△) and down (▽) keys to set the "Cond" value to 5.87 S/m (58.7 mS/cm).**

    Calibration range = 1.00 S/m to 10.00 S/m(10.0 mS/cm to 100.0 mS/cm)



2008/07/09 19:07:43

CALIBRATION

Manual Calibration:Cond (Span)

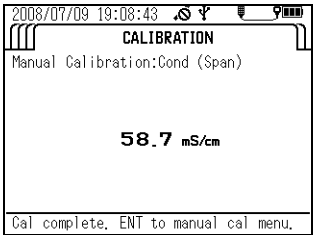
58.7 mS/cm

Measurement value

47.8 mS/cm

Input Span data. ENT to store cal data.

26. **Check that "Measurement value" has stabilized, then press the ENTER key to start calibration.**
27. **Calibration is finished when the message "Cal complete. ENT to manual cal menu." appears. Press the ENTER key to return to the calibration parameter selection screen.**



2008/07/09 19:08:43

CALIBRATION

Manual Calibration:Cond (Span)

58.7 mS/cm

Cal complete. ENT to manual cal menu.

Turbidity (TURB) calibration

Note

- **To support a wide range of sample concentrations, turbidity is divided into three measurement ranges: 0.0 to 9.9 NTU, 10 to 100 NTU, and over 100 NTU.**
- **When manually calibrating turbidity, you can select two calibration procedures (one zero-point calibration procedure and a span calibration procedure for one of the three measurement ranges), three calibration procedures (one zero-point calibration procedure and a span calibration procedure for two of the three measurement ranges) or four calibration procedures (one zero-point calibration procedure and span calibration procedures for all three measurement ranges). Carry out the four calibration procedures to ensure good measurement precision throughout all measurement ranges.**
- **Always use the calibration cup provided. Using other containers can create effects from ambient light that cause incorrect calibration.**

Preparing the standard solutions

1. **Weigh out 5.0 g of hydrazine sulfate (commercial special grade or above), and dissolve it in 400 mL of deionized water. Dissolve 50 g of hexamethylene tetramine (commercial special grade or above) in 400 mL of deionized water in anther flask.**
2. **Mix the two solutions and add deionized water until the total solution volume is 1000 mL, and mix well. Store this solution at a temperature of 25°C ±3°C for 48 hours.**

   The turbidity value (TURB) of this solution is equivalent to 4000 NTU.
3. **Dilute 4000 NTU-solution 5 times (use a pipette to measure 50 mL of the 4000 NTU solution and pour it into a 250 mL measuring flask, and fill up to 250 mL meniscus)**

   The turbidity value (TURB) of this solution is equivalent to 800 NTU.
4. **Dilute 800 NTU solution 10 times (use a pipette to measure 25 mL of the 800 NTU solution and pour it into a 250 mL measuring flask, and fill up to 250 mL meniscus)**

   The turbidity value (TURB) of this solution is equivalent to 80 NTU.
5. **Dilute 80 NTU solution 10 times (use a pipette to measure 25 mL of the 80 NTU solution and pour it into a 250 mL measuring flask, and fill up to 250 mL meniscus)**

   The turbidity value (TURB) of this solution is equivalent to 8 NTU.

Note

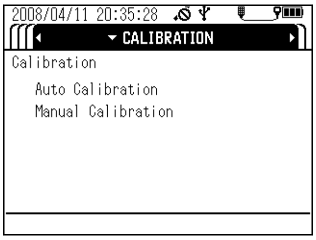
Instead of the standard solutions above, you can use other standard solutions of known concentration measured with other standard instruments.

U-52, U-53 turbidity calibration

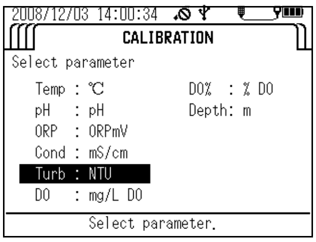
Set the number of calibration points.

You can set between 2 and 4 points.

1. **Press the control unit’s CAL key to set the calibration mode.**
2. **Press the down (▽) key to move the cursor to "Manual Calibration", then press the ENTER key.**



3. **In the parameter selection screen, move the cursor to "Turb", then press the ENTER key.**



2008/12/03 14:00:34

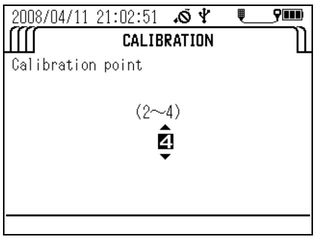
CALIBRATION

Select parameter

Temp : ℃
pH : pH
ORP : ORPmV
Cond : mS/cm
Turb : NTU
DO : mg/L DO
DO% : % DO
Depth: m

Select parameter.

4. **Press the up (△) and down (▽) keys to set the number of calibration points, then press the ENTER key.**



2008/04/11 21:02:51

CALIBRATION

Calibration point

(2~4)

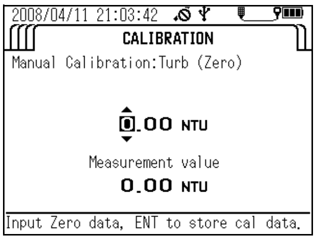
4

The instructions below assume that four calibration points have been set.

5. **Calibrate the zero point. Wash the transparent calibration cup 2 or 3 times with deionized water, then fill it to the reference line with deionized water.**

6. **Wash the sensor probe 2 or 3 times in deionized water to remove any dirt, then submerge the sensor probe in the transparent calibration cup.**

7. **Press the up (△) and down (▽) keys to set the "Turb" value to 0.0 NTU.**



2008/04/11 21:03:42

CALIBRATION

Manual Calibration:Turb (Zero)

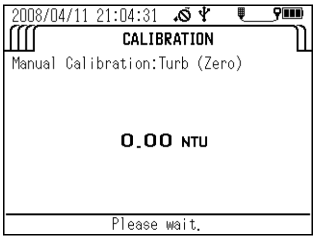
0.00 NTU

Measurement value

0.00 NTU

Input Zero data, ENT to store cal data.

8. **Check that "Measurement value" has stabilized, then press the ENTER key to start calibration.**



2008/04/11 21:04:31

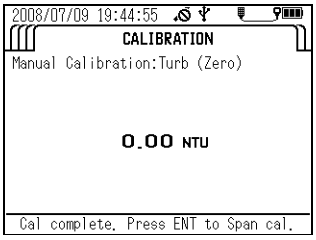
CALIBRATION

Manual Calibration:Turb (Zero)

0.00 NTU

Please wait.

9. **When the message "Cal complete. Press ENT to Span cal." appears, press the ENTER key to start the first span calibration procedure.**



2008/07/09 19:44:55

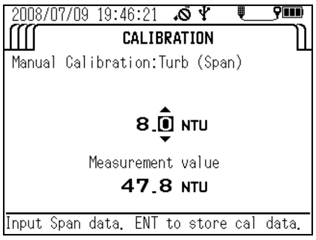
CALIBRATION

Manual Calibration:Turb (Zero)

0.00 NTU

Cal complete. Press ENT to Span cal.

10. **Wash the transparent calibration cup 2 or 3 times with deionized water, then fill it to the reference line with 8 NTU standard solution, or a standard solution of known concentration between 0.1 and 10 NTU.**
11. **Wash the sensor probe 2 or 3 times in deionized water to remove any dirt, then submerge the sensor probe in the transparent calibration cup.**
12. **Press the up (△) and down (▽) keys to set the "TURB" value to 8 NTU, or to the known concentration of the standard solution between 0.1 and 10 NTU. (Input range = 0 NTU to 9.9 NTU (U-51) or 0 NTU to 9.99 NTU (U-52))**



2008/07/09 19:46:21

CALIBRATION

Manual Calibration:Turb (Span)

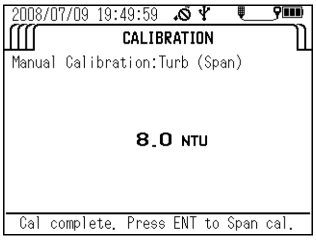
8.0 NTU

Measurement value

47.8 NTU

Input Span data. ENT to store cal data.

13. **Check that "Current measurement value" has stabilized, then press the ENTER key to start calibration.**
14. **When the message "Cal complete. Press ENT to Span cal." appears, press the ENTER key to start the next span calibration procedure.**



2008/07/09 19:49:59

CALIBRATION

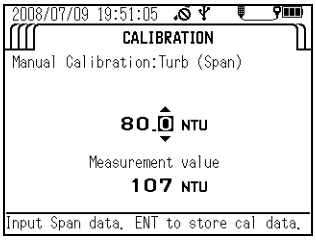
Manual Calibration:Turb (Span)

8.0 NTU

Cal complete. Press ENT to Span cal.

15. **Wash the transparent calibration cup 2 or 3 times with deionized water, then fill it to the reference line with 80 NTU standard solution, or a standard solution of known concentration between 10 and 100 NTU.**
16. **Wash the sensor probe 2 or 3 times in deionized water to remove any dirt, then submerge the sensor probe in the transparent calibration cup.**

17. **Press the up (△) and down (▽) keys to set the "Turb" value to 80 NTU, or to the known concentration of the standard solution between 10 and 100 NTU. (Input range = 10.0 NTU to 99.9 NTU)**



2008/07/09 19:51:05

CALIBRATION

Manual Calibration:Turb (Span)

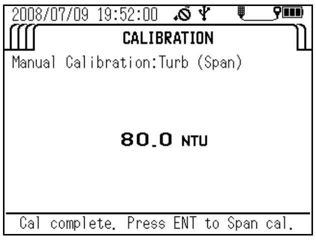
80.0 NTU

Measurement value

107 NTU

Input Span data. ENT to store cal data.

18. **Check that "Measurement value" has stabilized, then press the ENTER key to start calibration.**
19. **When the message "Cal complete. Press ENT to Span cal." appears, press the ENTER key to start the next span calibration procedure.**



2008/07/09 19:52:00

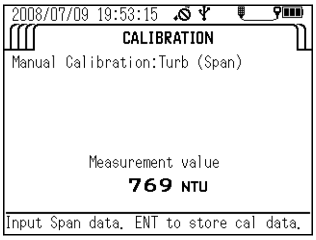
CALIBRATION

Manual Calibration:Turb (Span)

80.0 NTU

Cal complete. Press ENT to Span cal.

20. **Wash the transparent calibration cup 2 or 3 times with deionized water, then fill it to the reference line with 800 NTU standard solution, or a standard solution of known concentration 100 NTU above.**
21. **Wash the sensor probe 2 or 3 times in deionized water to remove any dirt, then submerge the sensor probe in the transparent calibration cup.**
22. **Press the up (△) and down (▽) keys to set the "TURB" value to 800 NTU, or to the known concentration of the standard solution 100 NTU above.**
    (Input range = 100 NTU to 800 NTU (U-51), 100 NTU to 1000 NTU (U-52))



2008/07/09 19:53:15

CALIBRATION

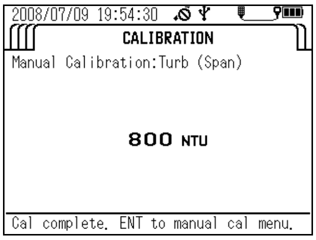
Manual Calibration:Turb (Span)

Measurement value

769 NTU

Input Span data. ENT to store cal data.

23. **Check that "Measurement value" has stabilized, then press the ENTER key to start calibration.**
24. **Calibration is finished when the message "Cal complete. ENT to manual cal menu." appears. Press the ENTER key to return to the calibration parameter selection screen.**



2008/07/09 19:54:30

CALIBRATION

Manual Calibration:Turb (Span)

800 NTU

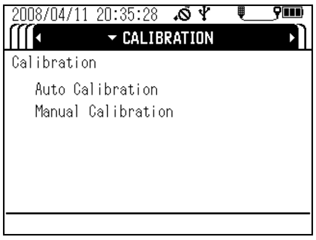
Cal complete. ENT to manual cal menu.

Dissolved oxygen (DO) calibration

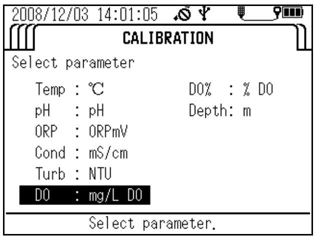
Note

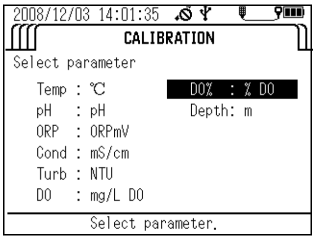
- **You can select one calibration procedure (span calibration) or two calibration procedures (zero-point calibration and span calibration). Carry out the two calibration procedures to ensure good measurement precision throughout all measurement ranges.**
- **It is necessary to prepare new solution before calibration of the Dissolved Oxygen (DO) sensor.**
- **The calibration cup (included) cannot be used to manually calibrate the DO sensor. Use a suitable bottle in which the DO sensor and the temperature sensor can be immersed.**
- **Wait at least 20 minutes after turning the system power ON before calibrating the DO sensor.**
- **Make the compensation setting before calibration since the setting is applied during calibration.**
- **The DO sensor is affected by flow. When performing span calibration with saturated dissolved oxygen water, move the cable slowly up and down (move the sensor probe at a rate of roughly 20 to 30 cm a second) or agitate the saturated dissolved oxygen water.**

1. **Prepare the standard solution.**
   - Add about 50 g of sodium sulfite to 1000 mL of water (either deionized water or tap water) and stir the mixture to dissolve the sodium sulfite in it.
   - Pour 1 to 2 liters of water into a suitable flask (either deionized water or tap water). Using a air pump, feed air into the water and aerate the solution until oxygen is saturated.
2. **First, calibrate the zero point. Press the control unit's CAL key to set the calibration mode.**
3. **Press the down (▽) key to move the cursor to "Manual Calibration", then press the ENTER key.**

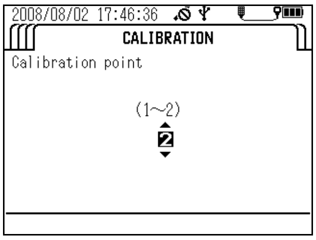

2008/04/11 20:35:28
CALIBRATION
Calibration
Auto Calibration
Manual Calibration

4. **In the parameter selection screen, move the cursor to DO or DO%, then press the ENTER key.**


2008/12/03 14:01:05
CALIBRATION
Select parameter
Temp : ℃
pH : pH
ORP : ORPmV
Cond : mS/cm
Turb : NTU
DO : mg/L DO
DO% : % DO
Depth: m
Select parameter.

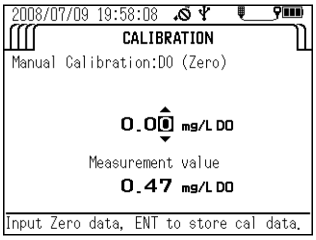

2008/12/03 14:01:35
CALIBRATION
Select parameter
Temp : ℃
pH : pH
ORP : ORPmV
Cond : mS/cm
Turb : NTU
DO : mg/L DO
DO% : % DO
Depth: m
Select parameter.

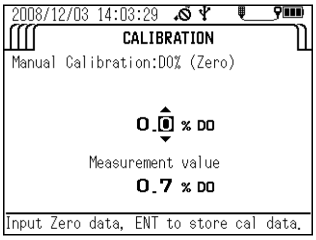
5. **Set the number of calibration procedures, then press the ENTER key.**


2008/08/02 17:46:36
CALIBRATION
Calibration point
(1~2)
2

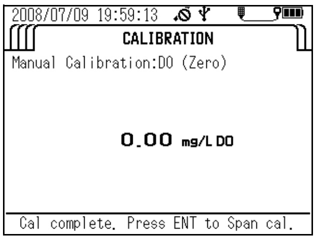
The instructions below assume that two calibration points have been set.

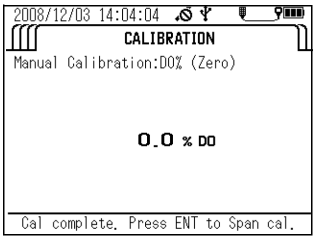
6. **Wash the sensor probe 2 or 3 times in deionized water to remove any dirt, then submerge the sensor probe in the bottle.**
7. **Press the up (△) and down (▽) keys to set the DO value to 0.00 mg/L or 0.0%.**


2008/07/09 19:58:08
CALIBRATION
Manual Calibration:DO (Zero)
0.00 mg/L DO
Measurement value
0.47 mg/L DO
Input Zero data, ENT to store cal data.

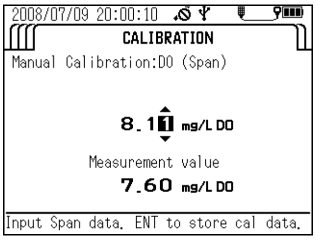

2008/12/03 14:03:29
CALIBRATION
Manual Calibration:DO% (Zero)
0.0 % DO
Measurement value
0.7 % DO
Input Zero data, ENT to store cal data.

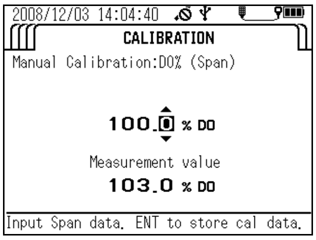
8. **Check that "Measurement value" has stabilized, then press the ENTER key to start calibration.**
9. **When the message "Cal complete. Press ENT to Span cal." appears, press the ENTER key to start the span calibration procedure.**


2008/07/09 19:59:13
CALIBRATION
Manual Calibration:DO (Zero)
0.00 mg/L DO
Cal complete. Press ENT to Span cal.

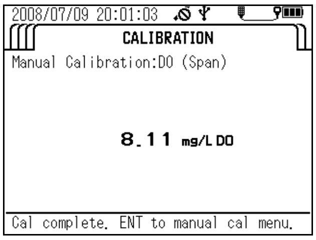

2008/12/03 14:04:04
CALIBRATION
Manual Calibration:DO% (Zero)
0.0 % DO
Cal complete. Press ENT to Span cal.

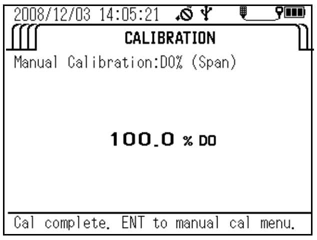
10. **Wash the sensor probe 2 or 3 times with deionized water to remove any dirt, then submerge the sensor probe in the container filled with the span solution.**
11. **Press the up (△) and down (▽) keys to set the DO value to the saturated dissolved oxygen value (mg/L) of the water at that temperature or the dissolved oxygen saturation ratio.**


2008/07/09 20:00:10
CALIBRATION
Manual Calibration:DO (Span)
8.11 mg/L DO
Measurement value
7.60 mg/L DO
Input Span data. ENT to store cal data.


2008/12/03 14:04:40
CALIBRATION
Manual Calibration:DO% (Span)
100.0 % DO
Measurement value
103.0 % DO
Input Span data. ENT to store cal data.

12. **Check that "Measurement value" has stabilized, then press the ENTER key to start calibration.**
13. **Calibration is finished when the message "Cal complete. ENT to manual cal menu." appears. Press the ENTER key to return to the calibration parameter selection screen.**


2008/07/09 20:01:03
CALIBRATION
Manual Calibration:DO (Span)
8.11 mg/L DO
Cal complete. ENT to manual cal menu.


2008/12/03 14:05:21
CALIBRATION
Manual Calibration:DO% (Span)
100.0 % DO
Cal complete. ENT to manual cal menu.

Amounts of saturated dissolved oxygen in water at various temperatures (salinity=0.0%)

JIS K0101

Temp. (°C)	DO (mg/L)	Temp. (°C)	DO (mg/L)	Temp. (°C)	DO (mg/L)	Temp. (°C)	DO (mg/L)
0	14.16						
1	13.77	11	10.67	21	8.68	31	7.42
2	13.40	12	10.43	22	8.53	32	7.32
3	13.04	13	10.20	23	8.39	33	7.22
4	12.70	14	9.97	24	8.25	34	7.13
5	12.37	15	9.76	25	8.11	35	7.04
6	12.06	16	9.56	26	7.99	36	6.94
7	11.75	17	9.37	27	7.87	37	6.86
8	11.47	18	9.18	28	7.75	38	6.76
9	11.19	19	9.01	29	7.64	39	6.68
10	10.92	20	8.84	30	7.53	40	6.59

ISO5814

Temp. (°C)	DO (mg/L)	Temp. (°C)	DO (mg/L)	Temp. (°C)	DO (mg/L)
0	14.62				
1	14.22	11	11.03	21	8.91
2	13.83	12	10.78	22	8.74
3	13.46	13	10.54	23	8.58
4	13.11	14	10.31	24	8.42
5	12.77	15	10.08	25	8.26
6	12.45	16	9.87	26	8.11
7	12.14	17	9.66	27	7.97
8	11.84	18	9.47	28	7.83
9	11.56	19	9.28	29	7.69
10	11.29	20	9.09	30	7.56

● Span setting values for calibration in air

The software should display these values when auto calibration is performed.

Use this table to input values for manual span calibrations in air.

Tip

The DO measurement value of “air-saturated water” and air are different.
Due to the pressure difference against the membrane in air versus the membrane in water, the measurement value in air is about 10% higher than the value of air-saturated water on average.

Amounts of saturated dissolved oxygen in air at various temperatures

Following tables are applicable only to the air calibration of the U-50 DO sensor. Do not use them for other purpose.

Air calibration value in adopting evaluation based on JIS K0101

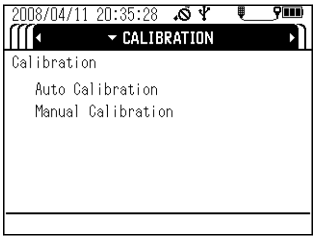
Temp (°C)	DO (mg/L)	Temp (°C)	DO (mg/L)	Temp (°C)	DO (mg/L)	Temp (°C)	DO (mg/L)
0	15.58						
1	15.15	11	11.74	21	9.55	31	8.16
2	14.74	12	11.47	22	9.38	32	8.05
3	14.34	13	11.22	23	9.23	33	7.94
4	13.97	14	10.97	24	9.08	34	7.84
5	13.61	15	10.74	25	8.92	35	7.74
6	13.27	16	10.52	26	8.79	36	7.63
7	12.93	17	10.31	27	8.66	37	7.55
8	12.62	18	10.10	28	8.53	38	7.44
9	12.31	19	9.91	29	8.40	39	7.35
10	12.01	20	9.72	30	8.28	40	7.25

Air calibration value in adopting evaluation based on ISO5814

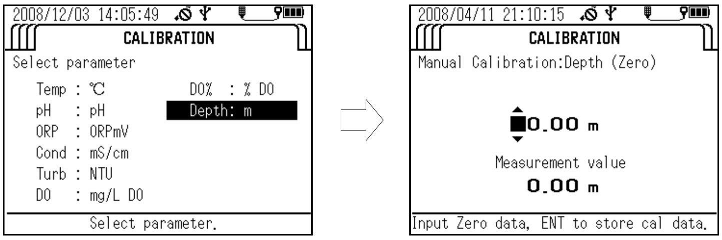
Temp. (°C)	DO (mg/L)	Temp. (°C)	DO (mg/L)	Temp. (°C)	DO (mg/L)
0	16.08				
1	15.64	11	12.13	21	9.80
2	15.21	12	11.86	22	9.61
3	14.81	13	11.59	23	9.44
4	14.42	14	11.34	24	9.26
5	14.05	15	11.09	25	9.09
6	13.70	16	10.86	26	8.92
7	13.35	17	10.63	27	8.77
8	13.02	18	10.42	28	8.61
9	12.72	19	10.21	29	8.46
10	12.42	20	10.00	30	8.32

● Water depth (DEPTH) calibration

1. **Calibrate the zero point. Wash the sensor probe 2 or 3 times in deionized water to remove any dirt, then remove all moisture from the sensor probe (it will be calibrated in air).**
2. **Press the control unit's CAL key to set the calibration mode.**
3. **Press the down (▽) key to move the cursor to "Manual Calibration", then press the ENTER key.**



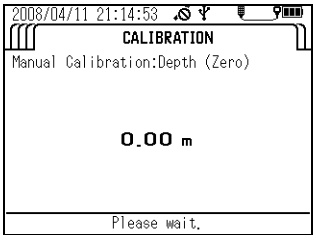
4. **In the parameter selection screen, move the cursor to "Depth", then press the ENTER key.**



Select parameter.

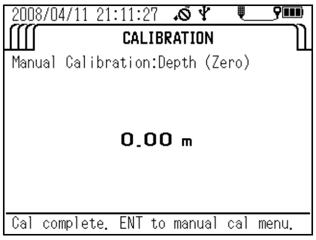
Input Zero data, ENT to store cal data.

5. **Press the up (△) and down (▽) keys to set the "Depth" value to 0.00 m.**
6. **Check that "Measurement value" has stabilized, then press the ENTER key to start calibration.**



Please wait.

7. **Calibration is finished when the message "Cal complete. ENT to manual cal menu." appears. Press the ENTER key to return to the calibration parameter selection screen.**



Cal complete. ENT to manual cal menu.

3.4 Measurement

You can perform measurement by either of the methods below.

- Storing data in memory manually with reference to the measurement value (single measurement)
- Having data stored in memory automatically and continuously
  U-51/U-52: Interval measurement (minimum memory interval of 10 seconds)
  U-53: Interval measurement (minimum memory interval of 30 seconds)

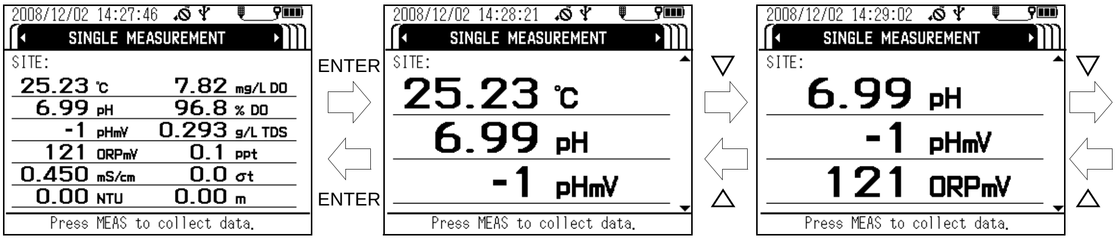
Select the measurement method that meets your requirements.

Note

- **Lower sensor probe slowly when submerging them in samples.**
- **Sensors may break if sensor probe are dropped from a height of 1 meter or more.**
- **Do not submerge sensor probe in water depths of over 30 meters. Sensor probe are only resistant to water pressure of up to 30 meters.**
- **After turning the power ON, check that the DO readout value has stabilized before starting measurement (takes around 20 minutes).**

Tip

- **When on the measurement screen, pressing the ENTER key enlarges the display and shows three measured values at a time.**
- **Pressing the up (△) and down (▽) keys scrolls through the measured values one item at a time.**
- **Pressing the ENTER key again reverts to the normal measurement screen display.**



```
2008/12/02 14:27:46
SINGLE MEASUREMENT
SITE:
25.23 ℃        7.82 mg/L DO
 6.99 pH       96.8 % DO
   -1 pHmV    0.293 g/L TDS
  121 ORPmV     0.1 ppt
0.450 mS/cm     0.0 σt
 0.00 NTU      0.00 m
Press MEAS to collect data.
```

```
2008/12/02 14:28:21
SINGLE MEASUREMENT
SITE:
25.23 ℃
 6.99 pH
   -1 pHmV
Press MEAS to collect data.
```

```
2008/12/02 14:29:02
SINGLE MEASUREMENT
SITE:
6.99 pH
  -1 pHmV
 121 ORPmV
Press MEAS to collect data.
```

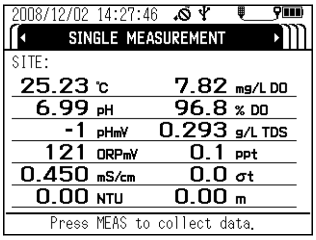
Measurement screen Normal Enlarged

3.4.1 Storing data in memory manually

Follow the steps below to manually store data in memory while referring to the measurement value to check the readout value is stable.

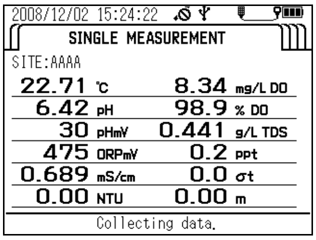
● U-51/U-52

1. **Check that each sensor and sensor guard is mounted.**
2. **Check that "SINGLE MEASUREMENT" has been selected in the measurement screen.**



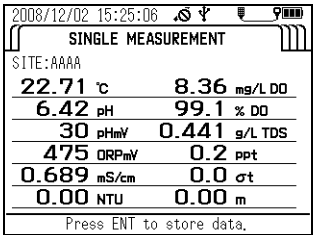
```
2008/12/02 14:27:46
SINGLE MEASUREMENT
SITE:
25.23 ℃        7.82 mg/L DO
 6.99 pH       96.8 % DO
   -1 pHmV    0.293 g/L TDS
  121 ORPmV     0.1 ppt
0.450 mS/cm     0.0 σt
 0.00 NTU      0.00 m
Press MEAS to collect data.
```

3. **Submerge the sensor probe in the sample, gently shaking them in the sample to remove any air bubbles from the sensors.**
   If the sample is non-flowing, move the cable slowly up and down (move the sensor probe at a rate of roughly 20 to 30 cm a second) to ensure that fresh sample is continuously supplied to the DO sensor.
4. **When the measurement values are stable, press the MEAS key to acquire the 5-second average.**

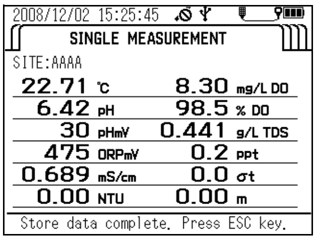


2008/12/02 15:24:22
SINGLE MEASUREMENT
SITE:AAAA
22.71 ℃ 8.34 mg/L DO
6.42 pH 98.9 % DO
30 pHmV 0.441 g/L TDS
475 ORPmV 0.2 ppt
0.689 mS/cm 0.0 σt
0.00 NTU 0.00 m
Collecting data.

5. **Press the ENTER key to save the held measurement values, or press the ESC key to cancel the operation.**



2008/12/02 15:25:06
SINGLE MEASUREMENT
SITE:AAAA
22.71 ℃ 8.36 mg/L DO
6.42 pH 99.1 % DO
30 pHmV 0.441 g/L TDS
475 ORPmV 0.2 ppt
0.689 mS/cm 0.0 σt
0.00 NTU 0.00 m
Press ENT to store data.



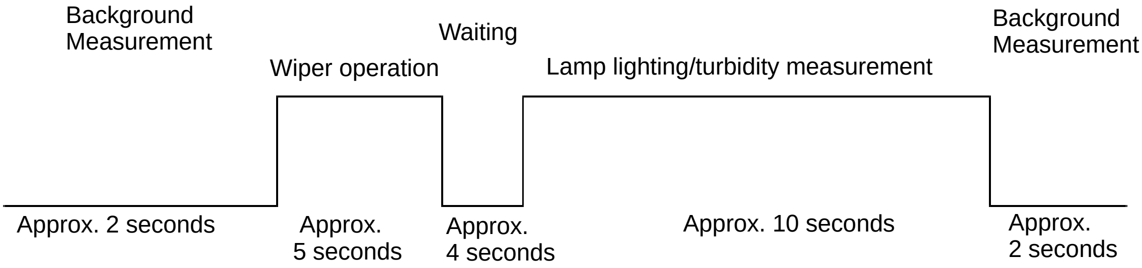
2008/12/02 15:25:45
SINGLE MEASUREMENT
SITE:AAAA
22.71 ℃ 8.30 mg/L DO
6.42 pH 98.5 % DO
30 pHmV 0.441 g/L TDS
475 ORPmV 0.2 ppt
0.689 mS/cm 0.0 σt
0.00 NTU 0.00 m
Store data complete. Press ESC key.

● U-53

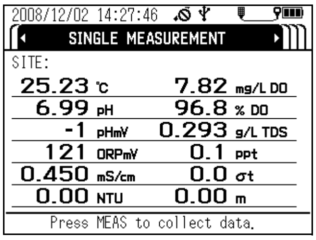
Note

Do not perform turbidity measurement in air as it may damage the wiper.

U-53 turbidity measurement follows the sequence below. The measurement values are held after each sequence.



1. **Check that each sensor and sensor guard is mounted.**
2. **Check that "SINGLE MEASUREMENT" has been selected in the measurement screen.**

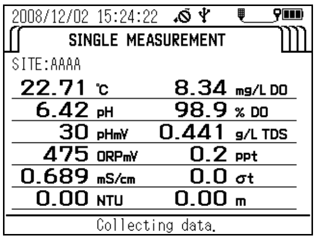


2008/12/02 14:27:46
SINGLE MEASUREMENT
SITE:
25.23 ℃ 7.82 mg/L DO
6.99 pH 96.8 % DO
-1 pHmV 0.293 g/L TDS
121 ORPmV 0.1 ppt
0.450 mS/cm 0.0 σt
0.00 NTU 0.00 m
Press MEAS to collect data.

3. **Submerge the sensor probe in the sample, gently shaking them in the sample to remove any air bubbles from the sensors.**

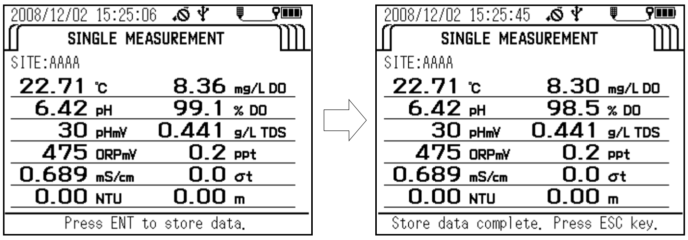
   If the sample is non-flowing, move the cable slowly up and down (move the sensor probe at a rate of roughly 20 to 30 cm a second) to ensure that fresh sample is continuously supplied to the DO sensor.

4. **When the non-turbidity meter measurement values are stable, press the MEAS key to start the sequence above.**



```
2008/12/02 15:24:22
SINGLE MEASUREMENT
SITE:AAAA
 22.71 ℃        8.34 mg/L DO
  6.42 pH       98.9 % DO
    30 pHmV    0.441 g/L TDS
   475 ORPmV     0.2 ppt
 0.689 mS/cm     0.0 σt
  0.00 NTU      0.00 m
Collecting data.
```

5. **When the sequence has finished, hold the measurement values. Press the ENTER key to store the held measurement values, or press the ESC key to cancel the operation.**



```
2008/12/02 15:25:06
SINGLE MEASUREMENT
SITE:AAAA
 22.71 ℃        8.36 mg/L DO
  6.42 pH       99.1 % DO
    30 pHmV    0.441 g/L TDS
   475 ORPmV     0.2 ppt
 0.689 mS/cm     0.0 σt
  0.00 NTU      0.00 m
Press ENT to store data.
```

```
2008/12/02 15:25:45
SINGLE MEASUREMENT
SITE:AAAA
 22.71 ℃        8.30 mg/L DO
  6.42 pH       98.5 % DO
    30 pHmV    0.441 g/L TDS
   475 ORPmV     0.2 ppt
 0.689 mS/cm     0.0 σt
  0.00 NTU      0.00 m
Store data complete. Press ESC key.
```

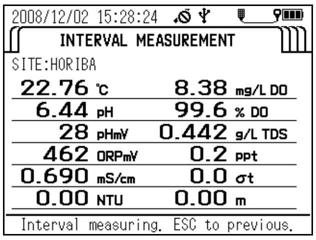
3.4.2 Automatic, continuous measurement

● **Interval measurement**

1. **Select the "Interval measurement" measurement setting (see " 3.2.1 Setting measurement methods " (page 18)).**
2. **Press the up (△) and down (▽) keys to set the interval value to the desired value (U-51/U-52: minimum interval: 10 seconds, U-53: minimum interval: 30 seconds), then press the ENTER key.**

   The measurement screen appears automatically, and the system becomes ready for measurement.
3. **Check that each sensor and sensor guard is mounted.**
4. **Submerge the sensor probe in the sample, gently shaking them in the sample to remove any air bubbles from the sensors.**

   If the sample is non-flowing, move the cable slowly up and down (move the sensor probe at a rate of roughly 20 to 30 cm a second) to ensure that fresh sample is continuously supplied to the DO sensor.
5. **Press the ENTER key to start measurement.**



```
2008/12/02 15:28:24
INTERVAL MEASUREMENT
SITE:HORIBA
 22.76 ℃        8.38 mg/L DO
  6.44 pH       99.6 % DO
    28 pHmV    0.442 g/L TDS
   462 ORPmV     0.2 ppt
 0.690 mS/cm     0.0 σt
  0.00 NTU      0.00 m
Interval measuring. ESC to previous.
```

3.5 Data operations

Use the procedures below to retrieve data stored in memory, delete all the data, check the remaining data memory capacity, and check the calibration record.

3.5.1 Displaying data

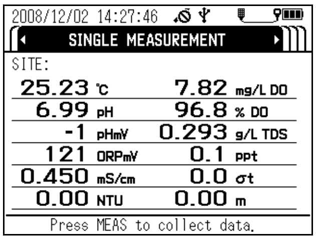
For maximum efficiency, there are 3 methods of displaying data.

- Displaying the data for a specified site
- Displaying the data for a specified date/time
- Displaying all the data

Use the method that best suits your requirements.

● Displaying the data for a specified site

1. **Press and hold down the control unit's POWER key for about 3 seconds to turn the power ON.**
   The "MEASUREMENT" screen appears after about 10 seconds.



2008/12/02 14:27:46

SINGLE MEASUREMENT

SITE:

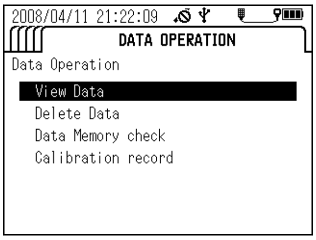
25.23 ℃	7.82 mg/L DO
6.99 pH	96.8 % DO
-1 pHmV	0.293 g/L TDS
121 ORPmV	0.1 ppt
0.450 mS/cm	0.0 σt
0.00 NTU	0.00 m

Press MEAS to collect data.

Note

The operation keys are designed to operate using the pad of a finger, sharp objects can tear the control unit cover damaging the operation keys.

2. **Press the right (▷) key 3 times to display the "DATA OPERATION" screen.**
3. **Press the down (▽) key to move the cursor to "View Data", then press the ENTER key.**



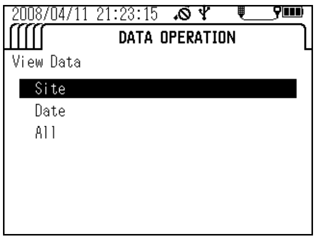
2008/04/11 21:22:09

DATA OPERATION

Data Operation

View Data
Delete Data
Data Memory check
Calibration record

4. **Move the cursor to "Site", then press the ENTER key.**



2008/04/11 21:23:15

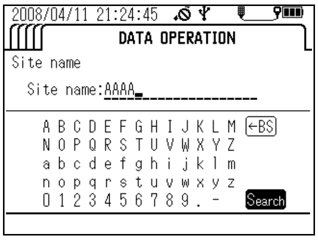
DATA OPERATION

View Data

Site
Date
All

5. **Press the up (△), down (▽), left (◁) and right (▷) keys to enter the site to retrieve.**

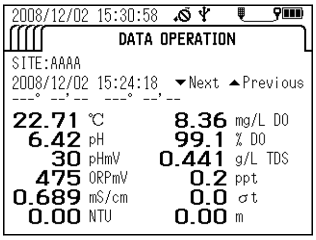
6. **Move the cursor to "Search", then press the ENTER key.**



```
2008/04/11 21:24:45
DATA OPERATION
Site name
  Site name:AAAA
```

All site names that begin with the entered text are displayed.
The most recently measured data for the entered site is displayed.

7. **Press the up (△) and down (▽) keys to display earlier data.**

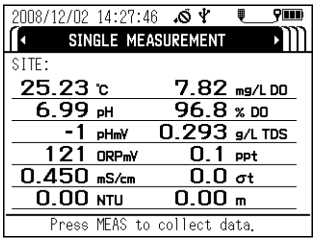


```
2008/12/02 15:30:58
DATA OPERATION
SITE:AAAA
2008/12/02 15:24:18  ▼Next ▲Previous
---° --'--  ---° --'--
22.71 ℃        8.36 mg/L DO
 6.42 pH        99.1 % DO
   30 pHmV     0.441 g/L TDS
  475 ORPmV      0.2 ppt
0.689 mS/cm      0.0 σt
 0.00 NTU       0.00 m
```

Displaying the data for a specified date/time

1. **Press and hold down the control unit's POWER key for about 3 seconds to turn the power ON.**

   The "MEASUREMENT" screen appears after about 10 seconds.

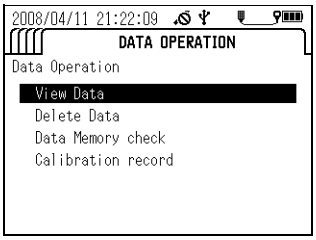


```
2008/12/02 14:27:46
◀ SINGLE MEASUREMENT ▶
SITE:
25.23 ℃         7.82 mg/L DO
 6.99 pH         96.8 % DO
   -1 pHmV      0.293 g/L TDS
  121 ORPmV       0.1 ppt
0.450 mS/cm       0.0 σt
 0.00 NTU        0.00 m
Press MEAS to collect data.
```

Note

The operation keys are designed to operate using the pad of a finger, sharp objects can tear the control unit cover damaging the operation keys.

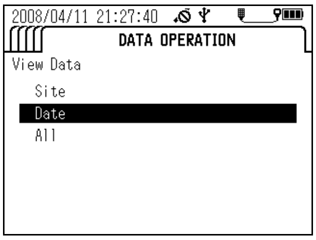
2. **Press the right (▷) key 3 times to display the "DATA OPERATION" screen.**
3. **Press the down (▽) key to move the cursor to "View Data", then press the ENTER key.**



```
2008/04/11 21:22:09
DATA OPERATION
Data Operation
```

4. **Move the cursor to "Date", then press the ENTER key.**

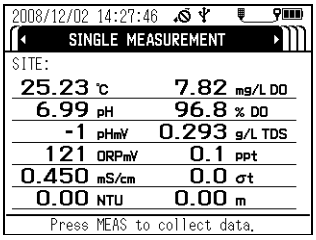
5. **With the cursor on the Date, press the ENTER key.**



6. **Press the up (△), down (▽), left (◁) and right (▷) keys to enter the desired date/time, then press the ENTER key to apply the setting.**
7. **The cursor moves to "Search". Press the ENTER key to start the search.**
8. **Press the up (△) and down (▽) keys to display earlier data.**

● **Displaying all the data**

1. **Press and hold down the control unit's POWER key for about 3 seconds to turn the power ON.**
   The "MEASUREMENT" screen appears after about 10 seconds.

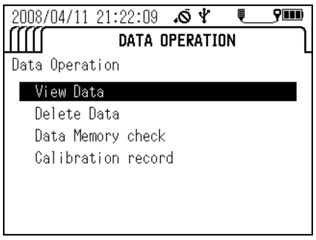


```
2008/12/02 14:27:46
SINGLE MEASUREMENT
SITE:
 25.23 ℃          7.82 mg/L DO
  6.99 pH         96.8 % DO
    -1 pHmV      0.293 g/L TDS
   121 ORPmV       0.1 ppt
 0.450 mS/cm       0.0 σt
  0.00 NTU        0.00 m
     Press MEAS to collect data.
```

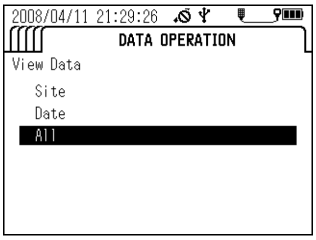
Note

The operation keys are designed to operate using the pad of a finger, sharp objects can tear the control unit cover damaging the operation keys.

2. **Press the right (▷) key 3 times to display the "DATA OPERATION" screen.**
3. **Press the down (▽) key to move the cursor to "View Data", then press the ENTER key.**



4. **Move the cursor to "All", then press the ENTER key.**
   The most recently measured data is displayed.



2008/04/11 21:29:26

DATA OPERATION

View Data

Site

Date

All

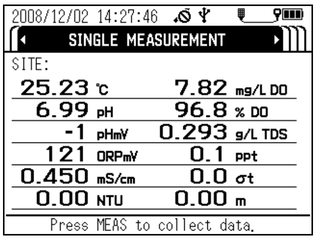
5. **Press the up (△) and down (▽) keys to display earlier data.**

3.5.2 Deleting data

Follow the steps below to delete all the data stored in memory.

1. **Press and hold down the control unit's POWER key for about 3 seconds to turn the power ON.**

   The "MEASUREMENT" screen appears after about 10 seconds.



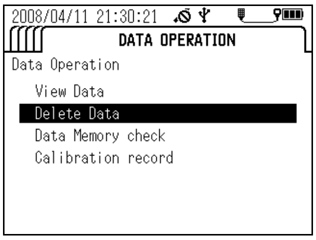
25.23 ℃ 7.82 mg/L DO
6.99 pH 96.8 % DO
-1 pHmV 0.293 g/L TDS
121 ORPmV 0.1 ppt
0.450 mS/cm 0.0 σt
0.00 NTU 0.00 m

Press MEAS to collect data.

Note

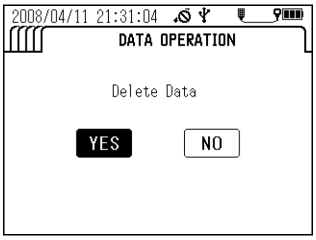
The operation keys are designed to operate using the pad of a finger, sharp objects can tear the control unit cover damaging the operation keys.

2. **Press the right (▷) key 3 times to display the "DATA OPERATION" screen.**
3. **Press the down (▽) key to move the cursor to "Delete Data", then press the ENTER key.**



4. **Press the left (◁) key to move the cursor to YES, then press the ENTER key.**

   All the data has been deleted when the indicator appears along with the message "No data exists".

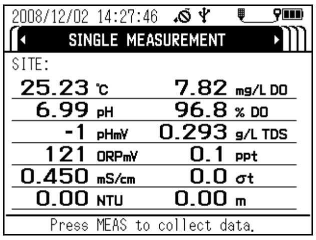


3.5.3 Checking the data memory

You can check the used data capacity and the remaining data capacity.

1. **Press and hold down the control unit's POWER key for about 3 seconds to turn the power ON.**

   The "MEASUREMENT" screen appears after about 10 seconds.



SITE:

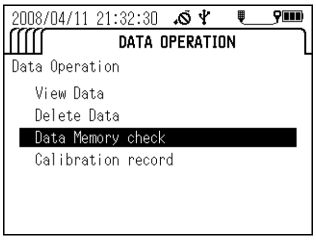
25.23	℃	7.82	mg/L DO
6.99	pH	96.8	% DO
-1	pHmV	0.293	g/L TDS
121	ORPmV	0.1	ppt
0.450	mS/cm	0.0	σt
0.00	NTU	0.00	m

Press MEAS to collect data.

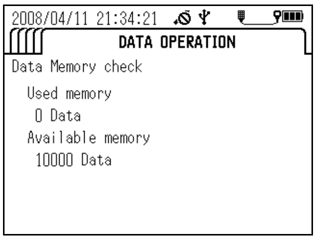
Note

The operation keys are designed to operate using the pad of a finger, sharp objects can tear the control unit cover damaging the operation keys.

2. **Press the right (▷) key 3 times to display the "DATA OPERATION" screen.**
3. **Press the down (▽) key to move the cursor to "Data Memory Check", then press the ENTER key.**



The amount of memory in use and amount of available memory are displayed.



Data Memory check

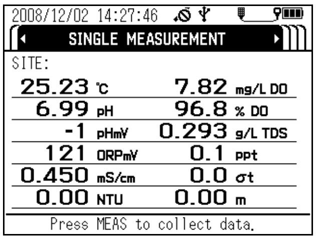
Used memory
0 Data
Available memory
10000 Data

3.5.4 Checking the calibration record

Follow the steps below to check the latest calibration history.

1. **Press and hold down the control unit's POWER key for about 3 seconds to turn the power ON.**

   The "MEASUREMENT" screen appears after about 10 seconds.



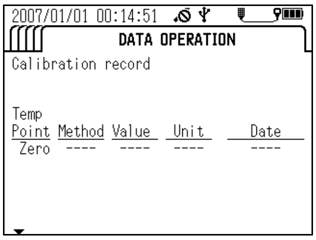
```
2008/12/02 14:27:46
SINGLE MEASUREMENT
SITE:
 25.23 ℃        7.82 mg/L DO
  6.99 pH       96.8 % DO
    -1 pHmV    0.293 g/L TDS
   121 ORPmV     0.1 ppt
 0.450 mS/cm     0.0 σt
  0.00 NTU      0.00 m
Press MEAS to collect data.
```

Note

The operation keys are designed to operate using the pad of a finger, sharp objects can tear the control unit cover damaging the operation keys.

2. **Press the right (▷) key 3 times to display the "DATA OPERATION" screen.**
3. **Press the down (▽) key to move the cursor to "Calibration record", then press the ENTER key.**

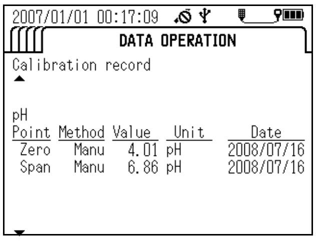
   The latest calibration record is displayed.



```
2007/01/01 00:14:51
DATA OPERATION
Calibration record

Temp
Point Method Value  Unit      Date
 Zero  ----   ----  ----      ----
```

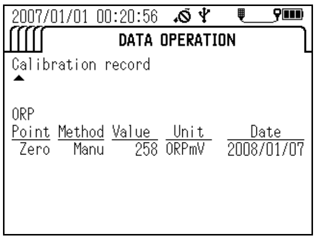
▽



```
2007/01/01 00:17:09
DATA OPERATION
Calibration record

pH
Point Method Value  Unit      Date
 Zero   Manu  4.01 pH     2008/07/16
 Span   Manu  6.86 pH     2008/07/16
```

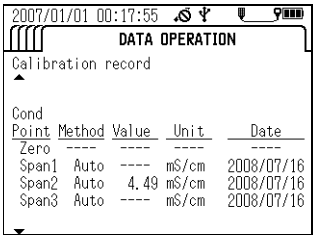
▽



```
2007/01/01 00:20:56
DATA OPERATION
Calibration record

ORP
Point Method Value  Unit      Date
 Zero   Manu   258 ORPmV  2008/01/07
```

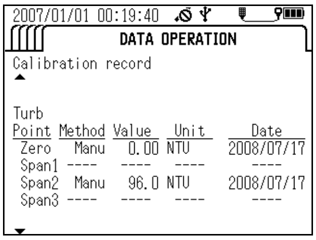
▽



```
2007/01/01 00:17:55
DATA OPERATION
Calibration record

Cond
Point Method Value  Unit      Date
 Zero  ----   ----  ----      ----
 Span1  Auto  ---- mS/cm  2008/07/16
 Span2  Auto  4.49 mS/cm  2008/07/16
 Span3  Auto  ---- mS/cm  2008/07/16
```

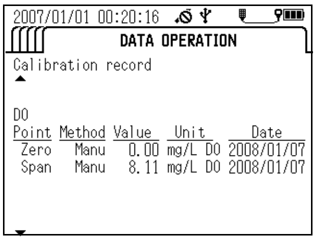
▽



```
2007/01/01 00:19:40
DATA OPERATION
Calibration record

Turb
Point Method Value  Unit      Date
 Zero   Manu  0.00 NTU    2008/07/17
 Span1 ----   ----  ----      ----
 Span2  Manu  96.0 NTU    2008/07/17
 Span3 ----   ----  ----      ----
```

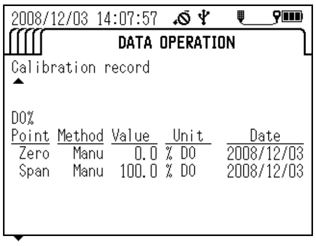
▽



```
2007/01/01 00:20:16
DATA OPERATION
Calibration record

DO
Point Method Value  Unit      Date
 Zero   Manu  0.00 mg/L DO 2008/01/07
 Span   Manu  8.11 mg/L DO 2008/01/07
```

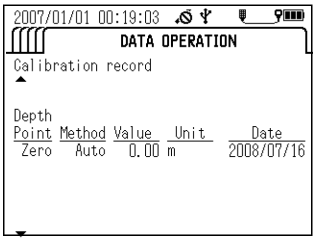
▽



```
2008/12/03 14:07:57
DATA OPERATION
Calibration record

DO%
Point Method Value  Unit      Date
 Zero   Manu   0.0 % DO   2008/12/03
 Span   Manu 100.0 % DO   2008/12/03
```

▽



```
2007/01/01 00:19:03
DATA OPERATION
Calibration record

Depth
Point Method Value  Unit      Date
 Zero   Auto  0.00 m      2008/07/16
```

3.5.5 GPS data operations

The menu for GPS data operations appears on the display to which the GPS unit is mounted.

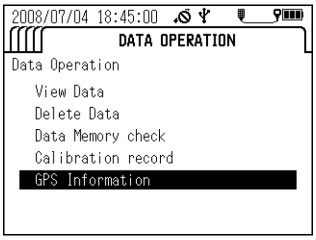
● GPS information

Follow the steps below to display acquired GPS information.

Note

Turning the power OFF erases the GPS information.

1. **Press the right (▷) key to switch the display to the "DATA OPERATION" screen.**
2. **the down (▽) key to move the cursor to "GPS Information", then press the ENTER key.**



2008/07/04 18:45:00

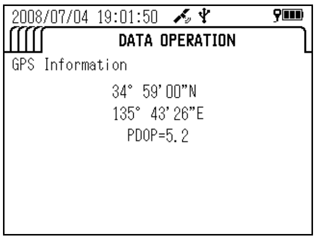
DATA OPERATION

Data Operation

View Data
Delete Data
Data Memory check
Calibration record
GPS Information

The last GPS information acquired is displayed.

● When received data exists



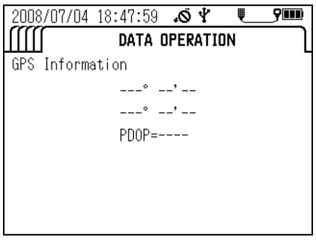
2008/07/04 19:01:50

DATA OPERATION

GPS Information

34° 59’00”N
135° 43’26”E
PDOP=5.2

● When no received data exists



2008/07/04 18:47:59

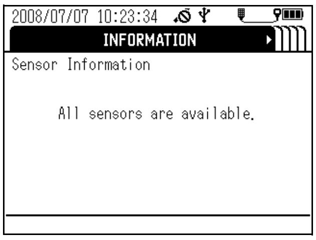
DATA OPERATION

GPS Information

---° --’--
---° --’--
PDOP=----

3.6 Sensor information

1. **Press and hold down the control unit's POWER key for about 3 seconds to turn the power ON.**
   The "MEASUREMENT" screen appears after about 10 seconds.
2. **Press the left (◁) key once to display the "INFORMATION" screen.**
   The "Sensor Information" screen displays the sensor probe's status.
   - When the sensor probe is normal, the display below appears.



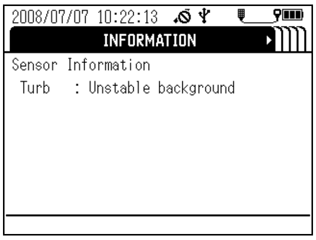
2008/07/07 10:23:34

INFORMATION

Sensor Information

All sensors are available.

- When there is a sensor probe problem, individual measurement parameters generate messages such as the one shown below. Follow the troubleshooting information to remove the problem before continuing to operate the system.



2008/07/07 10:22:13

INFORMATION

Sensor Information

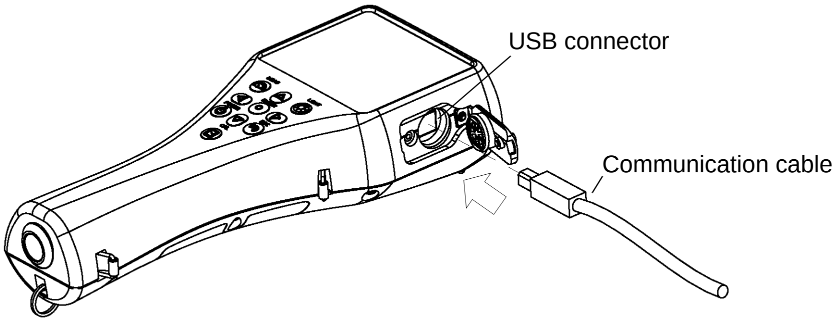
Turb : Unstable background

3.7 USB communication

The separately-sold, dedicated PC connection cable comes with data collection software. This software allows data to be downloaded from the control unit in CSV format.

This section contains instructions for communication commands used for USB communication.

● Connecting the cable



Dedicated cable

Part name: Communication cable (with data collection software)

Part no.: 3200174823

● Cautions when using USB communication

Take care to observe the following when using USB communication.

- Use the dedicated cable (with data collection software) or a commercially-available USB cable (A-B type) to connect to a PC.
- Be sure to match the transmission format on the control unit and the computer.
  The control unit uses the following transmission format:

Baud rate:	19200 bps
Number of stop bits:	1 bit
Data bit length:	8 bits
Parity:	None
Flow control:	None

Tip

If the transmission formats do not match, a communication error occurs and USB communication will not function normally. After changing the transmission format, restart the control unit and the computer.

- If received data is not sent back or an error occurs after a data request has been sent, adjust the program configuration so that it allows a little waiting time before a data request is sent again. This will enable more stable communication.
- The unit does not use DCD, CTS, or DSR signals. Take care of this when creating programs.

3.7.1 Communication settings

Baud rate:	19200 bps
Number of stop bits:	1 bit
Data bit length:	8 bits
Parity:	None
Flow control:	None

3.7.2 Commands

Instant data requests

Request command format

#	RD	@	XX	[CR]	[LF]
1	2	3	4		

1	Header	1 character
2	Command	2 characters
3	Delimiter character	1 character
4	Frame check sequence (FCS)	2 characters

The two ASCII-code characters created by converting the 8 bits of data created by successively combining the value of each character from # through @ in an exclusive OR (XOR) operation with the value of the next character.

Example: #RD@

(1)	0	XOR	35	(ASCII code of # symbol)	⇒	35
(2)	35	XOR	82	(ASCII code of R)	⇒	113
(3)	113	XOR	68	(ASCII code of D)	⇒	53
(4)	53	XOR	64	(ASCII code of @ symbol)	⇒	117 (decimal) ↓ 75 (hex) ↓ Sets "75".

Example: 35 XOR 82 operation

35 in binary	⇒	0	0	1	0	0	0	1	1		
82 in binary	⇒	0	1	0	1	0	0	1	0		
XOR result		0	1	1	1	0	0	0	1	⇒	113 (decimal)

Note: Set "XX" if you do not want to test for communication frame errors with FCS.

Response format

#	RD	AAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAA	X	X	XXXX	XX	X	X	XXXXX	X
1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11

XX	X	X	XXXXX	X	XX	X	X	XXXXX	X	XX	X	X	XXXXX	X
12	13	14	15	16	17	18	19	20	21	22	23	24	25	26
XX	X	X	XXXXX	X	XX	X	X	XXXXX	X	XX	X	X	XXXXX	X
27	28	29	30	31	32	33	34	35	36	37	38	39	40	41

XX	X	X	XXXXX	X	XX	X	X	XXXXX	X	XX	X	X	XXXXX	X
42	43	44	45	46	47	48	49	50	51	52	53	54	55	56

XX	X	X	XXXXX	X	XX	X	X	XXXXX	X	XX	X	X	XXXXX	X
57	58	59	60	61	62	63	64	65	66	67	68	69	70	71

XX	XX	XX	XX	XX	XX	XX	XX	XX	X	X	XXX	XX	XX	X	X	@	XX	[CR]	[LF]
72	73	74	75	76	77	78	79	80	81	82	83	84	85	86	87	88	89		

1	Header		1 character
2	Command		2 characters
3	Site name	Upper- and lowercase letters, numbers, periods (.) hyphens (-) and spaces ( )	20 characters
4	Probe status	(3) Status code	1 character
5	Probe error	(4) Status error code	1 character
6	Unused		4 characters
7	Parameter 1 code	(1) Parameter code	2 characters
8	Parameter 1 status	(5) Parameter status code	1 character
9	Parameter 1 error	(6) Parameter error code	1 character
10	Parameter 1 data	5 characters including decimal point, right-justified with blanks filled	5 characters
11	Parameter 1 unit	(2) Unit code	1 character
12	Parameter 2 code	(1) Parameter code	2 characters
13	Parameter 2 status	(5) Parameter status code	1 character
14	Parameter 2 error	(6) Parameter error code	1 character
15	Parameter 2 data	5 characters including decimal point, right-justified with blanks filled	5 characters
16	Parameter 2 unit	(2) Unit code	1 character
17	Parameter 3 code	(1) Parameter code	2 characters
18	Parameter 3 status	(5) Parameter status code	1 character
19	Parameter 3 error	(6) Parameter error code	1 character
20	Parameter 3 data	5 characters including decimal point, right-justified with blanks filled	5 characters
21	Parameter 3 unit	(2) Unit code	1 character
22	Parameter 4 code	(1) Parameter code	2 characters
23	Parameter 4 status	(5) Parameter status code	1 character
24	Parameter 4 error	(6) Parameter error code	1 character
25	Parameter 4 data	5 characters including decimal point, right-justified with blanks filled	5 characters
26	Parameter 4 unit	(2) Unit code	1 character
27	Parameter 5 code	(1) Parameter code	2 characters
28	Parameter 5 status	(5) Parameter status code	1 character
29	Parameter 5 error	(6) Parameter error code	1 character
30	Parameter 5 data	5 characters including decimal point, right-justified with blanks filled	5 characters
31	Parameter 5 unit	(2) Unit code	1 character
32	Parameter 6 code	(1) Parameter code	2 characters
33	Parameter 6 status	(5) Parameter status code	1 character
34	Parameter 6 error	(6) Parameter error code	1 character

35	Parameter 6 data	5 characters including decimal point, right-justified with blanks filled	5 characters
36	Parameter 6 unit	(2) Unit code	1 character
37	Parameter 7 code	(1) Parameter code	2 characters
38	Parameter 7 status	(5) Parameter status code	1 character
39	Parameter 7 error	(6) Parameter error code	1 character
40	Parameter 7 data	5 characters including decimal point, right-justified with blanks filled	5 characters
41	Parameter 7 unit	(2) Unit code	1 character
42	Parameter 8 code	(1) Parameter code	2 characters
43	Parameter 8 status	(5) Parameter status code	1 character
44	Parameter 8 error	(6) Parameter error code	1 character
45	Parameter 8 data	5 characters including decimal point, right-justified with blanks filled	5 characters
46	Parameter 8 unit	(2) Unit code	1 character
47	Parameter 9 code	(1) Parameter code	2 characters
48	Parameter 9 status	(5) Parameter status code	1 character
49	Parameter 9 error	(6) Parameter error code	1 character
50	Parameter 9 data	5 characters including decimal point, right-justified with blanks filled	5 characters
51	Parameter 9 unit	(2) Unit code	1 character
52	Parameter 10 code	(1) Parameter code	2 characters
53	Parameter 10 status	(5) Parameter status code	1 character
54	Parameter 10 error	(6) Parameter error code	1 character
55	Parameter 10 data	5 characters including decimal point, right-justified with blanks filled	5 characters
56	Parameter 10 unit	(2) Unit code	1 character
57	Parameter 11 code	(1) Parameter code	2 characters
58	Parameter 11 status	(5) Parameter status code	1 character
59	Parameter 11 error	(6) Parameter error code	1 character
60	Parameter 11 data	5 characters including decimal point, right-justified with blanks filled	5 characters
61	Parameter 11 unit	(2) Unit code	1 character
62	Parameter 12 code	(1) Parameter code	2 characters
63	Parameter 12 status	(5) Parameter status code	1 character
64	Parameter 12 error	(6) Parameter error code	1 character
65	Parameter 12 data	5 characters including decimal point, right-justified with blanks filled	5 characters
66	Parameter 12 unit	(2) Unit code (6) Parameter error code	1 character
67	Parameter 13 code	(1) Parameter code	2 characters
68	Parameter 13 status	(5) Parameter status code	1 character
69	Parameter 13 error	(6) Parameter error code	1 character
70	Parameter 13 data	5 characters including decimal point, right-justified with blanks filled	5 characters
71	Parameter 13 unit	(2) Unit code	1 character
72	Year	00 to 99	2 characters

73	Month	01 to 12	2 characters
74	Day	01 to 31	2 characters
75	Hour	00 to 23	2 characters
76	Minute	00 to 59	2 characters
77	Second	00 to 59	2 characters
78	Longitude (degrees)	00 to 90 or "--" (no GPS data)	2 characters
79	Longitude (minutes)	00 to 59 or "--" (no GPS data)	2 characters
80	Longitude (seconds)	00 to 59 or "--" (no GPS data)	2 characters
81	Unused	1 character	1 character
82	North latitude/South latitude	N: North; S: South	1 character
83	Latitude (degrees)	000 to 180 or "---" (no GPS data)	3 characters
84	Latitude (minutes)	00 to 59 or "--" (no GPS data)	2 characters
85	Latitude (seconds)	00 to 59 or "--" (no GPS data)	2 characters
86	Unused		1 character
87	East longitude/West longitude	E: East; W: West	1 character
88	Delimiter character		1 character
89	Frame check sequence (FCS)		2 characters

Memory data requests

Request command format

#	RM	X	X	AAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAA	XX	XX	XX	@	XX	[CR]	[LF]
1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10		

1	Header		1 character
2	Command		2 characters
3	Data specification*1	0: Start search; 1: Next data item; 2: Previous data item; 3: Request same data again	1 character
4	Search method specification	0: All data; 1: Site search; 2: Date search	1 character
5	Search site*2	Upper- and lowercase letters, numbers, periods (.) hyphens (-) and spaces ( )	20 characters
6	Search year*3	00 to 99	2 characters
7	Search month*3	01 to 12	2 characters
8	Search day*3	01 to 31	2 characters
9	Delimiter character		1 character
10	Frame check sequence (FCS)		2 characters

*1: When sending the RM command, first send 0 [Start search], then 1 [Next data item], 2 [Previous data item] or 3 [Request same data again].

*2: [Search site] is only needed when [Site search] is specified as the search method. If another search method is specified, fill this field with spaces.

*3: [Search year], [Search month] and [Search day] are only needed when [Date search] is specified as the search method. If another search method is specified, fill this field with spaces.

- **Response format**

(when data exists)

```
#    RM   AAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAA   XX   X    X    XXXXX   X
1    2    3                      4    5    6    7       8

XX   X    X    XXXXX   X    XX   X    X    XXXXX   X    XX   X    X    XXXXX  X
9    10   11   12      13   14   15   16   17      18   19   20   21   22     23

XX   X    X    XXXXX   X    XX   X    X    XXXXX   X    XX   X    X    XXXXX  X
24   25   26   27      28   29   30   31   32      33   34   35   36   37     38

XX   X    X    XXXXX   X    XX   X    X    XXXXX   X    XX   X    X    XXXXX  X
39   40   41   42      43   44   45   46   47      48   49   50   51   52     53

XX   X    X    XXXXX   X    XX   X    X    XXXXX   X    XX   X    X    XXXXX  X
54   55   56   57      58   59   60   61   62      63   64   65   66   67     68

XX  XX  XX  XX  XX  XX  XX  XX  XX  X   X   XXX  XX  XX  X   X   @   XX  [CR]  [LF]
69  70  71  72  73  74  75  76  77  78  79  80   81  82  83  84  85  86
```

1	Header		1 character
2	Command		2 characters
3	Site name	Upper- and lowercase letters, numbers, periods (.) hyphens (-) and spaces ( )	20 characters
4	Parameter 1 code	(1) Parameter code	2 characters
5	Parameter 1 selection	0: No selection; 1: Selection made	1 character
6	Parameter 1 error	(6) Parameter error code	1 character
7	Parameter 1 data	5 characters including decimal point, right-justified with blanks filled	5 characters
8	Parameter 1 unit	(2) Unit code	1 character
9	Parameter 2 code	(1) Parameter code	2 characters
10	Parameter 2 selection	0: No selection; 1: Selection made	1 character
11	Parameter 2 error	(6) Parameter error code	1 character
12	Parameter 2 data	5 characters including decimal point, right-justified with blanks filled	5 characters
13	Parameter 2 unit	(2) Unit code	1 character
14	Parameter 3 code	(1) Parameter code	2 characters
15	Parameter 3 selection	0: No selection; 1: Selection made	1 character
16	Parameter 3 error	(6) Parameter error code	1 character
17	Parameter 3 data	5 characters including decimal point, right-justified with blanks filled	5 characters
18	Parameter 3 unit	(2) Unit code	1 character
19	Parameter 4 code	(1) Parameter code	2 characters
20	Parameter 4 selection	0: No selection; 1: Selection made	1 character

21	Parameter 4 error	(6) Parameter error code	1 character
22	Parameter 4 data	5 characters including decimal point, right-justified with blanks filled	5 characters
23	Parameter 4 unit	(2) Unit code	1 character
24	Parameter 5 code	(1) Parameter code	2 characters
25	Parameter 5 selection	0: No selection; 1: Selection made	1 character
26	Parameter 5 error	(6) Parameter error code	1 character
27	Parameter 5 data	5 characters including decimal point, right-justified with blanks filled	5 characters
28	Parameter 5 unit	(2) Unit code	1 character
29	Parameter 6 code	(1) Parameter code	2 characters
30	Parameter 6 selection	0: No selection; 1: Selection made	1 character
31	Parameter 6 error	(6) Parameter error code	1 character
32	Parameter 6 data	5 characters including decimal point, right-justified with blanks filled	5 characters
33	Parameter 6 unit	(2) Unit code	1 character
34	Parameter 7 code	(1) Parameter code	2 characters
35	Parameter 7 selection	0: No selection; 1: Selection made	1 character
36	Parameter 7 error	(6) Parameter error code	1 character
37	Parameter 7 data	5 characters including decimal point, right-justified with blanks filled	5 characters
38	Parameter 7 unit	(2) Unit code	1 character
39	Parameter 8 code	(1) Parameter code	2 characters
40	Parameter 8 selection	0: No selection; 1: Selection made	1 character
41	Parameter 8 error	(6) Parameter error code	1 character
42	Parameter 8 data	5 characters including decimal point, right-justified with blanks filled	5 characters
43	Parameter 8 unit	(2) Unit code	1 character
44	Parameter 9 code	(1) Parameter code	2 characters
45	Parameter 9 selection	0: No selection; 1: Selection made	1 character
46	Parameter 9 error	(6) Parameter error code	1 character
47	Parameter 9 data	5 characters including decimal point, right-justified with blanks filled	5 characters
48	Parameter 9 unit	(2) Unit code	1 character
49	Parameter 10 code	(1) Parameter code	2 characters
50	Parameter 10 selection	0: No selection; 1: Selection made	1 character
51	Parameter 10 error	(6) Parameter error code	1 character
52	Parameter 10 data	5 characters including decimal point, right-justified with blanks filled	5 characters
53	Parameter 10 unit	(2) Unit code	1 character
54	Parameter 11 code	(1) Parameter code	2 characters
55	Parameter 11 selection	0: No selection; 1: Selection made	1 character
56	Parameter 11 error	(6) Parameter error code	1 character
57	Parameter 11 data	5 characters including decimal point, right-justified with blanks filled	5 characters
58	Parameter 11 unit	(2) Unit code	1 character
59	Parameter 12 code	(1) Parameter code	2 characters

60	Parameter 12 selection	0: No selection; 1: Selection made	1 character
61	Parameter 12 error	(6) Parameter error code	1 character
62	Parameter 12 data	5 characters including decimal point, right-justified with blanks filled	5 characters
63	Parameter 12 unit	(2) Unit code	1 character
64	Parameter 13 code	(1) Parameter code	2 characters
65	Parameter 13 selection	0: No selection; 1: Selection made	1 character
66	Parameter 13 error	(6) Parameter error code	1 character
67	Parameter 13 data	5 characters including decimal point, right-justified with blanks filled	5 characters
68	Parameter 13 unit	(2) Unit code	1 character
69	Year	00 to 99	2 characters
70	Month	01 to 12	2 characters
71	Day	01 to 31	2 characters
72	Hour	00 to 23	2 characters
73	Minute	00 to 59	2 characters
74	Second	00 to 5	2 characters
75	Longitude (degrees)	00 to 90 or "--" (no GPS data)	2 characters
76	Longitude (minutes)	00 to 59 or "--" (no GPS data)	2 characters
77	Longitude (seconds)	00 to 59 or "--" (no GPS data)	2 characters
78	Unused		1 character
79	North latitude/South latitude	N: North; S: South	1 character
80	Latitude (degrees)	000 to 180 or "---" (no GPS data)	3 characters
81	Latitude (minutes)	00 to 59 or "--" (no GPS data)	2 characters
82	Latitude (seconds)	00 to 59 or "--" (no GPS data)	2 characters
83	Unused		1 character
84	East longitude/West longitude	E: East; W: West	1 character
85	Delimiter character		1 character
86	Frame check sequence (FCS)		2 characters

When no data exists, or memory is at capacity)

#	RM	@	XX	[CR]	[LF]
1	2	3	4		

1	Header	1 character
2	Command	2 characters
3	Delimiter character\	1 character
4	Frame check sequence (FCS)	2 characters

Memory data count request

Request command format

#	RN	@	XX	[CR]	[LF]
1	2	3	4		

1	Header	1 character
2	Command	2 characters
3	Delimiter character\	1 character
4	Frame check sequence (FCS)	2 characters

Response format

#	RN	XXXXX	@	XX	[CR]	[LF]
1	2	3	4	5		

1	Header		1 character
2	Command		2 characters
3	Total data count	0 to 10000	5 characters
4	Delimiter character\		1 character
5	Frame check sequence (FCS)		2 characters

Command parse failure response

#	??	X	XX	X	@	XX	[CR]	[LF]
1	2	3	4	5	6	7		

1	Header	1 character
2	Command	2 characters
3	Command parse failure reason[*4]	1 character
4	Received command[*5]	2 characters
5	(3) Status code for probe status[*5]	1 character
6	Delimiter character	1 character
7	Frame check sequence (FCS)	2 characters

*4: List of command parse failure reasons

1: Frame length error
2: FCS mismatch
3: Undefined command
4: Data error
5: Data out of range
6: No "@" delimiter character
7: No "#" header character
8: No [Carriage return] + [Line feed] footer
9: Cannot accept command in this timing.

*5: Only set for command parse failure reason 9, [Cannot accept command in this timing]. Otherwise this field is filled with spaces.

4 Maintenance

Tip

HORIBA recommends regular manufacturer maintenance checks in order to ensure a long product life.

4.1 Routine care

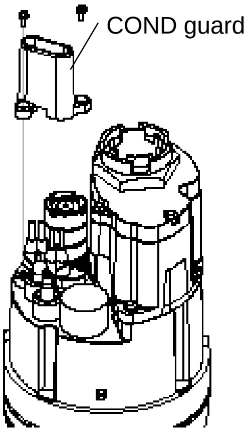
● After measurement

1. **Press and hold down the control unit's POWER key for about 3 seconds to turn the power OFF.**

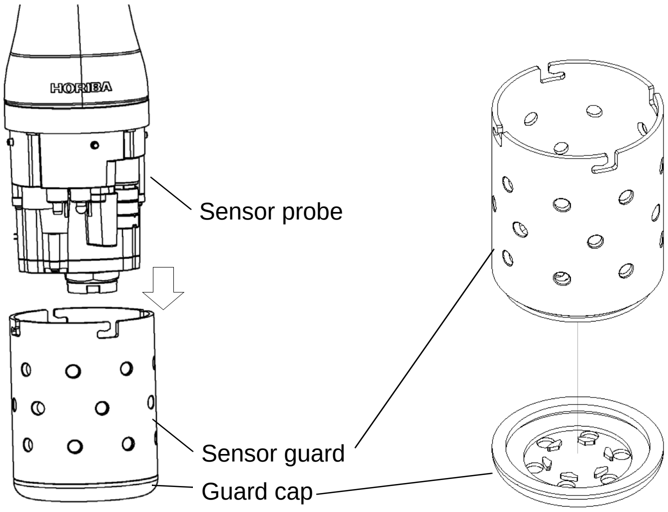
Note

The operation keys are designed to operate using the pad of a finger, sharp objects can tear the control unit cover damaging the operation keys.

2. **Remove the sensor guard, and clean the sensor with tap water.**
3. **Clean the turbidity sensor with the cleaning brush provided.**
4. **Remove the two screws securing the COND guard, and the COND guard itself, and use a test tube brush to gently remove any dirt from the electrical conductivity electrode.**



5. **Wipe off any dirt with a soft cloth. If parts are very dirty, clean them with neutral detergent, then rinse them. If parts are contaminated by oil, wipe it off with a soft cloth soaked in alcohol.**
6. **Put the COND guard back in place.**
7. **Remove the sensor guard's guard cap, wash off any dirt with tap water, then put the guard cap back in place.**



4.2 Every 2 months maintenance

● Dissolved oxygen (DO) sensor

Note

- **The DO sensor's internal solution is potassium chloride (KCl). Although KCl is harmless, protective equipment such as gloves and goggles should be worn when working with it.**
- **Internal solution can be disposed of down a sink.**

- Replace the membrane cap.
- Polish the gold and silver electrodes when replacing the membrane cap.
  The gold electrode does not need to be polished if it is not dirty.

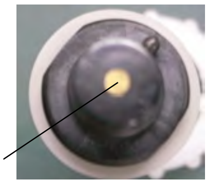
● Silver electrode

Polish a silver electrode part with sandpaper (#500) and then wash metal electrode parts with water.

Silver electrode

● Gold electrode

Polish a gold electrode part with sandpaper (#8000) and then wash metal electrode parts with water.



Gold electrode

Replace a membrane cap after clean metal electrodes parts.

Refer to “ 4.5 Replacing the membrane cap ” (page 87).

● Reference electrode

Note

- **The pH reference internal solution is potassium chloride (KCl). Although KCl is harmless, protective equipment such as gloves and goggles should be worn when working with it.**
- **Internal solution can be disposed of down a sink.**

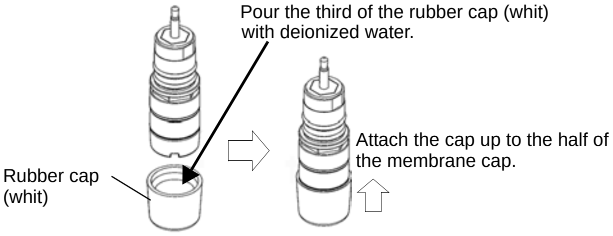
1. **Remove the rubber liquid junction plug from the reference electrode and dispose of the internal solution.**
2. **To prevent air entering, fill the reference electrode to the brim with its internal solution (No. 330).**
3. **Put the rubber liquid junction plug back in place.**

   If the rubber liquid junction plug is dirty, replace the liquid junctions (set of two; No. 9037005100). The reference electrode's internal solution will spill when replacing the liquid junctions. Rinse parts with tap water and dry them with a soft cloth.

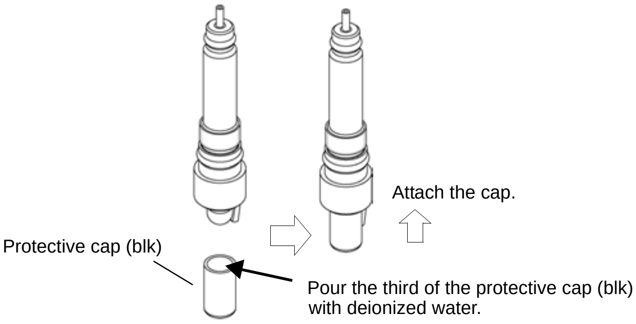
4.3 Storage

● Short-term (under 2 months) storage

- Before storing the DO sensor, pour the third of the rubber cap (whit) provided with deionized water and cover the DO sensor with them.



- Before storing the pH sensor, pour the third of the protective cap (blk) provided with deionized water and cover the pH sensor with them.



Note

Before measuerment, remove the rubber cap (whit) and the protective cap (blk).

● Long-term (2 months or more) storage

- Remove a membrane cap from DO sensor, and wash the gold electrode and silver electrode parts with water. Wipe off the moisture before storing DO sensor in the pack.
- Prevent internal solution seeping out of the reference chip by taping over the point of seepage with electrical tape.
- Before storing the system, remove the control unit's batteries to prevent battery leakage.

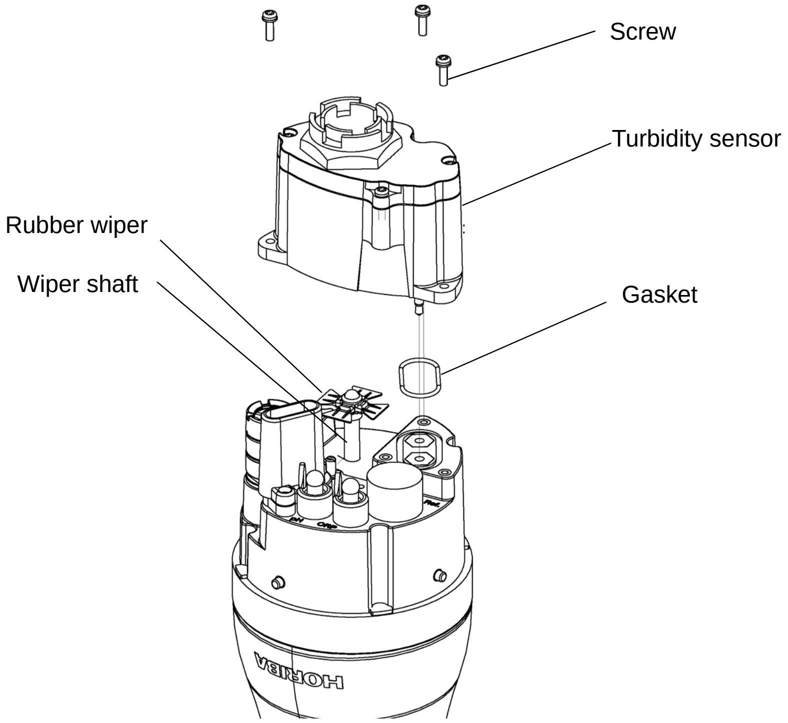
4.4 Replacing the turbidity sensor

1. **Press and hold down the control unit's POWER key for about 3 seconds to turn the power OFF.**

Note

The operation keys are designed to operate using the pad of a finger, sharp objects can tear the control unit cover damaging the operation keys.

2. **Remove the sensor guard, and clean the sensor probe with tap water.**
3. **Use dry air to blow away and dry off any moisture.**
4. **Remove the three screws holding the turbidity sensor by using No. 2 Phillips head screwdriver.**
5. **Pull out the turbidity sensor horizontally.**
6. **Remove the rubber wiper and gasket, and use a soft cloth to wipe off any dirt from the wiper shaft and turbidity sensor attachment. If parts are very dirty, use a soft cloth soaked in neutral detergent or alcohol.**
7. **Replace the rubber wiper and gasket with new ones. Coat the gasket with a thin layer of grease (No. 3014017718).**
8. **Attach the new turbidity sensor and fasten it in place with the three screws.**
9. **Perform four-point calibration before using the sensor.**



4.5 Replacing the membrane cap

● Replacement procedure

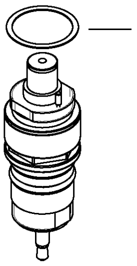
1. **Prepare the DO sensor.**
   - Take a DO sensor out of pack (newly purchasing).
   - Remove a DO sensor from the sensor probe (after use).

Newly purchasing

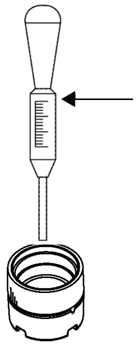
Undo a DO sensor from the sensor probe

   - Twist a membrane cap from DO sensor.
   - Wash the gold electrode and silver electrode parts with water.

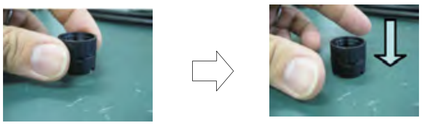
2. **Replace the silicone gasket with a new one.**



3. **Pour internal solution into a membrane cap with a dropper.**

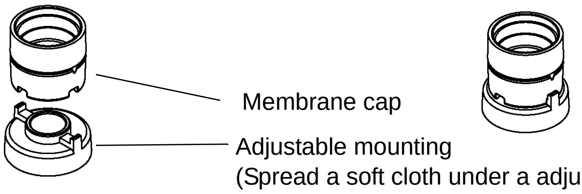


   - Check air bubbles in a membrane cap.



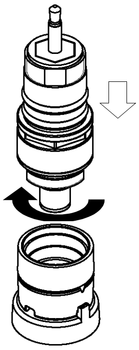
Pick a Cap up and drop it down, if there is air bubbles in internal solution of it.

4. **Set up a membrane cap on a adjustable mounting.**



(Spread a soft cloth under a adjustable mounting)

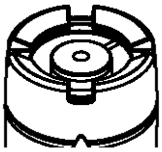
5. Attach a membrane cap to DO sensor



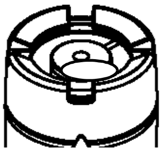
Twist a DO sensor
with holding a membrane cap tight.

6. Check for membrane surface

Check air bubbles in a membrane cap.



Good: Limited air bubbles



NG: Air bubbles of more than 5 mm in diameter

- ● NG → Replace a membrane cap again.
- ● Check that span calibration can be performed.

If the membrane cap is not attached correctly, sensitivity may be lost or response speed may decrease.

4.6 Troubleshooting

Note

If the sensor probe is removed while the control unit is indicating an error, errors cannot be canceled by using the ESC key. Either reconnect the sensor probe or restart the control unit.

4.6.1 Error displays

Error	Cause	Solution
Probe ADC error	Internal IC failure	Contact your nearest sales outlet to have the sensor probe repaired.
Probe EEPROM error/Factory	Internal IC failure	Turn the power OFF, then restart the system. If the error persists, initialize the system from the "System" menu. If the error still persists, contact your nearest sales outlet to have the sensor probe repaired.
Probe EEPROM error/User	Internal IC failure	Turn the power OFF, then restart the system. If the error persists, initialize the system from the "System" menu. If the error still persists, contact your nearest sales outlet to have the sensor probe repaired.
Turbidity sensor light source error	Turbidity sensor light source failure	Turn the power OFF, wipe off any water droplets on the probe, then remove the turbidity sensor. Check there are no water droplets around the turbidity sensor connector, then mount the sensor again. If the error persists, replace the turbidity sensor.
Turbidity sensor wiper motor error	The turbidity sensor wiper is not operating.	Press the ESC key. Check there are no obstacles near the wiper, then perform the measurement again. If the error persists, the motor will need to be replaced. Contact your nearest sales outlet to have the sensor probe repaired.
Probe capacitor error	Low battery voltage or internal IC failure	Turn the power OFF. Replace the display's batteries. If the error persists, contact your nearest sales outlet to have the sensor probe repaired.
Probe EEPROM error	Internal IC failure	Press the ESC key, then redo the operation. If the error persists, turn the power OFF, then restart the system (the current data will not be saved). If the error still persists, contact your nearest sales outlet to have the display repaired.
Probe board error	Probe board failure	Turn the power OFF. Contact your nearest sales outlet to have the sensor probe repaired.

Error	Cause	Solution
Zero-point calibration error	pH sensor 1. The pH standard solution is contaminated. 2. The pH-responsive membrane is dirty. 3. The concentration of the reference electrode's internal solution has changed. 4. The pH-responsive membrane is torn.	pH sensor 1. Replace the standard solution with new solution. 2. Clean the pH-responsive membrane. 3. Refil the reference electrode's internal solution. 4. Replace the sensor.
	COND sensor 1. There is moisture on the sensor. 2. The sensor is dirty. 3. The COND sensor is broken.	COND sensor 1. Blow-dry the moisture off the sensor. 2. Clean the sensor. 3. Contact your nearest sales outlet.
	TURB sensor 1. There are air bubbles on the cell. 2. The cell window is dirty. 3. The sensor is being affected by ambient light. 4. The solution is dirty. 5. The TURB sensor has failed.	TURB sensor 1. Shake the sensor probe vigorously. 2. Clean the cell window. 3. Calibrate using the calibration cup provided. 4. Replace the solution with new solution. 5. Replace the TURB sensor.
	DO sensor 1. There are air bubbles in the internal solution. 2. The DO sensor has failed.	DO sensor 1. Replace the diaphragm with a new one, and fill the DO sensor with new internal solution. 2. Replace the DO sensor.
	Water depth sensor 1. The water depth sensor is dirty. 2. The water depth sensor has failed.	Water depth sensor 1. Clean the water depth sensor. 2. Contact your nearest sales outlet.

Error	Cause	Solution
Span calibration error	pH sensor 1. The pH standard solution is contaminated. 2. The pH-responsive membrane is dirty. 3. The concentration of the reference electrode's internal solution has changed. 4. The pH-responsive membrane is torn.	pH sensor 1. Replace the standard solution with new solution. 2. Clean the pH-responsive membrane. 3. Refil the reference electrode's internal solution. 4. Replace the sensor.
	ORP sensor 1. The ORP standard solution is contaminated. 2. The ORP electrode is dirty. 3. The concentration of the reference electrode's internal solution has changed. 4. The ORP electrode has failed.	ORP sensor 1. Replace the standard solution with new solution. 2. Clean the ORP electrode. 3. Refil the reference electrode's internal solution. 4. Replace the ORP electrode.
	COND sensor 1. The calibration solution is not correct. 2. The sensor is dirty. 3. The COND sensor has failed.	COND sensor 1. Use the correct calibration solution for calibration. 2. Clean the sensor. 3. Contact your nearest sales outlet.
	TURB sensor 1. There are air bubbles on the cell. 2. The cell window is dirty. 3. The sensor is being affected by ambient light. 4. The solution is dirty. 5. The TURB sensor has failed.	TURB sensor 1. Shake the sensor probe vigorously. 2. Clean the cell window. 3. Calibrate using the calibration cup provided. 4. Replace the solution with new solution. 5. Replace the TURB sensor.
	DO sensor 1. The diaphragm is torn. 2. There are air bubbles in the internal solution. 3. The DO sensor has failed.	DO sensor 1. Replace the diaphragm with a new one, and fill the DO sensor with new internal solution. 2. Replace the diaphragm with a new one, and fill the DO sensor with new internal solution. 3. Replace the DO sensor.
	Temperature sensor The temperature sensor has failed.	Temperature sensor Contact your nearest sales outlet.
Calibration stability error	The calibration value of an individual parameter is not stable. 1. The sensor is dirty. 2. The sensor has not adjusted to the standard solution. 3. The temperature was unstable during calibration.	1. Clean the sensor. 2. Fill the transparent calibration cup with pH 4 standard solution, and wait for at least 20 minutes of conditioning before starting calibration. 3. Start calibration after the temperature has stabilized.
Turbidity calibration error	Error in turbidity measurement sequence	Turbidity calibration failed. Redo calibration after removing the displayed error.
Wet check	The cable connector is submerged.	Turn the power OFF and disconnect the cable connector. Wipe or blow-dry off all the water droplets on the probe. If the error persists, contact your nearest sales outlet to have the display and sensor probe repaired.
Power voltage error	The display's power board has failed.	This error could also be caused by poor cable contact. Turn the power OFF and disconnect the cable connector. Reconnect the connector and turn the power ON. If the error persists, contact your nearest sales outlet to have the display and sensor probe repaired.
Turbidity lamp power voltage error	The remaining battery level is low.	Turn the power OFF and replace the display's batteries with new ones.

Error	Cause	Solution
Display RTC error	The time display is incorrect.	Replace the coin battery.
Display FROM error	Internal IC failure	Contact your nearest sales outlet to have the control unit repaired.
Display EEPROM error	Internal IC failure	Contact your nearest sales outlet to have the control unit repaired.
Display save error	Insufficient memory space	Move data from the display, use the data operations screen to delete data, then redo the measurement.
Measurement sequence error	● When the measurement item is turbidity 1. The battery power is low. 2. The wiper is not operating normally. 3. The light source lamp is not lit. ● If items other than turbidity are also displayed 4. Board failure	1. Replace the batteries with new ones. 2. Check there are no obstacles near the wiper, then redo the measurement. If the error persists, the motor will need to be replaced. Contact your nearest sales outlet to have the sensor probe repaired. 3. Wipe off any water droplets on the probe, then remove the turbidity sensor. Check there are no water droplets around the turbidity sensor connector, then mount the sensor again. If the error persists, replace the turbidity sensor. 4. Contact your nearest sales outlet to have the sensor probe repaired.
Out of measurement range	The attempted measurement is outside the measurement range supported for that item.	The system must be used within its supported measurement ranges.
Last zero-point calibration invalid	pH sensor 1. The pH standard solution is contaminated. 2. The pH-responsive membrane is dirty. 3. The concentration of the reference electrode's internal solution has changed. 4. The pH-responsive membrane is torn.	pH sensor 1. Replace the standard solution with new solution. 2. Clean the pH-responsive membrane. 3. Refil the reference electrode's internal solution. 4. Replace the sensor.
	COND sensor 1. There is moisture on the sensor. 2. The sensor is dirty. 3. The COND sensor has failed.	COND sensor 1. Blow-dry the moisture off the sensor. 2. Clean the sensor. 3. Contact your nearest sales outlet.
	TURB sensor 1. There are air bubbles on the cell. 2. The cell window is dirty. 3. The sensor is being affected by ambient light. 4. The solution is dirty. 5. The TURB sensor has failed.	TURB sensor 1. Shake the sensor probe vigorously. 2. Clean the cell window. 3. Calibrate using the calibration cup provided. 4. Replace the solution with new solution. 5. Replace the TURB sensor.
	DO sensor 1. There are air bubbles in the internal solution. 2. The DO sensor has failed.	DO sensor 1. Replace the diaphragm with a new one, and fill the DO sensor with new internal solution. 2. Replace the DO sensor.
	Water depth sensor 1. The water depth sensor is dirty. 2. The water depth sensor has failed.	Water depth sensor 1. Clean the water depth sensor. 2. Contact your nearest sales outlet.
Out of measurement range	[See above.]	[See above.]
Last zero-point calibration invalid		

Error	Cause	Solution
Last span calibration invalid	pH sensor 1. The pH standard solution is contaminated. 2. The pH-responsive membrane is dirty. 3. The concentration of the reference electrode's internal solution has changed. 4. The pH-responsive membrane is torn.	pH sensor 1. Replace the standard solution with new solution. 2. Clean the pH-responsive membrane. 3. Refil the reference electrode's internal solution. 4. Replace the sensor.
	ORP sensor 1. The ORP standard solution is contaminated. 2. The ORP electrode is dirty. 3. The concentration of the reference electrode's internal solution has changed. 4. The ORP sensor glass is broken.	ORP sensor 1. Replace the standard solution with new solution. 2. Clean the ORP electrode. 3. Refil the reference electrode's internal solution. 4. Replace the sensor.
	COND sensor 1. The calibration solution is not correct. 2. The sensor is dirty. 3. The COND sensor has failed.	COND sensor 1. Use the correct calibration solution for calibration. 2. Clean the sensor. 3. Contact your nearest sales outlet.
	TURB sensor 1. There are air bubbles on the cell. 2. The cell window is dirty. 3. The sensor is being affected by ambient light. 4. The solution is dirty. 5. The TURB sensor has failed.	TURB sensor 1. Shake the sensor probe vigorously. 2. Clean the cell window. 3. Calibrate using the calibration cup provided. 4. Replace the solution with new solution. 5. Replace the TURB sensor.
	DO sensor 1. The diaphragm is torn. 2. There are air bubbles in the internal solution. 3. The DO sensor has failed.	DO sensor 1. Replace the diaphragm with a new one, and fill the DO sensor with new internal solution. 2. Replace the diaphragm with a new one, and fill the DO sensor with new internal solution. 3. Replace the DO sensor.
	Temperature sensor ● The temperature sensor has failed.	Temperature sensor ● Contact your nearest sales outlet.
Out of measurement range	[See above.]	[See above.]
Last zero-point calibration invalid		
Last span calibration invalid	The calibration value of an individual parameter is not stable. 1. The sensor is dirty. 2. The sensor has not adjusted to the standard solution. 3. The temperature was unstable during calibration.	1. Clean the sensors. 2. Fill the transparent calibration cup with pH 4 standard solution, and wait for at least 20 minutes of conditioning before starting calibration. 3. Start calibration after the temperature has stabilized.
Out of measurement range	[See above.]	[See above.]
Last zero-point calibration invalid		
Calibration value is factory default value.	Internal IC failure	Turn the power OFF, then restart the system. If the error persists, initialize the system from the "System" menu. If the error still persists, contact your nearest sales outlet to have the sensor probe repaired.

Error	Cause	Solution
Sample is unstable.	1. The concentration of the sample is unstable. 2. External light disturbance has affected the sensor. 3. Water has entered the turbidity sensor's connector.	1. Use a stirrer to agitate the sample during measurement. 2. Perform measurement away from direct sunlight. 3. Turn the power OFF, wipe off any water droplets on the probe, then remove the turbidity sensor. Check there are no water droplets around the turbidity sensor connector, then mount the sensor again. If the error persists, replace the turbidity sensor.

4.6.2 Error displays in sensor information

Error display	Cause	Solution
Measurement sequence error	Measurement sequence error	Turn the power OFF, then restart the system. If the error persists, have the probe repaired.
Out of measurement range	The measurement value is outside the measurement range.	Samples for measurement must be within the measurement range.
Last calibration invalid	The last calibration failed.	Redo calibration.
Calibration invalid	The calibration value is the factory default value.	Redo calibration.
Background unstable	The U-53 turbidity sensor is exposed to direct light.	Mount the guard cap and sensor guard and perform measurement away from direct sunlight.
	The turbidity value changed rapidly during measurement.	Measure a sample that has stable turbidity.

5 Specifications

Specification		Basic value	Model				
			U-51	U-52	U-52G	U-53	U-53G
Sensor probe	Measurement temperature range	–10°C to 55°C	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
	Maximum sensor outer diameter	Approx. 96 mm					
	Sensor length	Approx. 340 mm					
	Cable length	2 m (standard) 10 m/30 m (options)					
	Mass	Approx. 1800 g					
	Auto calibration function	Uses pH 4 standard solution.					
	Measurement depth	30 m max.	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
	Wet-part materials[*3]	PPS, glass, SUS316L, SUS304, FKM, PEEK, Q, titanium, FEP membrane, POM					
	Waterproofing standard	IP-68					
Control unit	Outer dimensions (W × D × H)	115 × 66 × 283 mm	✓	✓	—	✓	—
		115 × 66 × 335 mm	—	—	✓	—	✓
	Mass	Approx. 800 g	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
	LCD	320 × 240 mm graphic LCD (monochrome) with backlight	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
	Memory data items	10000	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
	Communication interface	USB peripheral	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
	Batteries	C-size dry cells (×4)	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
	Waterproofing standard	IP-67	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
	GPS unit	● Reception method (12 channel parallel) ● Measurement precision [With PDOP (high precision): 30 m or less (2 drms)]	—	—	✓	—	✓
	Estimated battery life[*1]	—	70 hours (no backlight)			500 measurements (no backlight)	
	Storage temperature range	–10°C to 60°C	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
	Ambient temperature range	–5°C to 45°C					

Specification		Basic value	Model				
			U-51	U-52	U-52G	U-53	U-53G
pH measurement Two calibration	Measurement method	Glass electrode method	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
	Range	pH 0 to 14					
	Resolution	0.01 pH					
	Precision[*2]	±0.1 pH					
Dissolved oxygen measurement ● Salinity conversion (0 to 70 PPT, automatic) ● Automatic temperature compensation	Measurement method	Polarographic method	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
	Film thickness	25 μm					
	Range	0 mg/L to 50.0 mg/L					
	Resolution	0.01 mg/L					
	Precision[*2]	0 mg/L to 20 mg/L: ±0.2 mg/L 20 mg/L to 50 mg/L: ±0.5 mg/L					
Electrical conductivity measurement ● Auto range ● Automatic temperature conversion (25°C)	Measurement method	Four-AC-electrode method	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
	Range	0 S/m to 10 S/m (0 mS/cm to 100 mS/cm)					
	Resolution	0.000 mS/cm to 0.999 mS/cm: 0.001 1.00 mS/cm to 9.99 mS/cm: 0.01 10.0 mS/cm to 99.9 mS/cm: 0.1 0.0 mS/m to 99.9 mS/m: 0.1 0.100 S/m to 0.999 S/m: 0.001 1.00 S/m to 9.99 S/m: 0.01					
	Precision[*2]	1% of full-scale (midpoint of two calibration points)					
Salinity measurement	Measurement method	Electrical conductivity conversion	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
	Range	0 PPT to 70 PPT (parts per thousand)					
	Resolution	0.1 PPT					
	Precision	±3 PPT					
TDS (total dissolved solid) measurement ● Conversion coefficient setting	Measurement method	Electrical conductivity conversion	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
	Range	0 g/L to 100 g/L					
	Resolution	0.1% of full-scale					
	Repeatability	±2 g/L					
	Precision	±5 g/L					
Seawater specific gravity measurement ● σt, σ0, σ15 display	Measurement method	Electrical conductivity conversion	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
	Range	0 σt to 50 σt					
	Resolution	0.1 σt					
	Precision	±5 σt					

Specification		Basic value	Model				
			U-51	U-52	U-52G	U-53	U-53G
Temperature measurement	Measurement method	Platinum temperature sensor	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
	Range	−10°C to 55°C					
	Resolution	0.01°C					
	Sensor	Platinum temperature sensor, JIS Class B (0.3 + 0.005 |t|)					
Turbidity measurement	Measurement method		–	LED forward 30° transmission/ scattering method		Tungsten lamp 90° transmission scattering method	
	Range			0 NTU to 800 NTU		0 NTU to 1000 NTU	
	Resolution			0.1 NTU		0.01 NTU	
	Precision[*2]			±5%of readout or ±1 NTU, whichever is larger		● ±0.5NTU (for 0 NTU to 10 NTU measurement range) ● 3% of readout or 1 NTU, whichever is larger (for 10 NTU to 1000 NTU measurement range)	
	Turbidity sensor wiper			–		✓	
Water depth measurement	Measurement method	Pressure method	–	–	✓	✓	✓
	Range	0 m to 30 m					
	Resolution	0.05 m					
	Precision[*2]	±0.3 m					
ORP (oxidation reduction potential) measurement	Measurement method	Platinum electrode method	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
	Range	−2000 ～ +2000 mV					
	Resolution	1 mV					
	Precision[*2]	±15 mV					

*1: Battery life is estimated under following conditions.
- Continuous operation
- Using batteries: C-size alkaline dry cells
- Ambient temperature of the control unit: 20°C or more
- Backlight off

*2: The precision is defined by measuring the standard solution in the following cases.
- Turbidity and conductivity: after four point calibration
- pH and DO: after two point calibration
- Water depth and ORP: after one point calibration

*3: Metallic parts are made of stainless steel. Immersing in seawater may erode metallic parts.

6 Reference

6.1 Consumable parts

Sensor

Name	Model	No.	Description
pH sensor	#7112	3014057312	Standard type pH sensor
pH sensor ToupH	#7113	3200170923	Tough glass type pH sensor
ORP sensor	#7313	3200170920	
DO sensor	#7543	3200170924	
Reference electrode	#7210	3200043582	
R bush unit	—	3200043587	Reference electrode liquid junction
TURB cell U-52	#7800	3200172803	For U-52/U-52G
TURB cell U-53	#7801	3200172800	For U-53/U-53G
Membrane cap	—	3200170194	For DO sensor

Standard solution and inner solution

Name	Model	No.	Description
pH 4 (For automatic calibration) 500 mL	#100-4	3200043638	Standard solution for auto calibration. Also used for manual pH span calibration.
pH 4 (For automatic calibration) 4 L	#140-4	3200174430	
pH 7 500 mL	#100-7	3200043637	Standard solution for pH zero-point calibration.
pH 9 500 mL	#100-9	3200043636	Standard solution for pH manual span calibration.
Powder for ORP standard solution 10 packs	#160-51	3200043618	For ORP calibration.
Powder for ORP standard solution 10 packs	#160-22	3200043617	
Inner solution for DO sensor, 50 mL	#306	3200170938	Internal solution for DO sensor.
Internal solution for pH, 250 mL	#330	3200043641	Supplementary internal solution for pH reference electrode.

Others

Name	Model	No.	Description
Silicone grease	—	3014017718	Silicone grease for coating sensor O-ring.
Sponge brush unit	—	3200169531	Brush for cleaning sensor probe.
O-ring set for reference electrode	—	3200169376	O-rings for reference electrode.
O-ring set for DO sensor	—	3200169426	O-rings for DO sensor.
Rubber cap set for sensor guard	—	3200169428	Rubber caps used between sensor guard and sensor probe.
O-ring set for pH and ORP sensor	—	3200169520	O-rings for pH and ORP sensors.
Wiper unit	—	3200169789	Rubber wiper for U-53/U-53G turbidity sensors.
Protective cap (blk) for pH sensor	—	3200175019	Cap attached to tip of pH sensor for sensor probe storage.
Rubber cap (whit) for DO sensor	—	3200175020	Cap attached to tip of DO sensor for sensor probe storage.

6.2 Options sold separately

Name	Model	No.	Description
Bag	U-5030	3200174772	Storage bag for sensor probes and flow cell. Can be carried in one hand.
Flow cell assy	—	3200156570	Used when collecting measurement samples by pump.
Probe guard	—	3200167002	Used for taking measurements in locations where there is a current or where there is a thick layer of sludge.
Communication cable	—	3200174823	A PC connection cable. Comes with data collection software.

6.3 pH measurement

6.3.1 Principle of pH measurement

U-50 series use the glass electrode method for pH measurements. The glass electrode method measures a potential difference between the glass film for pH and the reference electrode. For more information, refer to “JIS Z 8802 pH measurement method”.

6.3.2 Temperature compensation

The electromotive force generated by the glass electrode changes depending on the temperature of the solution.

Temperature compensation is used to compensate for the change in electromotive force caused by temperature.

This function does not compensate the change in pH caused by the temperature of the solution. When pH is to be measured, the temperature of the solution must be recorded along with that pH value, even if a pH meter has automatic temperature compensation function. If the solution temperature is not recorded, the results of the pH measurement may be meaningless.

6.3.3 Standard solutions

When measuring pH, the pH meter must be calibrated using standard solution. There are five kinds of standard solutions specified in “JIS Z 8802 pH measurement”. For normal measurement, two of standard solutions with pH of 4, 7, and 9 are sufficient to accurately calibrate the meter.

For standard solutions, refer to “JIS Z 8802 pH measurement”.

pH 4 standard solution: (Phthalate)	0.05 mol/L potassium hydrogen phthalate aqueous solution
pH 7 standard solutio: (Neutral phosphate)	0.025 mol/L potassium dihydrogenphosphate, 0.025 mol/L disodium hydrogenphosphate aqueous solution
pH 9 standard solution: (Borate)	0.01 mol/L sodium tetraborate aqueous solution

Table 2 pH values of pH standard solutions at various temperatures settings

Temp. (℃)	pH 4 standard solution Phthalate	pH 7 standard solution Neutral phosphate	pH 9 standard solution Borate
0	4.01	6.98	9.46
5	4.01	6.95	9.39
10	4.00	6.92	9.33
15	4.00	6.90	9.27
20	4.00	6.88	9.22
25	4.01	6.86	9.18
30	4.01	6.85	9.14
35	4.02	6.84	9.10
40	4.03	6.84	9.07
45	4.04	6.84	9.04

6.4 DO measurement

6.4.1 Principle of DO measurement

Dissolved oxygen (DO) refers to the amount of oxygen that is contained in water.

The concentration of dissolved oxygen is generally given as mg/L or as a percentage value (the dissolved oxygen saturation ratio).

Dissolved oxygen is essential for maintaining the self-purifying ability of rivers and seas and also for fish to live. The concentration of dissolved oxygen acts as an indicator of water quality. It is often measured when processing waste water and managing water quality. Fig. 1 provides an overview of the principles behind dissolved oxygen sensor measurement.

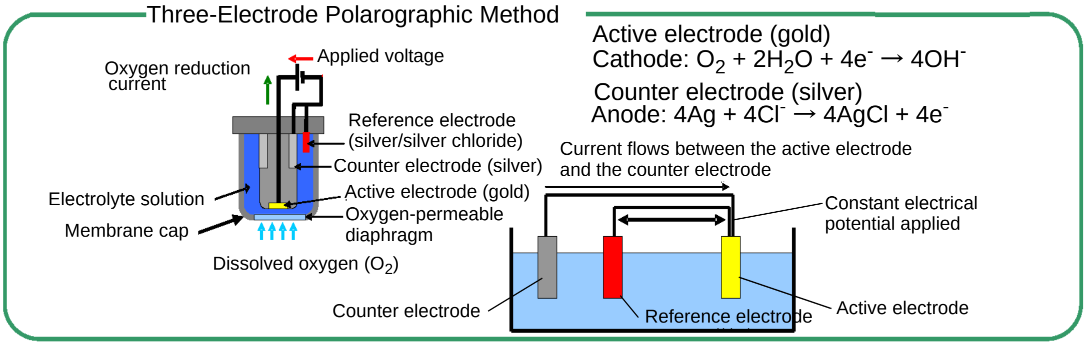


Fig. 1 Overview of principles behind dissolved oxygen sensor

The polarographic oxygen sensor is an enclosed sensor wherein voltage is applied to a cathode made of a precious metal (such as gold or platinum) and an anode also made of a precious metal (such as silver) via an external circuit, and a cap with an oxygen permeable diaphragm (membrane) is filled with electrolyte solution. As indicated in Fig. 1, the concentration of dissolved oxygen can be measured by measuring the current proportional to the amount of reduced oxygen when oxygen that has dispersed through the oxygen permeable diaphragm produces a reductive reaction on the surface of the active electrode (gold). The method of measuring dissolved oxygen based on the above principle is called the Membrane Electrode Method. Compared to the Chemical Analysis Method, which requires complicated pre-processing to alleviate the effect of reduced materials and oxidizing materials, this method allows dissolved oxygen to be measured very easily. It is also easy to remove undesired buildup from the silver electrode by polishing and cleaning if an insulator forms on it due to oxidation, making the method reusable.

6.4.2 Salinity calibration

When the solution and air come into contact and form an equilibrium (i.e. saturation), the relationship between the concentration of dissolved oxygen in the solution, C, [mol/L], and the partial pressure of oxygen in the air, Ps, [MPa/(mg/L)], can be represented by the following formula:

$$C = Ps/H$$

Where H [MPa/(mg/L)] is the Henry constant, a value that changes according to the composition of the solution. As H typically becomes larger as the salinity of the water increases, C becomes smaller.

The DO sensor detects the partial pressure of oxygen (Ps) in the above formula. Accordingly, if the DO sensor is immersed in deionized water saturated with air, or in an aqueous solution containing salt, the output current does not change, resulting in an erroneous measurement. For example, when salt is added to a sample, the amount of oxygen that can be dissolved in the solution decreases, but because the partial pressure of oxygen does not change, the value displayed by the control unit stays the same regardless of salt content. This concept is indicated in graph form below. (Fig. 2)

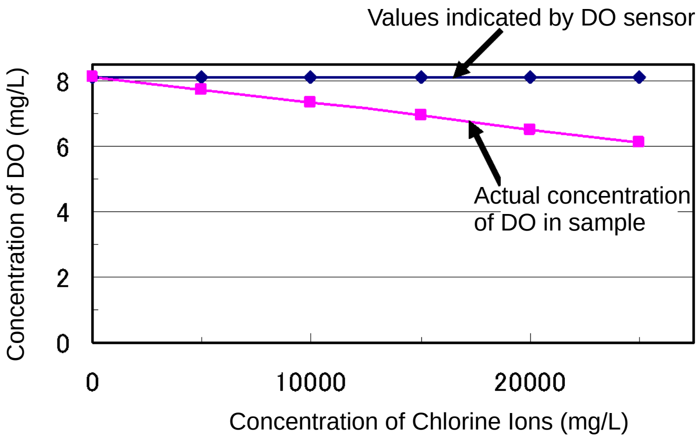


Fig. 2 Relationship between chlorine ion concentration and dissolved oxygen concentration

In samples with a high salt concentration, the solubility of oxygen is lower, but as the partial pressure of oxygen does not change, the value actually indicated on the control unit is higher than the actual value. In order to obtain a measurement of the concentration of dissolved oxygen in an aqueous solution that contains salt, it is therefore necessary to first perform salinity compensation. Conventionally, dissolved oxygen sensors have performed salinity compensation by inputting the salinity of the sample. This is fine as long as the salinity is already known. However, in most cases salinity is unknown, so even if dissolved oxygen sensors contained a salinity compensation function, it was of no practical use.

The U-50 Series can calculate and measure salinity in samples from electrical conductivity values, and can thus be used to automatically compensate for salinity.

6.5 Conductivity (COND) measurement

6.5.1 Four-AC-electrode method

Conductivity is an index of the flow of electrical current in a substance.

Salts dissolved in water are separated into cations and anions. Such solution is called electrolytic solution.

Electrolytic solution has the property of allowing the flow of current according to Ohm’s law. This property is referred

to as ionic conductivity, since current flow is caused by ion movement in electrolytic solution.

Metals, on the other hand, allow the flow of current by means of electrons. This property is called electronic conductivity,

which is distinguished from ionic conductivity.

A cube with 1 m on each side, as shown in Fig. 3, is used to demonstrate an electrolytic solution. Two electrode plates are placed on opposite sides, and the cube is filled with solution. If the resistance between these two electrode plates is represented by r(Ω), the conductivity of the solution L($S \cdot m^{-1}$) is represented as L=1/r. S stands for Siemens, a unit of measurement of conductance.

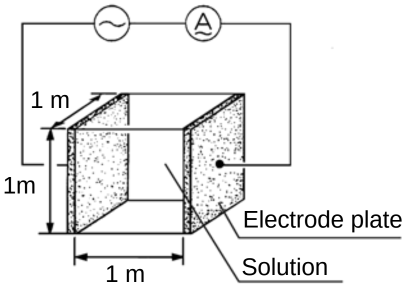


Fig. 3 Definition of conductivity

The most general method for measuring conductivity is based on the above principle, and is called the 2-electrode method.

In the 2-electrode method the influence of polarization cannot be ignored for solutions with high conductivity and conductivity cannot be measure accurately. In addition, contamination on the surface of the electrode increases apparent resistance, resulting in inaccurate measurement of conductivity.

The U-50 series has adopted the 4-electrode method to overcome these disadvantages of the the 2-electrode method.

As shown in Fig. 4, the U-50 series uses two voltage-detecting electrodes and two voltage-applying electrodes, for a total of four electrodes. The voltage-detecting electrodes are for detecting AC voltage, and the voltage-applying electrodes are for applying AC voltage.

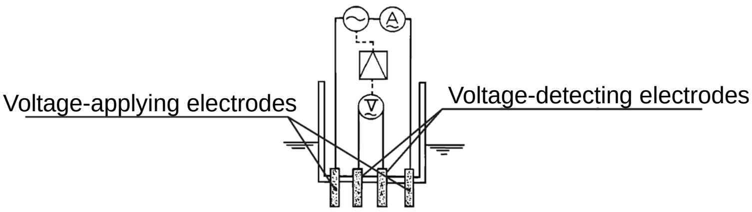


Fig. 4 Principle of the 4-electrode method

Let us assume that the current, I(A), flows in a sample of conductivity L – under automatic control of the voltage-applying electrodes – so that the voltage at the voltage-detecting-electrodes, E(V), remains constant at all times.

Then, the resistance of the sample, R(Ω), across the voltage-detecting electrodes is represented as R=E/I. The resistance, R, of the sample is inversely proportional to its conductivity, L. Accordingly, a measurement of current, Is,

of a standard solution of known conductivity, Ls, enables calculation of conductivity of a sample according to the formula L = Ls (I/Is) from the ratio L : Ls = I : Is.

Even in the 4-electrode method, polarization occurs, since AC current flows in the voltage-applying electrodes. The voltage-detecting electrodes are, however, free from the effects of polarization, since they are separated from the voltage-applying electrodes, and furthermore, current flow is negligible. Therefore, the 4-electrode method is an excellent method to enable measurement of conductivity covering a very high range.

6.5.2 SI units

New measurement units, called SI units, have been in use from 1996. Accordingly, the U-50 series also uses SI units. The following conversion table is provided for people who use the conventional kind of conductivity meter.

Note that along with the change in unit systems, the measurement values and cell counts have also changed.

	Former units	→	SI unit
Measurement value	0.1 mS/cm 1 mS/cm 100 mS/cm	→ → →	0.01 S/m 0.1 S/m 10 S/m

6.5.3 Temperature coefficient

In general, the conductivity of a solution varies largely with its temperature.

The conductivity of a solution depends on the ionic conductivity, described earlier. As the temperature rises, conductivity becomes higher since the movement of the ions becomes more active.

The temperature coefficient shows the change in % of conductivity per °C, with a certain temperature taken as the reference temperature. This is expressed in units of %/°C. The temperature coefficient assumes the premise that the conductivity of a sample changes linearly according to temperature.

Strictly speaking, with actual samples, however, conductivity changes along a curve. Furthermore, the cuve varies with the type of sample. In the ranges of smaller temperature changes, however, samples are said to have the temperature coefficient of 2%/°C (at reference temperature 25°C); this holds for most samples, except in certain special cases.

(The temperature coefficients for various types of solutions are listed on the next page.)

The U-50 series uses an automatic temperature conversion function to calculate conductivity at 25°C at a temperature

coefficient of 2 %/°C based on the measured value of the temperature. Results are displayed on the readout.

The U-50 series's temperature conversion function is based on the following formula.

$L_{25} = L_t / \{ 1 + K (t - 25) \}$

L_{25} : Conductivity of solution converted to 25°C

t : Temperature of solution at time of measurement (°C)

L_t : Conductivity of solution at t (°C)

K : Temperature coefficient (%/°C)

Conductivity and temperature coefficient for various solutions

Conductivity and related temperature coefficients of representative substances (at 25°C) are shown in the table below.

Substance	Temp. (ºC)	Conc. (wt%)	Cond. (S/m)	Temp.coef. (%/°C)	Substance	Temp. (ºC)	Conc. (wt%)	Cond. (S/m)	Temp.coef. (%/°C)
NaOH	15	5	19.69	2.01	NaCl	18	5	6.72	2.17
		10	31.24	2.17			10	12.11	2.14
		15	34.63	2.49			15	16.42	2.12
		20	32.70	2.99			20	19.57	2.16
		30	20.22	4.50			25	21.35	2.27
		40	11.64	6.48	Na_2SO_4	18	5	4.09	2.36
KOH	15	25.2	54.03	2.09			10	6.87	2.49
		29.4	54.34	2.21			15	8.86	2.56
		33.6	52.21	2.36	Na_2CO_3	18	5	4.56	2.52
		42	42.12	2.83			10	7.05	2.71
NH_3	15	0.1	0.0251	2.46			15	8.36	2.94
		1.6	0.0867	2.38	KCl	18	5	6.90	2.01
		4.01	0.1095	2.50			10	13.59	1.88
		8.03	0.1038	2.62			15	20.20	1.79
		16.15	0.0632	3.01			20	26.77	1.68
HF	18	1.5	1.98	7.20			21	28.10	1.66
		4.8	5.93	6.66	KBr	15	5	4.65	2.06
		24.5	28.32	5.83			10	9.28	1.94
HCl	18	5	39.48	1.58			20	19.07	1.77
		10	63.02	1.56	KCN	15	3.25	5.07	2.07
		20	76.15	1.54			6.5	10.26	1.93
		30	66.20	1.52			—	—	—
H_2S0_4	18	5	20.85	1.21	NH_4Cl	18	5	9.18	1.98
		10	39.15	1.28			10	17.76	1.86
		20	65.27	1.45			15	25.86	1.71
		40	68.00	1.78			20	33.65	1.61
		50	54.05	1.93			25	40.25	1.54
		60	37.26	2.13	NH_4NO_3	15	5	5.90	2.03
		80	11.05	3.49			10	11.17	1.94
		100.14	1.87	0.30			30	28.41	1.68
		—	—	—			50	36.22	1.56
HNO_3	18	6.2	31.23	1.47	$CuSO_4$	18	2.5	10.90	2.13
		12.4	54.18	1.42			5	18.90	2.16
		31	78.19	1.39			10	32.00	2.18
		49.6	63.41	1.57			15	42.10	2.31
		62	49.64	1.57	CH_3COOH	18	10	15.26	1.69
H_3PO_4	15	10	5.66	1.04			15	16.19	1.74
		20	11.29	1.14			20	16.05	1.79
		40	20.70	1.50			30	14.01	1.86
		45	20.87	1.61			40	10.81	1.96
		50	20.73	1.74			60	4.56	2.06

6.6 Salinity (SAL) conversion

The U-50 series is designed to calculate salinity as well as the other parameters.

Note that the “salinity” here is the salinity of sea water. There is a constant relation between conductivity and salinity at certain temperatures.

Therefore, if data on the conductivity and temperature are available, the corresponding salinity can be known. In other words, the salinity measurement of the U-50 series is based on the principle of calculating the salt content, making use of the measured values of conductivity and temperature.

Note therefore, that measured results of all substances whose conductivity is detected are displayed as salinity. For example, the measured result is displayed as NaCl concentration, even if in fact the sample component is, hydrochloric acid (HCl).

6.7 TDS conversion

TDS is short for Total Dissolved Solids and means the total dissolved solid amount.

The conductivity of a solution is affected by the amount of salinity, minerals, and dissolved gases. That is, conductivity is an index that shows the total amount of all substances in the solution. Of these substances, TDS indicates only the amount of dissolved solids.

TDS can be used for a comparison of the state of substances composed of a single component such as NaCl. However, the use of TDS for the comparison of solutions of different types causes serious errors.

Conductivity and TDS are expressed by the following formulas.

Conductivity in SI units (S/m) .... TDS(g/L) = L (S/m) × K × 10

TDS(g/L) = L (mS/m) × K ÷ 100

Conductivity in the old units (mS/cm) .... TDS(g/L) = L (mS/cm)× K

K = TDS coefficient

Initial settings use the values listed in the table (Page 80) that generally uses TDS coefficients.

For accurate TDS comparisons, find the TDS coefficient from measured conductivity values. Then set the value thus obtained and make measurements.

6.8 σt conversion

- **Specific gravity of seawater**

The density and specific gravity of seawater are equal numerically and generally are not distinguished strictly. Since seawater density ρ is between 1.000 and 1.031, 1 is subtracted from ρ and σ is obtained by multiplying the value by 1000.

The resultant value is used as the specific gravity of seawater.

$\sigma = (\rho - 1) \times 1000$

The density of seawater ρ is expressed by function of temperature, hydraulic pressure, and salinity. The density of seawater under the atmospheric pressure is expressed as σ_t. The density of seawater under the atmospheric pressure is determined by temperature and salinity.

The U-50 Series models make salinity measurement through temperature measurements and conductivity conversion and find σ_t through calculations.

In Japan σ_{15} at 15°C is called a standard specific gravity and widely used while in foreign countries σ_0 at 0°C is employed. σ_{15} and σ_0 are determined by the function of salinity.

In ocean surveys, in particular, these values σ_t, σ_{15}, and σ_0 are more widely used than conductivity and salinity and, in the U-50 Series models, newly added as measurement components.

6.9 Turbidity (TURB) measurement

6.9.1 Principle of turbidity measurement

U-52 and U-53 sensors measure turbidity using the Transmitting and Scattering Method shown in Fig. 5. U-52 sensors use a pulse light LED (infra-red emitting diode) as a light source, and detect scattered light from a 30° angle off center. U-53 sensors use a tungsten lamp as a light source and detect scattered light from a 90° angle. Both models display turbidity as a ratio of scattered light to transmitted light to reduce the affect of the color of the sample. The U-53 method conforms to EPA Method 180.1, and employs wipers to reduce the affect of air bubbles.

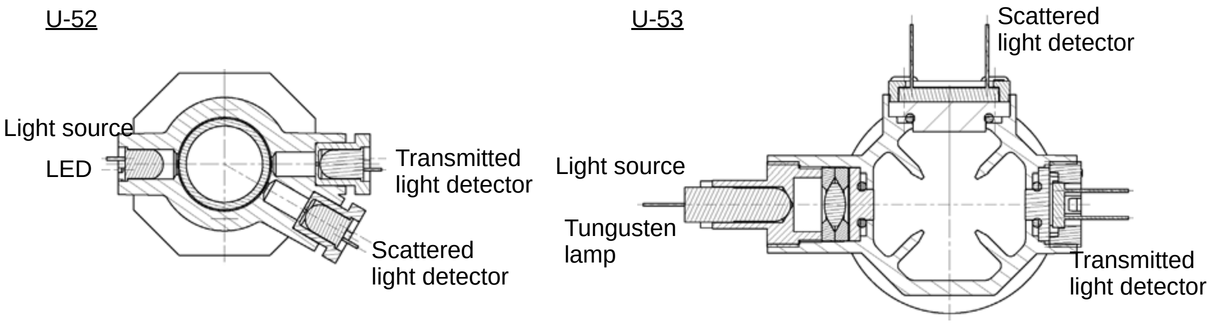


Fig. 5 Turbidity cell

6.9.2 Standard solution

U-50 series can perform calibration using formazin (NTU) or kaolin standard solutions as a turbidity standard solution. However, units for the solution used for calibration should be displayed in measurements. Do not use more than 400 mg/L of kaolin standard solution because it increases precipitation speed, resulting in measurement error.

6.10 Depth (DEPTH) measurement

6.10.1 Principle of depth measurement

For the W-22XD and W-23XD models, depth measurement can be made through use of a pressure gauge. The principle of the depth measurement uses the relation between depth and pressure.

Although the measurement with the depth sensor is affected by atmospheric pressure, the depth sensor, however, makes zero-point adjustments through the automatic calibration before measurements.

6.10.2 Influence of temperature and calibration

The depth sensor depends greatly on temperature. For a wide difference between the temperature at which the sensor has been automatically calibrated and the temperature of the measurement sample, the sensor can make depth measurements with a higher accuracy by the following method:

1. **Immerse the depth sensor of the sensor probe in the sample.**
2. **Keep the sensor immersed in the sample for about 30 minutes until the temperatures of the sensor and the sample are the same.**
3. **Then make the zero calibration of the sensor manually.**

6.11 Oxidation reduction potential (ORP) measurement

6.11.1 Principle of ORP measurement

ORP is an abbreviation for oxidation-reduction potential. ORP is the energy level (potential) determined according to the state of equilibrium between the oxidants (M^{Z+}) and reductants $M^{(Z-N)+}$ that coexist within a solution.

$$M^{Z+} + ne^{-} \Leftrightarrow M^{(Z-N)+} \qquad \cdots (1)$$

If only the solution, forming the ORP measuring system shown in Fig. 6. The difference of potential between two electrodes is generally expressed by the following equation.

$$E = E_0 - \frac{RT}{nF} \ln \frac{a_M{}^{(z-n)+}}{a_M{}^{z+}} \qquad \cdots (2)$$

E: Electric potential E_0 : Constant R: Gas constant T : Absolute temperature
n: Electron count F : Faraday constant a : Activity

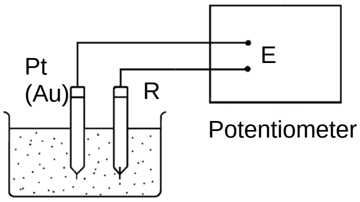


Fig. 6 Measuring mV

For example, for a solution in which trivalent iron ions coexist with bivalent iron ions, equations 1 and 2 would be as follows.

$$Fe^{3+} + e^{-} \Leftrightarrow Fe^{2+} \qquad \cdots (1)$$

$$E = E_0 - \frac{RT}{F} \ln \frac{a_{Fe}{}^{2+}}{a_{Fe}{}^{3+}} \qquad \cdots (2)$$

When only one type of state of equilibrium uniquely by equation (Fe^{3+}) and the reductant (Fe^{2+}) (using the equation $a_{Fe}{}^{2+}/ a_{Fe}{}^{3+}$). Actually, however many kinds of states of equilibrium exist simultaneously between various kinds of ions, in most solutions. This means that under actual circumstances, ORP cannot be expressed using the simple equation shown above and that the physical and chemical significance with respect to the solution is not very clear.

In this respect, the value of ORP must be understood to be only one indicator of the property of a solution. The measurement of ORP is widely used, however, as an important index in the analysis of solutions (potentiometric titration) and in the waste water treatment.

6.11.2 Standard electrode (reference electrode) types and ORP

The ORP is obtained comparing with corresponding reference electrode employed.

If different kinds of reference electrodes are used for measurement, the ORP value of the same solution may appear to be different. HORIBA's reference electrode uses Ag/AgCl with 3.33 mol/L KCl as inner solution. According to general technical literature, normal hydrogen electrodes (N.H.E.) are often used as the standard electrode.

The relationship between N.H.E. and the ORP that is measured using an Ag/AgCl with 3.33 mol/L KCl electrode is expressed by the following equation.

$E_{N.H.E.} = E + 206 - 0.7(t - 25)$ mV t = 0 - 60°C

$E_{N.H.E.}$: Measured ORP value using N.H.E. as the reference electrode

E: Measured ORP value using Ag/AgCl with 3.33 mol/L KCl as the reference electrode
Potential sign

Standard ORP is expressed in the following way, in literature related to electrochemistry and analytical chemistry.

A $Li^+ + e^- \rightarrow Li$
$E_0 = -3.024$ V VS N.H.E.

However, in some literature, the "+" and "-" signs are reversed.

B $Li \rightarrow Li^+ + e^-$
$E_0 = +3.024$ V VS N.H.E.

In expressions like B, above, the reaction is just reversed and there is no essential difference. But this kind of expression does invite confusion. The majority of the world, today, is consistent in its use of the signs as they are used in A, above.

For this reason, HORIBA, too, uses signs concerning ORP that are consistent with A, above.

HORIBA, Ltd.
2 Miyanohigashi, Kisshoin Minami-ku, Kyoto 601-8510 Japan
http://www.horiba.com

```
image/CE.tif @ 300 dpi 3
image/WEEE_and_Batteries.tif 3
image/W_Danger.tif @ 1200 dpi 4
image/W_Warning.tif @ 1200 dpi 4
image/W_Caution.tif @ 1200 dpi 4
image/W_強制.tif @ 1200 dpi 4
image/W_禁止.tif @ 1200 dpi 4
image/u53_probe.tif 6
image/controller_connector.tif @ 600 dpi 6
image/controller_connector.tif @ 600 dpi 6
image/controller_battery_lid2.tif 7
image/front-view.tif 4
image/back-view.tif 4
image/u51_probe.tif @ 600 dpi 4
image/u52_probe.tif @ 600 dpi 5
image/u53_probe.tif @ 600 dpi 5
image/1.測定画面.tif 5
image/電池残量1.tif @ 500 dpi 5
image/電池残量2.tif @ 500 dpi 5
image/電池残量3.tif @ 500 dpi 5
image/POWER.tif 6
image/MEAS.tif 6
image/ENTER.tif 6
image/CAL.tif 6
image/ESC.tif 6
image/LIGHT.tif 6
image/CUR_L.tif 6
image/CUR_R.tif 6
image/CUR_U.tif 6
image/CUR_D.tif 6
image/controller_battery_lid2.tif 8
image/battery-4.tif 8
image/cr2032_x1.tif 10
image/p-guard.tif 11
image/U-50_attach_pH.tif 11
image/U-50_attach_orp.tif 12
image/U-50_attach_ref.tif 12
image/u50_do-spaner.tif 13
image/controller_connector.tif 14
image/コネクタ_mk.tif 14
image/校正カップ3.tif 14
image/設定GPS受信E1.tif 15
image/設定GPS測位E2.tif 16
image/設定GPS受信完了E1.tif 16
image/設定GPS測位失敗E1.tif 16
image/設定GPS精度E1.tif 17
image/設定GPS精度E2.bmp.tif 17
image/1.測定画面.tif 18
image/2.設定画面測定設定1.tif 19
```

image/1. 測定画面.tif @ 200 dpi 64
image/80. データオペレーション画面1.tif 64
image/81. データオペレーション画面2.tif 64
image/82. データオペレーション画面３.tif 65
image/81. データ画面データ表示2.bmp.tif @ 200 dpi 65
image/1. 測定画面.tif 65
image/80. データオペレーション画面1.tif 65
image/84. データオペレーション画面5.tif 66
image/1. 測定画面.tif @ 200 dpi 66
image/80. データオペレーション画面1.tif 66
image/86. データオペレーション画面7.tif 67
image/1. 測定画面.tif @ 200 dpi 68
image/87. データオペレーション画面8.tif 68
image/88. データオペレーション画面9.tif 68
image/1. 測定画面.tif @ 200 dpi 69
image/90. データオペレーション11.tif 69
image/91. データオペレーション12.tif 69
image/1. 測定画面.tif @ 200 dpi 70
image/校正履歴CONDe.tif @ 200 dpi 70
image/校正履歴DOE.tif @ 200 dpi 70
image/校正履歴ORPE.tif @ 200 dpi 70
image/校正履歴phE.tif @ 200 dpi 70
image/校正履歴tempE.tif @ 200 dpi 70
image/校正履歴TurbE.tif @ 200 dpi 70
image/校正履歴水深E.tif @ 200 dpi 70
image/画暴25_ENG.tif 70
image/データ操作GPS情報E10.tif 71
image/データ操作GPS情報成功E1.tif 71
image/データ操作GPS情報E1.tif 71
image/センサインフォメーション良好E.tif 72
image/センサインフォメーションNGE.tif 72
image/usb-connector.tif @ 400 dpi 73
image/COND-G.tif 82
image/s-guard_cap.tif 83
image/プローブガード.tif 83
image/隔膜5-s1.tif 84
image/隔膜5-s2.tif 84
image/隔膜5-g1.tif 84
image/隔膜5-g2.tif 84
image/DOセンサ_保護キャップ.tif 85
image/pH_chip=cap.tif @ 300 dpi 85
image/turb1.tif 86
image/隔膜3-1.tif 87
image/隔膜3-2.tif 87
image/DO_シリコンパッキン.tif 87
image/隔膜キャップ.tif 87
image/spoit.tif 87
image/隔膜4-3l.tif 87
image/隔膜4-3r.tif @ 600 dpi 87

image/隔膜キャップジグ1.tif 87
image/隔膜キャップジグ2.tif 87
image/隔膜キャップ取り付け1.tif 88
image/隔膜キャップジグ2.tif 88
image/隔膜確認.tif 88
image/隔膜確認.tif 88
image/DO_原理_J.tif 101
image/DO_CL-ion_J.tif @ 300 dpi 102
image/cond_原理図.tif @ 600 dpi 103
image/cond_原理図_4極.tif @ 600 dpi 103
image/U-52_turb.tif 107
image/U-53_turb.tif 107
image/orp_原理図.tif @ 600 dpi 108

MiniRAE 3000
User's Guide

Rev. C
August 2010
P/N 059-4020-000

FCC Information

Contains FCC ID: PI4411B

The enclosed device complies with part 15 of the FCC rules. Operation is subject to the following conditions: (1) This device may not cause harmful interference, and (2) This device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

Contents

Read Before Operating

This manual must be carefully read by all individuals who have or will have the responsibility of using, maintaining, or servicing this product. The product will perform as designed only if it is used, maintained, and serviced in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions. The user should understand how to set the correct parameters and interpret the obtained results.

CAUTION!

To reduce the risk of electric shock, turn the power off before removing the instrument cover. Disconnect the battery before removing sensor module for service. Never operate the instrument when the cover is removed. Remove instrument cover and sensor module only in an area known to be non-hazardous.

Special Notes

⚠ When the instrument is taken out of the transport case and turned on for the first time, there may be some residual organic or inorganic vapor trapped inside the detector chamber. The initial PID sensor reading may indicate a few ppm. Enter an area known to be free of any organic vapor and turn on the instrument. After running for several minutes, the residual vapor in the detector chamber will be cleared and the reading should return to zero.

⚠ The battery of the instrument discharges slowly even if it is turned off. If the instrument has not been charged for 5 to 7 days, the battery voltage will be low. Therefore, it is a good practice to always charge the instrument before using it. It is also recommended to fully charge the instrument for *at least 10 hours* before first use. Refer to this User Guide’s section on battery charging for more information on battery charging and replacement.

WARNINGS

STATIC HAZARD: Clean only with damp cloth.

For safety reasons, this equipment must be operated and serviced by qualified personnel only. Read and understand instruction manual completely before operating or servicing.

Use only RAE Systems battery packs, part numbers 059-3051-000, 059-3052-000, and 059-3054-000. This instrument has not been tested in an explosive gas/air atmosphere having an oxygen concentration greater than 21%. Substitution of components may impair intrinsic safety. Recharge batteries only in non-hazardous locations.

Do not mix old and new batteries or batteries from different manufacturers.

The calibration of all newly purchased RAE Systems instruments should be tested by exposing the sensor(s) to known concentration calibration gas before the instrument is put into service.

For maximum safety, the accuracy of the instrument should be checked by exposing it to a known concentration calibration gas before each day's use.

Do not use USB/PC communication in hazardous locations.

AVERTISSEMENT

DANGER RISQUE D'ORIGINE ELECTROSTATIQUE: Nettoyer uniquement avec un chiffon humide.

Pour des raisons de sécurité, cet équipment doit être utilisé, entretenu et réparé uniquement par un personnel qualifié. Étudier le manuel d'instructions en entier avant d'utiliser, d'entretenir ou de réparer l'équipement.

Utiliser seulement l'ensemble de batterie RAE Systems, la reference 059-3051-000 au 059-3052-000 au 059-3054-000. Cet instrument n'a pas été essayé dans une atmosphère de gaz/air explosive ayant une concentration d'oxygène plus élevée que 21%. La substitution de composants peut compromettre la sécurité intrinsique. Ne charger les batteries que dans emplacements désignés non-dangereuse.

Ne pas melanger les anciennes et les nouvelles batteries, ou bien encore les batteries de differents fabriquants.

La calibration de toute instruments de RAE Systems doivent être testé en exposant l'instrument a une concentration de gaz connue par une procédure diétalonnage avant de mettre en service l'instrument pour la première fois.

Pour une securite maximale, la sensibilité du l'instrument doit être verifier en exposant l'instrument a une concentration de gaz connue par une procédure diétalonnage avant chaque utilisation journalière.

Ne pas utiliser de connection USB/PC en zone dangereuse.

Standard Contents

Instrument
Calibration Kit
Charging Cradle
AC/DC Adapter
Alkaline Battery Adapter
Data Cable
CD-ROM With User's Guide, Quick Start Guide, and related materials

General Information

The compact instrument is designed as a broadband VOC gas monitor and datalogger for work in hazardous environments. It monitors Volatile Organic Compounds (VOC) using a photoionization detector (PID) with a 9.8 eV, 10.6 eV, or 11.7 eV gas-discharge lamp. Features are:

Lightweight and Compact

- Compact, lightweight, rugged design
- Built-in sample draw pump

Dependable and Accurate

- Up to 16 hours of continuous monitoring with rechargeable battery pack
- Designed to continuously monitor VOC vapor at parts-per-million (ppm) levels

User-friendly

- Preset alarm thresholds for STEL, TWA, low- and high-level peak values.
- Audio buzzer and flashing LED display are activated when the limits are exceeded.

Datalogging Capabilities

- 260,000-point datalogging storage capacity for data download to PC

The instrument consists of a PID with associated microcomputer and electronic circuit. The unit is housed in a rugged case with a backlit LCD and 3 keys to provide easy user interface. It also has a built-in flashlight for operational ease in dark locations.

Physical Description

The main components of the portable VOC monitoring instrument include:

- Three keys for user to interact with the instrument: 3 operation/programming keys for normal operation or programming
- LCD display with back light for direct readout and calculated measurements
- Built-in flashlight for illuminating testing points in dark environments
- Buzzer and red LEDs for alarm signaling whenever exposures exceed preset limits
- Charge contacts for plugging directly to its charging station
- Gas entry and exit ports
- USB communication port for PC interface
- Protective rubber cover

Specifications

Size:	9.25" L x 3.6" W x 2.9" H
Weight:	28 oz with battery pack
Detector:	Photoionization sensor with 9.8, 10.6, or 11.7 eV UV lamp
Battery:	A 3.7V rechargeable Lithium-Ion battery pack (snap in, field replaceable, at non-hazardous location only)
	Alkaline battery holder (for 4 AA batteries)
Battery Charging:	Less than 8 hours to full charge
Operating Hours:	Up to16 hours continuous operation
Display:	Large dot matrix screen with backlight

Measurement range & resolution

Lamp	Range	Resolution
10.6 eV	0.1 ppm to 15,000 ppm	0.1 ppm
9.8 eV	0.1 ppm to 5,000 ppm	0.1 ppm
11.7 eV	0.1 ppm to 2,000 ppm	0.1 ppm

Response time (T_{90}):	2 seconds
Accuracy (Isobutylene):	10 to 2000 ppm: ±3% at calibration point.
PID Detector:	Easy access to lamp and sensor for cleaning and replacement
Correction Factors:	Over 200 VOC gases built in (based on RAE Systems Technical Note TN-106)
Calibration:	Two-point field calibration of zero and standard reference gases
Calibration Reference:	Store up to 8 sets of calibration data, alarm limits and span values
Inlet Probe:	Flexible 5" tubing
Radio module:	Bluetooth (2.4GHz), RF module (433MHz, 868MHz , 915MHz, or 2.4GHz)
Keypad:	1 operation key and 2 programming keys; 1 flashlight switch
Direct Readout:	Instantaneous, average, STEL, TWA and peak value, and battery voltage
Intrinsic Safety:	US and Canada: Class I, Division 1, Groups A, B, C, D Europe: ATEX (0575 Ex II 2G Ex ia IIC/IIB T4 Gb) KEMA 07 ATEX 0127 Complies with EN60079-0:2009, EN60079-11:2007

	IECEx CSA 10.0005 Ex ia IIC/IIB T4 Gb Complies with IEC 60079-0:2007, IEC 60079-11:2006 (IIC: 059-3051-000 Li-ion bat pack or 059-3054-000 NiMH bat pack; IIB: 059-3052-000 alkaline bat pack)
EM Interference:	Highly resistant to EMI/RFI. Compliant with EMC R&TTE (RF Modules)
Alarm Setting:	Separate alarm limit settings for Low, High, STEL and TWA alarm
Operating Mode:	Hygiene or Search mode
Alarm:	Buzzer 95dB at 30cm and flashing red LEDs to indicate exceeded preset limits, low battery voltage, or sensor failure
Alarm Type:	Latching or automatic reset
Real-time Clock:	Automatic date and time stamps on datalogged information
Datalogging:	260,000 points with time stamp, serial number, user ID, site ID, etc.
Communication:	Upload data to PC and download instrument setup from PC via USB on charging station.
Sampling Pump:	Internally integrated. Flow rate: 450 to 550 cc/min.
Temperature:	-20º C to 50º C (-4º to 122º F)
Humidity:	0% to 95% relative humidity (non-condensing)
Housing (including rubber boot):	Polycarbonate, splashproof and dustproof Battery can be changed without removing rubber boot.

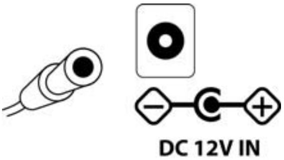
Charging The Battery

Always fully charge the battery before using the instrument. The instrument's Li-ion battery is charged by placing the instrument in its cradle. Contacts on the bottom of the instrument meet the cradle's contacts, transferring power without other connections.

Note: Before setting the instrument into its charging cradle, visually inspect the contacts to make sure they are clean. If they are not, wipe them with a soft cloth. Do not use solvents or cleaners.

Follow this procedure to charge the instrument:

1. Plug the AC/DC adapter's barrel connector into the instrument's cradle.



2. Plug the AC/DC adapter into the wall outlet.
3. Place the instrument into the cradle, press down, and lean it back. It locks in place and the LED in the cradle glow

The instrument begins charging automatically. The "Primary" LED in the cradle blinks green to indicate charging. During charging, the diagonal lines in the battery icon on the instrument's display are animated and you see the message "Charging..."

When the instrument's battery is fully charged, the battery icon is no longer animated and shows a full battery. The message "Fully charged!" is shown. The cradle's LED glows continuously green.

Note: If you see the "Battery Charging Error" icon (a battery outline with an exclamation mark inside), check that the instrument or rechargeable battery has been set into the cradle properly. If you still receive the message, check the Troubleshooting section of this guide.

Note: If the instrument or battery has been in the cradle for more than 10 hours and you see the "Battery Charging Error" icon and a message that says, "Charging Too Long," this indicates that the battery is not reaching a full charge. Try changing the battery and make sure the contacts between the instrument (or battery) are meeting the cradle. If the message is still shown, consult your distributor or RAE Systems Technical Services.

Charging A Spare Rechargeable Battery

A rechargeable Li-ion battery can be charged when it is not inside the monitor. The charging cradle is designed to accommodate both types of charging. Contacts on the bottom of the battery meet the contacts on the cradle, transferring power without other connections, and a spring-loaded capture holds the battery in place during charging.

1. Plug the AC/DC adapter into the monitor's cradle.
2. Place the battery into the cradle, with the gold-plated contacts on top of the six matching charging pins.
3. Plug the AC/DC adapter into the wall outlet.

The battery begins charging automatically. During charging, the Secondary LED in the cradle blinks green. When charging is complete, it glows steady green.

Release the battery from the cradle by pulling it back toward the rear of the cradle and tilting it out of its slot.

Note: If you need to replace the Li-ion battery pack, replacements are available from RAE Systems. The part number is 059-3051-000.

Note: An Alkaline Battery Adapter (part number 059-3052-000), which uses four AA alkaline batteries (Duracell MN1500), may be substituted for the Li-Ion battery.

WARNING!

To reduce the risk of ignition of hazardous atmospheres, recharge and replace batteries only in areas known to be non-hazardous. **Remove and replace batteries only in areas known to be non-hazardous.**

Low Voltage Warning

When the battery's charge falls below a preset voltage, the instrument warns you by beeping once and flashing once every minute, and the "empty battery" icon blinks on and off once per second. You should turn off the instrument within 10 minutes and either recharge the battery by placing the instrument in its cradle, or replace the battery with a fresh one with a full charge.

Clock Battery

An internal clock battery is mounted on one of the instrument's printed circuit boards. This long-life battery keeps settings in memory from being lost whenever the Li-ion battery or alkaline batteries are removed. This backup battery should last approximately five years, and must be replaced by an authorized RAE Systems service technician. It is not user-replaceable.

Data Protection While Power Is Off

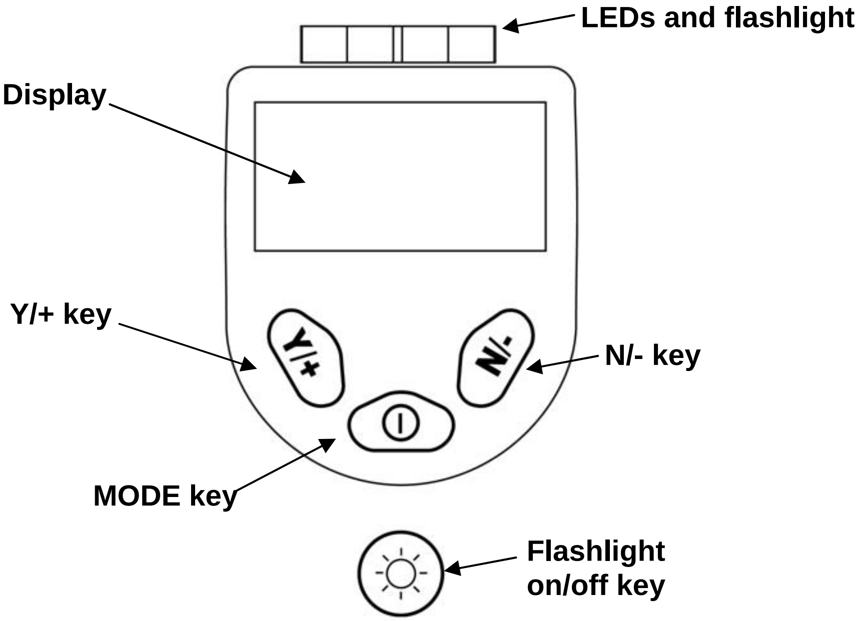
When the instrument is turned off, all the current real-time data including last measured values are erased. However, the datalog data is preserved in non-volatile memory. Even if the battery is disconnected, the datalog data will not be lost.

User Interface

The instrument's user interface consists of the display, LEDs, an alarm transducer, and four keys. The keys are:

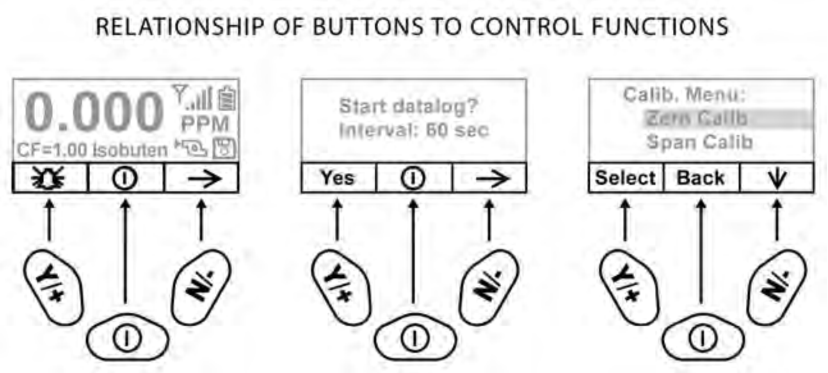
Y/+
MODE
N/-
Flashlight on/off

The LCD display provides visual feedback that includes the reading, time, battery condition, and other functions.



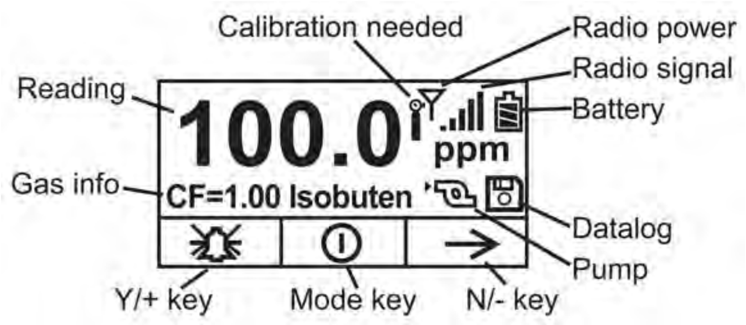
In addition to their labeled functions, the keys labeled Y/+, MODE, and N/- act as "soft keys" that control different parameters and make different selections within the instrument's menus. From menu to menu, each key controls a different parameter or makes a different selection.

Three panes along the bottom of the display are "mapped" to the keys. These change as menus change, but at all times the left pane corresponds to the [Y/+] key, the center pane corresponds to the [MODE] key, and the right pane corresponds to the [N/-] key. Here are three examples of different menus with the relationships of the keys clearly shown:



Display

The display shows the following information:



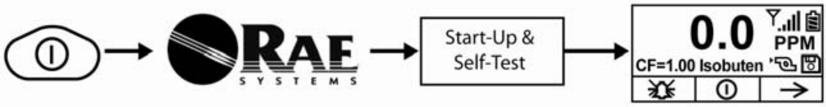
Graph	Graphic representation of concentration plotted over time
Gas info	Tells the Correction Factor and type of calibration gas
Reading	Concentration of gas as measured by the instrument
Calibration needed	Indicates that calibration should be performed
Radio power	Indicates whether radio connection is on or off
Radio signal	Indicates signal strength in 5-bar bargraph
Battery	Indicates battery level in 3 bars
Pump	Indicates that pump is working
Datalog	Indicates whether datalog is on or off
Y/+	Y/+ key's function for this screen
MODE	MODE key's function for this screen
N/-	N/- key's function for this screen

Operating The Instrument

The instrument is designed as a broadband VOC gas monitor and datalogger for work in hazardous environments. It gives real-time measurements and activates alarm signals whenever the exposure exceeds preset limits. Prior to factory shipment, the instrument is preset with default alarm limits and the sensor is pre-calibrated with standard calibration gas. However, you should test the instrument and verify the calibration before the first use. After the instrument is fully charged and calibrated, it is ready for immediate operation.

Turning The Instrument On

1. With the instrument turned off, press and hold [MODE].
2. When the display turns on, release the [MODE] key.



The RAE Systems logo should appear first. (If the logo does not appear, there is likely a problem and you should contact your distributor or RAE Systems Technical Support.) The instrument is now operating and performs self tests. If any tests (including sensor and memory tests fail), refer to the Troubleshooting section of this guide.

Once the startup procedure is complete, the instrument shows a numerical reading screen with icons. This indicates that the instrument is fully functional and ready to use.

Turning The Instrument Off

1. Press and hold the Mode key for 3 seconds. A 5-second countdown to shutoff begins.
2. Once the countdown stops, the instrument is off. Release the Mode key.
3. When you see "Unit off..." release your finger from the [MODE] key. The instrument is now off.

Note: You must hold your finger on the key for the entire shutoff process. If you remove your finger from the key during the countdown, the shutoff operation is canceled and the instrument continues normal operation.

Operating The Built-In Flashlight

The instrument has a built-in flashlight that helps you point the probe in dark places. Press the flashlight key to turn it on. Press it again to turn it off.

Note: Using the flashlight for extended periods shortens the battery's operating time before it needs recharging.

Pump Status

IMPORTANT!

During operation, make sure the probe inlet and the gas outlet are free of obstructions. Obstructions can cause premature wear on the pump, false readings, or pump stalling. During normal operation, the pump icon alternately shows inflow and outflow as shown here:

During duty cycling (PID lamp cleaning), the display shows these icons in alternation:

If there is a pump failure or obstruction that disrupts the pump, you will see this icon blinking on and off:

If you see this blinking icon, consult the Troubleshooting section of this guide.

Calibration Status

The instrument displays this icon if it requires calibration:

Calibration is required (and indicated by this icon) if:

- The lamp type has been changed (for example, from 10.6 eV to 9.8 eV).
- The sensor has been replaced.
- It has been 30 days or more since the instrument was last calibrated.
- If you have changed the calibration gas type without recalibrating the instrument.

Operating Modes

Your instrument operates in different modes, depending on the model and its factory default settings. In some cases, you can change modes using a password and using the instrument's navigation. In other cases, you must use ProRAE Studio software.

The default setting for your instrument is:

User Mode: Basic
Operation Mode: Hygiene

This is outlined in detail on page 74.

The other options, covered later in this guide, are:

User Mode: Advanced (page 78)
Operation Mode: Hygiene

User Mode: Advanced (page 82)
Operation Mode: Search

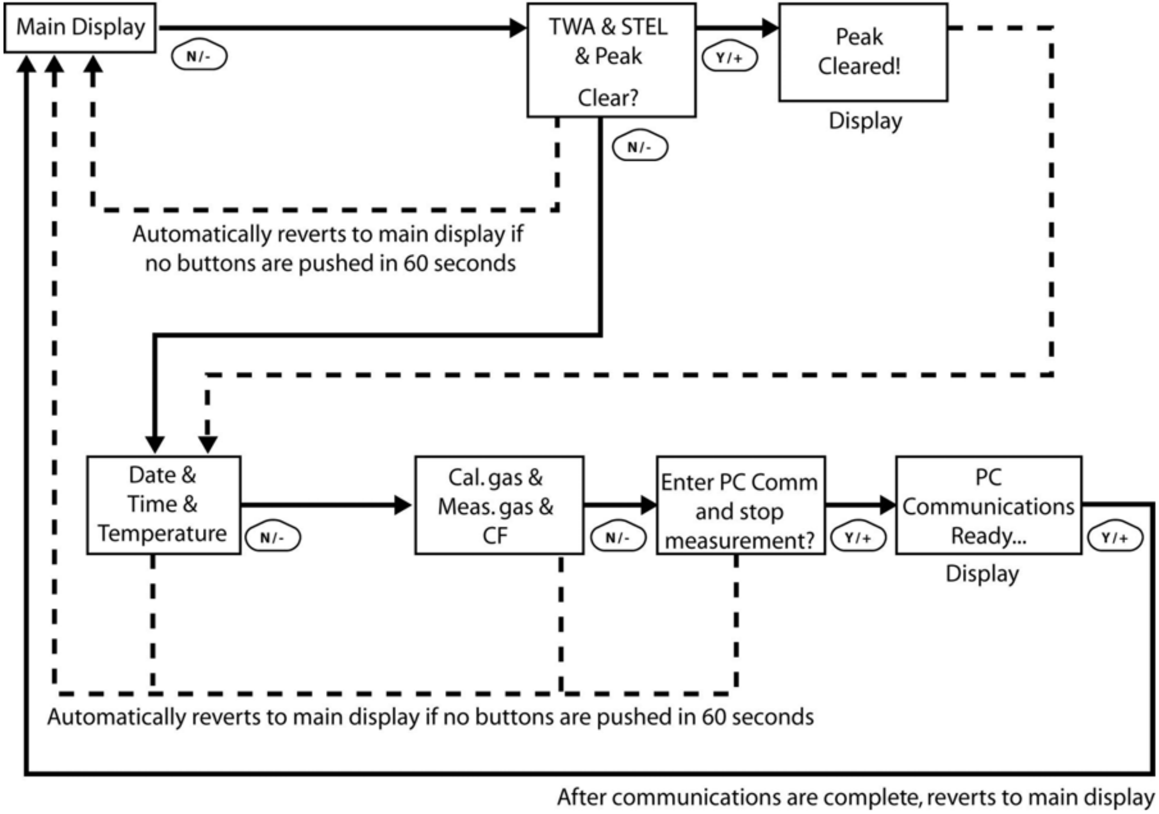
Using ProRAE Studio allows access to other options. In addition, Diagnostic Mode (page 83) is available for service technicians.

Basic User Level/Hygiene Mode (Default Settings)

The instrument is programmed to operate in Basic User Level/Hygiene Mode as its default. This gives you the most commonly needed features while requiring the fewest parameter adjustments.

Pressing [N/-] steps you from one screen to the next, and eventually return to the main display. If you do not press a key within 60 seconds after entering a display, the instrument reverts to its main display.

Note: While viewing any of these screens, you can shut off your instrument by pressing [MODE].



Note: Dashed line indicates automatic progression.

After the instrument is turned on, it runs through the start-up menu. Then the message "**Please apply zero gas…**" is displayed.

At this point, you can perform a zero air (fresh air) calibration. If the ambient air is clean, you can use that. Otherwise, use a cylinder of zero air. Refer to Zero Calibration on page 37 for a more detailed description of zero calibration.

Start zero calibration by pressing Start. You see the message "Zeroing…" followed by a 30-second countdown.

Note: You can press [MODE] to quit, bypassing the zero air calibration.

When zero calibration is complete, you see the message:

Zeroing is done!

Reading = 0.0 ppm

The instrument is now sampling and collecting data.

Note: At the Average & Peak, Date & Time & Temperature, Calibration Gas & Measurement Gas & Correction Factor, and PC Communications screens, the instrument automatically goes to the main display after 60 seconds if you do not push a key to make a selection.

Alarm Signals

During each measurement period, the gas concentration is compared with the programmed alarm limits (gas concentration alarm limit settings). If the concentration exceeds any of the preset limits, the loud buzzer and red flashing LED are activated immediately to warn you of the alarm condition.

In addition, the instrument alarms if one of the following conditions occurs: battery voltage falls below a preset voltage level, failure of the UV lamp, or pump stall.

Alarm Signal Summary

Message	Condition	Alarm Signal
HIGH	Gas exceeds "High Alarm" limit	3 beeps/flashes per second*
OVR	Gas exceeds measurement range	3 beeps/flashes per second*
MAX	Gas exceeds electronics' maximum range	3 beeps/flashes per second*
LOW	Gas exceeds "Low Alarm" limit	2 beeps/flashes per second*
TWA	Gas exceeds "TWA" limit	1 Beep/flash per second*
STEL	Gas exceeds "STEL" limit	1 Beep/flash per second*
Pump icon flashes	Pump failure	3 beeps/flashes per second
Lamp	PID lamp failure	3 beeps/flashes per second plus "Lamp" message on display
Battery icon flashes	Low battery	1 flash, 1 beep per minute plus battery icon flashes on display
CAL	Calibration failed, or needs calibration	1 beep/flash per second
NEG	Gas reading measures less than number stored in calibration	1 beep/flash per second

* Hygiene mode only. In Search mode, the number of beeps per second (1 to 7) depends upon the concentration of the sampled gas. Faster rates indicate higher concentrations.

Preset Alarm Limits & Calibration

The instrument is factory calibrated with standard calibration gas, and is programmed with default alarm limits.

Cal Gas (Isobutylene)	Cal Span	unit	Low	High	TWA	STEL
MiniRAE 3000	100	ppm	50	100	10	25

Testing The Alarm

You can test the alarm whenever the main (Reading) display is shown. Press [Y/+], and the audible and visible alarms are tested.

Integrated Sampling Pump

The instrument includes an integrated sampling pump. This diaphragm-type pump that provides a 450 to 550 cc per minute flow rate. Connecting a Teflon or metal tubing with 1/8" inside diameter to the gas inlet port of the instrument, this pump can pull in air samples from 100' (30 m) away horizontally or vertically.

Note: In Search Mode, the pump turns on when a sample measurement is started, and turns off when the sample is manually stopped.

If liquid or other objects are pulled into the inlet port filter, the instrument detects the obstruction and immediately shuts down the pump. The alarm is activated and a flashing pump icon is displayed.

You should acknowledge the pump shutoff condition by clearing the obstruction and pressing the [Y/+] key while in the main reading display to restart the pump.

Backlight

The LCD display is equipped with an LED backlight to assist in reading the display under poor lighting conditions.

Datalogging

During datalogging, the instrument displays a disk icon to indicate that datalogging is enabled. The instrument stores the measured gas concentration at the end of every sample period (when data logging is enabled). In addition, the following information is stored: user ID, site ID, serial number, last calibration date, and alarm limits. All data are retained (even after the unit is turned off) in non-volatile memory so that it can be down- loaded at a later time to a PC.

Datalogging event

When Datalogging is enabled, measurement readings are being saved. These data are stored in “groups” or “events.” A new event is created and stored each time the instrument is turned on and is set to automatic datalogging, or a configuration parameter is changed, or datalogging is interrupted. The maximum time for one event is 24 hours or 28,800 points. If an event exceeds 24 hours, a new event is automatically created. Information, such as start time, user ID, site ID, gas name, serial number, last calibration date, and alarm limits are recorded.

Datalogging sample

After an event is recorded, the unit records a shorter form of the data. When transferred to a PC running ProRAE Studio, this data is arranged with a sample number, time, date, gas concentration, and other related information.

Auto/Manual/Snapshot Datalogging

The instrument has three datalog types:

Auto	Default mode. Collects datalog information when the instrument is sampling.
Manual	Datalogging occurs only when the instrument’s datalogging is manually started (see page 63 for details).
Snapshot	Datalogs only during snapshot (single-event capture, initiated by pressing [MODE]) sampling. See page 65 for details.

Note: You can only choose one datalog type to be active at a time.

Accessories

The following accessories are included with the instrument:

- An AC Adapter (Battery Charger)
- Alkaline battery adapter
- External Filter
- Organic Vapor Zeroing kit

Hard-case kits also include these accessories:

- Calibration adapter
- Calibration regulator and Flow controller

Standard Kit & Accessories

AC Adapter (Battery Charger)

WARNING

To reduce the risk of ignition of hazardous atmospheres, recharge battery only in area known to be non-hazardous. Remove and replace battery only in area known to be non-hazardous.

Ne charger les batteries que dans emplacements designés non-dangereuses.

A battery charging circuit is built into the instrument cradle. It only needs a regular AC to 12 VDC adapter (wall-mount transformer, part number 500-0114-000) to charge the instrument.

To charge the battery inside the instrument:

1. Power off the instrument.
2. Connect the AC adapter to the DC jack on the instrument's cradle. If the instrument is off, it automatically turns on.
3. While charging, the display message shows "Charging." The Primary LED on the cradle flashes green when charging.
4. When the battery is fully charged, the LED changes to glowing green continuously, and the message "Fully charged" appears on the

display. If there is a charging error, the LED glows red continuously.

A completely discharged instrument can be charged to full capacity within 8 hours. Batteries drain slowly even if an instrument is off. Therefore, if the instrument has been in storage or has not been charged for several days or longer, check the charge before using it.

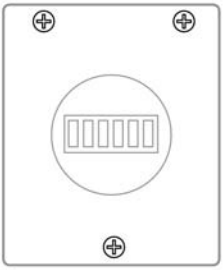
The factory-supplied battery is designed to last for 16 hours of normal operation (no alarm), for a new battery under the optimum circumstances. As the battery becomes older or is subject to adverse conditions (such as cold ambient temperature), its capacity will be significantly reduced.

Alkaline Battery Adapter

An alkaline battery adapter is supplied with each instrument. The adapter (part number 059-3052-000) accepts four AA alkaline batteries (use only Duracell MN1500) and provides approximately 12 hours of operation. The adapter is intended to be used in emergency situations when there is no time to charge the Li-ion battery pack.

To insert batteries into the adapter:

1. Remove the three Philips-head screws to open the compartment in the adapter.
2. Insert four fresh AA batteries as indicated by the polarity (+/-) markings.
3. Replace the cover. Replace the three screws.



To install the adapter in the instrument:

1. Remove the Li-ion battery pack from the instrument by sliding the tab and tilting out the battery.
2. Replace it with the alkaline battery adapter
3. Slide the tab back into place to secure the battery adapter.

IMPORTANT!

Alkaline batteries cannot be recharged. The instrument's internal circuit detects alkaline batteries and will not allow recharging. If you place the instrument in its cradle, the alkaline battery will not be recharged. The internal charging circuit is designed to prevent damage to alkaline batteries and the charging circuit when alkaline batteries are installed inside the instrument. If you try to charge an alkaline batteries installed in the instrument, the instrument's display will say, "Alkaline Battery," indicating that it will not charge the alkaline batteries.

Note: When replacing alkaline batteries, dispose of old ones properly.

WARNING!

To reduce the risk of ignition of hazardous atmospheres, recharge the battery only in areas known to be non-hazardous. Remove and replace the battery only in areas known to be non-hazardous.

External Filter

The external filter is made of PTFE (Teflon®) membrane with a 0.45 micron pore size to prevent dust or other particles from being sucked into the sensor manifold, which would cause extensive damage to the instrument. It prolongs the operating life of the sensor. To install the external filter, simply connect it to the instrument's inlet tube.

Optional Accessories

Calibration Adapter

The calibration adapter for the instrument is a simple 6-inch Tygon tubing with a metal adapter on one end. During calibration, simply insert the metal adapter into the regular gas inlet probe of the instrument and the tubing to the gas regulator on the gas bottle.

Calibration Regulator

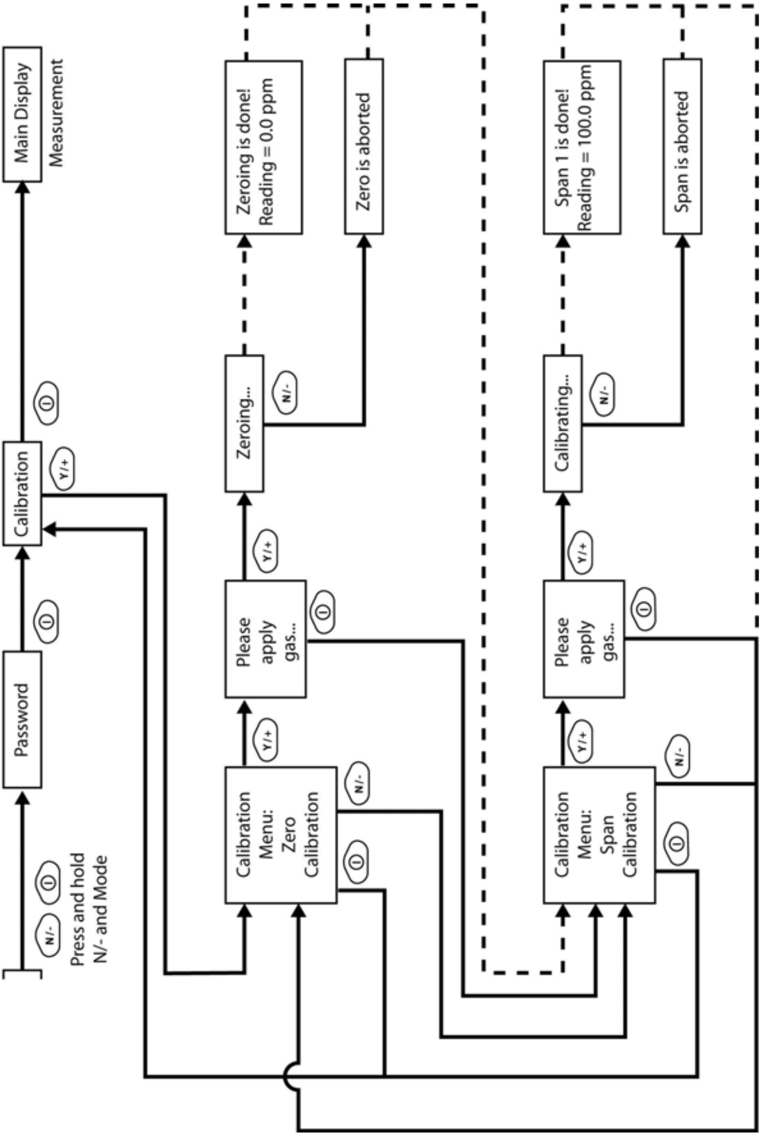
The Calibration Regulator is used in the calibration process. It regulates the gas flow rate from the Span gas cylinder into the gas inlet of the instrument during calibration process. The maximum flow rate allowed by the flow controller is about 0.5L/min (500 cc per min.). Alternatively, a demand-flow regulator or a Tedlar gas bag may be used to match the pump flow precisely.

Organic Vapor Zeroing Kit

The Organic Vapor Zeroing Kit is used for filtering organic air contaminants that may affect the zero calibration reading. To use the Organic Vapor Zeroing Kit, simply connect the filter to the inlet port of the instrument.

Standard Two-Point Calibration (Zero & Span)

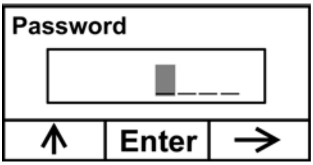
The following diagram shows the instrument's calibrations in Basic/Hygiene mode.



Note: Dashed line indicates automatic progression.

Entering Calibration

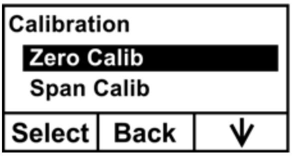
1. Press and hold [MODE] and [N/-] until you see the Password screen.



2. In Basic User Level, you do not need a password to perform calibrations. Instead of inputting a password, enter calibration by pressing [MODE].

   Note: If you inadvertently press [Y/+] and change any of the numbers, simply press [MODE] and you will be directed to the calibration menu.

The Calibration screen is now visible with Zero Calibration highlighted.



These are your options:

- Press [Y/+] to select the highlighted calibration (Zero Calib or Span Calib).
- Press [MODE] to exit calibration and return to the main display and resume measurement.
- Press [N/-] to toggle the highlighted calibration type.

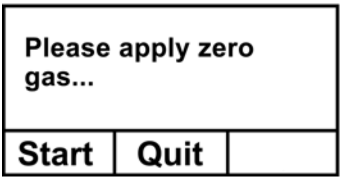
Zero (Fresh Air) Calibration

This procedure determines the zero point of the sensor calibration curve. To perform a fresh air calibration, use the calibration adapter to connect the instrument to a "fresh" air source such as from a cylinder or Tedlar bag (optional accessory). The "fresh" air is clean, dry air without organic impurities and an oxygen value of 20.9%. If such an air cylinder is not available, any clean ambient air without detectable contaminants or a charcoal filter can be used.

At the Zero Calibration menu, you can proceed to perform a Zero calibration or bypass Zero calibration and perform a Span calibration. You may also go back to the initial Calibration menu if you want to exit calibration.

- Press [Y/+] to start calibration.
- Press [MODE] to quit and return to the main calibration display.

If you have pressed [Y/+] to enter Zero calibration, then you will see this message:



Please apply zero gas...

1. Turn on your Zero calibration gas.
2. Press [Y/+] to start calibration.

   Note: At this point, you may press [MODE] if you decide that you do not want to initiate calibration. This will take you directly to the Calibration menu, highlighted for Span calibration.

3. Zero calibration starts a 30-second countdown and displays this message:

   Zeroing...

During the zeroing process, the instrument performs the Zero calibration automatically and does not require any action on your part.

Note: To abort the zeroing process at any time and proceed to Span calibration, press [N/-] at any time while zeroing is being performed. You will see a confirmation message that says "Zero aborted!" and then the Span calibration menu appears.

When Zero calibration is complete, you see this message:

Zeroing is done!
Reading = 0.0 ppm

The instrument will then show the Calibration menu on its display, with Span Calib highlighted.

Span Calibration

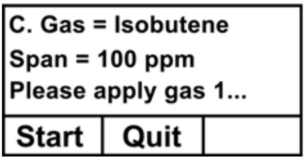
This procedure determines the second point of the sensor calibration curve for the sensor. A cylinder of standard reference gas (span gas) fitted with a 500 cc/min. flow-limiting regulator or a flow-matching regulator is the simplest way to perform this procedure. Choose the 500 cc/min. regulator only if the flow rate matches or slightly exceeds the flow rate of the instrument pump. Alternatively, the span gas can first be filled into a Tedlar bag or delivered through a demand-flow regulator. Connect the calibration adapter to the inlet port of the instrument, and connect the tubing to the regulator or Tedlar bag.

Another alternative is to use a regulator with >500 cc/min flow but allow the excess flow to escape through a T or an open tube. In the latter method, the span gas flows out through an open tube slightly wider than the probe, and the probe is inserted into the calibration tube.

At the Span Calibration menu, you perform a Span calibration. You may also go back to the Zero calibration menu or to the initial Calibration menu if you want to exit calibration.

- Press [Y/+] to enter Span calibration.
- Press [N/-] to skip Span calibration and return to Zero calibration.
- Press [MODE] to exit Span calibration and return to the top calibration menu.

If you have pressed [Y/+] to enter Span calibration, then you will see the name of your Span gas (the default is isobutylene) and the span value in parts per million (ppm). You will also see this message that prompts you:



C. Gas = Isobutene
Span = 100 ppm
Please apply gas 1...

1. Turn on your span calibration gas.
2. Press [Y/+] to initiate calibration.

Note: You may press [MODE] if you decide that you do not want to initiate calibration. This will abort the span calibration and take you directly to the Calibration menu for Zero calibration.

3. Span calibration starts and displays this message:

Calibrating...

During the Span calibration process, there is a 30-second countdown and the instrument performs the Span calibration automatically. It requires no actions on your part.

Note: If you want to abort the Span calibration process, press [N/-] at any time during the process. You will see a confirmation message that says "Span is aborted!" and then the Zero calibration menu appears. You can then proceed to perform a Zero calibration, perform a Span calibration, or exit to the topmost Calibration menu.

When Span calibration is complete, you see a message similar to this (the value is an example only):

Span 1 is done!
Reading = 100.0 ppm

The instrument then exits Span calibration and shows the Zero calibration menu on its display.

Note: The reading should be very close to the span gas value.

Exiting Two-Point Calibration In Basic User Level

When you are done performing calibrations, press [MODE], which corresponds with “Back” on the display. You will see the following message:

Updating settings…

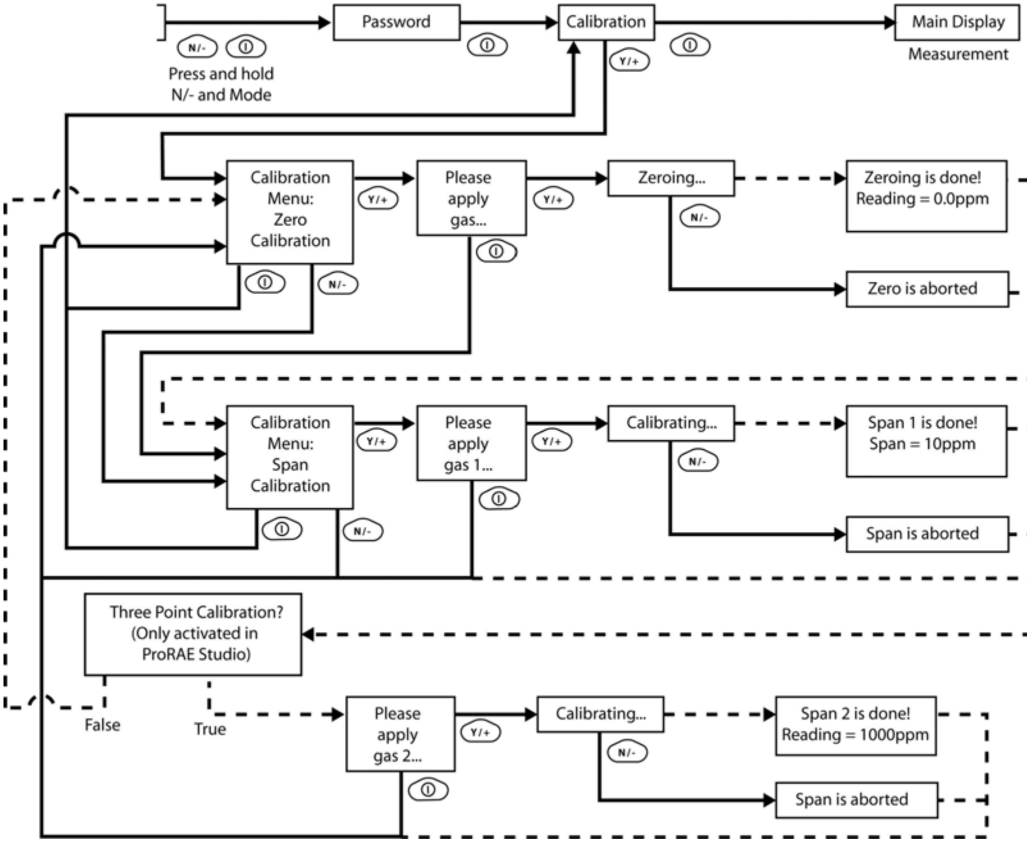
The instrument updates its settings and then returns to the main display. It begins or resumes monitoring.

Three-Point Calibration

For enhanced accuracy, it is possible to perform a second Span calibration in addition to the Zero and Span calibrations outlined in the previous section. Your instrument first must be set to allow this third calibration. This requires using ProRAE Studio software and a PC, as well as a higher concentration of calibration gas.

Note: Once the third calibration is set, you do not need to use ProRAE Studio to allow future 3-point calibrations. Also, you can only disable 3-point calibration capability by using ProRAE Studio again.

Perform the Zero and Span calibrations. After the first Span calibration (Span 1) is completed, the display a second Span calibration (Span 2) can be performed. The process is identical to the first calibration. As in the Span 1 calibration, you may exit and return to the Zero calibration screen if you choose not to perform this calibration or to abort it.



Note: Dashed line indicates automatic progression.

Span 2 Calibration

A cylinder of standard reference gas (span gas) fitted with a 500 cc/min. flow-limiting regulator or a flow-matching regulator is the simplest way to perform this procedure.

Note: This gas should be of a higher concentration than the gas used for Span 1 calibration.

Choose the 500 cc/min. regulator only if the flow rate matches or slightly exceeds the flow rate of the instrument pump. Alternatively, the span gas can first be filled into a Tedlar bag or delivered through a demand-flow regulator. Connect the calibration adapter to the inlet port of the instrument, and connect the tubing to the regulator or Tedlar bag.

Another alternative is to use a regulator with >500 cc/min flow but allow the excess flow to escape through a T or an open tube. In the latter method, the span gas flows out through an open tube slightly wider than the probe, and the probe is inserted into the calibration tube.

At the Span Calibration menu, you perform a Span calibration. You may also go back to the Zero calibration menu or to the initial Calibration menu if you want to exit calibration.

- Press [Y/+] to enter Span 2 calibration.
- Press [N/-] to skip Span calibration and return to Zero calibration.
- Press [MODE] to exit Span calibration and return to the top calibration menu.

If you have pressed [Y/+] to enter Span calibration, then you will see the name of your Span gas (the default is isobutylene) and the span value in parts per million (ppm). You will also see this message that prompts you:

Please apply gas...

4. Turn on your span calibration gas.
5. Press [Y/+] to initiate calibration.

Note: You may press [MODE] if you decide that you do not want to initiate calibration. This will take you directly to the Calibration menu for Zero calibration.

6. Span calibration starts a 30-second countdown and displays this message:

   Calibrating...

During the Span calibration process, the instrument performs the Span calibration automatically and does not require any action on your part.

Note: If you want to abort the Span calibration process, press [N/-] at any time during the process. You will see a confirmation message that says "Span is aborted!" and then the Zero calibration menu will appear. You can then proceed to perform a Zero calibration, perform a Span calibration, or exit to the topmost Calibration menu.

When Span calibration is complete, you will see a message similar to this (the value shown here is for example only):

Span 2 is done!
Reading = 1000 ppm

The instrument then exits Span calibration and shows the Zero calibration menu on its display.

Note: The reading should be very close to the span gas value.

Exiting Three-Point Calibration

When you are done performing calibrations, press [MODE], which corresponds with "Back" on the display. You will see the following message:

Updating settings…

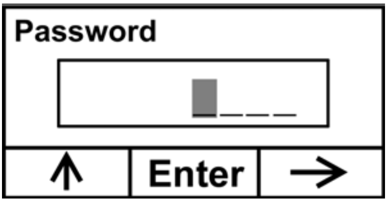
The instrument updates its settings and then returns to the main display. It begins or resumes monitoring.

Programming Mode

Programming Mode can be entered from either Hygiene Mode or Search Mode. If the current user mode is Basic, you must provide a 4-digit password to enter.

Entering Programming Mode

1. Press and hold [MODE] and [N/-] until you see the Password screen.



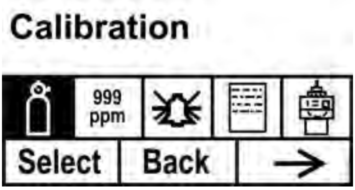
2. Input the 4-digit password:

- Increase the number from 0 through 9 by pressing [Y/+].
- Step from digit to digit using [N/-].
- Press [MODE] when you are done.

If you make a mistake, you can cycle through the digits by pressing [N/-] and then using [Y/+] to change the number in each position.

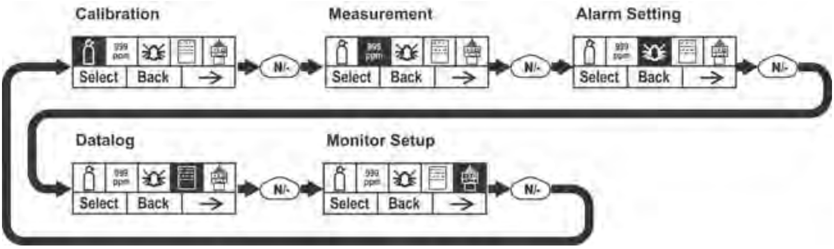
Note: The default password is 0000.

When you have successfully entered Programming Mode, you see this screen:



Note: The password can only be changed by connecting the instrument to a PC running ProRAE Studio software. Follow the instructions in ProRAE Studio to change it.

The Calibration label is shown and its icon is highlighted, but you can press [N/-] to step from one programming menu to the next, with the name of the menu shown at the top of the display and the corresponding icon highlighted. As you repeatedly press [N/-], the selection moves from left to right, and you see these screens:



Note: When you reach Monitor Setup and press [N/-], the menu cycles back to Calibration.

Programming Mode Menus

The Programming Mode allows anyone with the password to change the instrument's settings, calibrate the instrument, modify the sensor configuration, enter user information, etc. Programming Mode has five menus. Each menu includes several sub-menus to perform additional programming functions.

This table shows the menus and sub-menus:

	999 ppm			
Calibration	**Measurement**	**Alarm Setting**	**Datalog**	**Monitor Setup**
Zero Calibration	Meas. Gas	High Alarm	Clear Datalog	Op Mode
Span Calibration	Meas. Unit	Low Alarm	Interval	Site ID
		STEL Alarm	Data Selection	User ID
		TWA Alarm	Datalog Type	User Mode
		Alarm Type		Date
		Buzzer & Light		Time
				Pump Duty Cycle
				Pump Speed
				Temperature Unit
				Language
				Radio Power
				Real Time Protocol
				Power On Zero
				Unit ID
				LCD Contrast

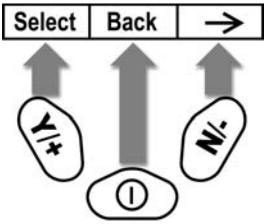
Once you enter Programming Mode, the LCD displays the first menu, Calibration. Each subsequent menu is accessed by pressing [N/-] repeatedly until the desired menu is displayed. To enter a sub-menu of a menu, press [Y/+].

Exiting Programming Mode

To exit Programming Mode and return to normal operation, press [MODE] once at any of the programming menu displays. You will see "Updating Settings…" as changes are registered and the mode changes.

Navigating Programming Mode Menus

Navigating through the Programming Mode menus is easy and consistent, using a single interface format of "Select," "Back" and "Next" at the top level. The three control buttons correspond to these choices as shown:



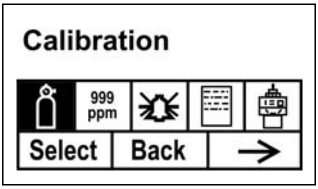
Note: Pressing [MODE] in the Programming Mode's top level causes the instrument to exit Programming Mode and return to monitoring.

The three keys perform the following functions in Programming Mode:

Key	Function in Programming Mode
[MODE]:	Exit menu when pressed momentarily or exit data entry mode
[Y/+]:	Increase alphanumerical value for data entry or confirm (yes) for a question
[N/-]:	Provides a "no" response to a question

Calibration

Two types of calibration are available: Zero (fresh air) and Span.



Select Zero or Span Calibration by pressing [N/+]. Once your choice is highlighted, press [Y/+].

Zero Calibration

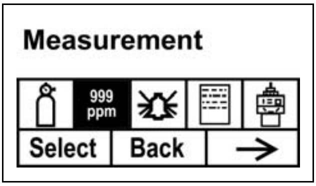
The procedure for performing a zero calibration is covered on page 35.

Span Calibration

The procedure for performing a basic span calibration is covered on page 35.

Measurement

The sub-menus for Measurement are Measurement Gas and Measurement Unit.



Meas. Gas

Measurement gases are organized in four lists:

- My List is a customized list of gases that you create. It contains a maximum of 10 gases and can only be built in ProRAE Studio on a PC and transferred to the instrument. **Note:** The first gas in the list is always isobutylene (it cannot be removed from the list).
- Last Ten is a list of the last ten gases used by your instrument. The list is built automatically and is only updated if the gas selected from Custom Gases or Library is not already in the Last Ten. This ensures that there is no repetition.
- Gas Library is a library that consists of all the gases found in RAE Systems' Technical Note TN-106 (available online at www.raesystems.com).
- Custom Gases are gases with user-modified parameters. Using ProRAE Studio, all parameters defining a gas can be modified, including the name, span value(s), correction factor, and default alarm limits.

1. Scroll through each list by pressing [N/-].
2. Press [Y/+] to select one (My List, Last Ten, Gas Library, or Custom Gases).

3. Once you are in one of the categories, press [N/-] to scroll through its list of options and [Y/+] to select one. (If you press [MODE], you exit to the next submenu.)
4. Press [Y/+] to save your choice or [N/-] to undo your selection.

Leave the sub-menu and return to the Programming Mode menus by pressing [MODE].

Meas. Unit

Standard available measurement units include:

Abbreviation	**Unit**	**MiniRAE 3000**
ppm	parts per million	Yes
ppb	parts per billion	
mg/m3	milligrams per cubic meter	Yes
ug/m3	micrograms per cubic meter	

- Scroll through the list by pressing [N/-].
- Select by pressing [Y/+].
- Save your selection by pressing [Y/+] or undo your selection by pressing [N/-].

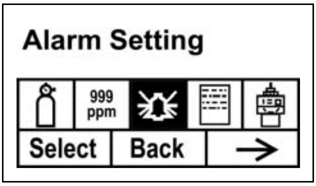
Leave the sub-menu and return to the Programming Mode menus by pressing [MODE].

Alarm Setting

During each measurement period, the gas concentration is compared with the programmed alarm limits (gas concentration alarm limit settings: Low, High, TWA and STEL). If the concentration exceeds any of the preset limits, the loud buzzer and red flashing LED are activated immediately to warn of the alarm condition.

An alarm signal summary is shown on page 27.

In this menu, you can change the High and Low alarm limits, the STEL limit, and the TWA. Press [Y/+] to to enter the Alarm Setting menu. **Note:** All settings are shown in ppb (parts per billion), or µg/m^3 (micrograms per cubic meter), depending on your setting.



1. Scroll through the Alarm Limit sub-menu using the [N/-] key until the display shows the desired limit to be changed (High Alarm, Low Alarm, STEL Alarm, and TWA Alarm)
2. Press [Y/+] to select one of the alarm types. The display shows a flashing cursor on the left-most digit of the previously stored alarm limit.
3. Press [Y/+] to increase each digit's value.
4. Press [N/-] to advance to the next digit.
5. Again, use [Y/+] to increase the number.

Repeat this process until all numbers are entered.

Press [MODE] when you are done.

- Press [Y/+] to save the changes.
- Press [N/-] to undo the changes and revert to the previous settings.

When all alarm types have been changed or bypassed, press [MODE] to exit to the Programming Menu.

High Alarm

You can change the High Alarm limit value. The value is typically set by the instrument to match the value for the current calibration gas. It is expressed in parts per billion (ppb). **Note:** The default value depends on the measurement gas.

To change the High Alarm value:

1. Press [Y/+] to increase each digit's value.
2. Press [N/-] to advance to the next digit.
3. Again, use [Y/+] to increase the number.

Repeat this process until all numbers are entered.
When you have completed your selections, press [MODE]. You will see two choices: Save and Undo. You have the opportunity to register the new settings or to change your mind and revert to your previous settings.

Press [Y/+] to save the changes.
Press [N/-] to undo the changes and revert to the previous settings.

Low Alarm

You can change the Low Alarm limit value. The value is typically set by the instrument to match the value for the current calibration gas. It is expressed in parts per billion (ppb). **Note:** The default value depends on the measurement gas.

To change the Low Alarm value:

1. Press [Y/+] to increase each digit's value.
2. Press [N/-] to advance to the next digit.
3. Again, use [Y/+] to increase the number.

Repeat this process until all numbers are entered.

When you have completed your selections, press [MODE]. You will see two choices: Save and Undo. You have the opportunity to register the new settings or to change your mind and revert to your previous settings.

- Press [Y/+] to save the changes.
- Press [N/-] to undo the changes and revert to the previous settings.

STEL Alarm

You can change the STEL Alarm limit value. The value is typically set by the instrument to match the value for the calibration gas. It is expressed in parts per billion (ppb). **Note:** The default value depends on the measurement gas.

To change the STEL Alarm value:

1. Press [Y/+] to increase each digit's value.
2. Press [N/-] to advance to the next digit.
3. Again, use [Y/+] to increase the number.

Repeat this process until all numbers are entered.

When you have completed your selections, press [MODE]. You will see two choices: Save and Undo. You have the opportunity to register the new settings or to change your mind and revert to your previous settings.

- Press [Y/+] to save the changes.
- Press [N/-] to undo the changes and revert to the previous settings.

TWA Alarm

You can change the TWA (time-weighted average) Alarm limit value. The value is typically set by the instrument to match the value for the calibration gas. It is expressed in parts per billion (ppb). **Note:** The default value depends on the measurement gas.

To change the TWA Alarm value:

1. Press [Y/+] to increase each digit's value.
2. Press [N/-] to advance to the next digit.
3. Again, use [Y/+] to increase the number.

Repeat this process until all numbers are entered.

When you have completed your selections, press [MODE]. You will see two choices:

- Save
- Undo

You have the opportunity to register the new settings or to change your mind and revert to your previous settings.

- Press [Y/+] to save the changes.
- Press [N/-] to undo the changes and revert to the previous settings.

Alarm Type

There are two selectable alarm types:

Latched	When the alarm is triggered, you can manually stop the alarm. The latched setting only controls alarms for High Alarm, Low Alarm, STEL Alarm, and TWA alarm. **Note:** To clear an alarm when the instrument is set to “Latched,” press [Y/+] when the main (Reading) display is shown.
Automatic Reset	When the alarm condition is no longer present, the alarm stops and resets itself.

1. Press **[N/-]** to step from one alarm type to the other.
2. Press **[Y/+]** to select an alarm type.

When you have completed your selections, press [MODE].

You will see two choices: Save and Undo. You have the opportunity to register the new settings or to change your mind and revert to your previous settings.

- Press [Y/+] to save the changes.
- Press [N/-] to undo the changes and revert to the previous settings.

Buzzer & Light

The buzzer and light alarms can be programmed to be on or off individually or in combination. Your choices are:

- Both on
- Light only
- Buzzer only
- Both off

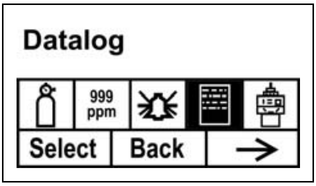
1. Press [N/-] to step from one option to the next.
2. Press [Y/+] to make your selection (the dark circle in the "radio button" indicates your selection).
3. When you have completed your selections, press [MODE].

   You will see two choices: Save and Undo. You have the opportunity to register the new settings or to change your mind and revert to your previous settings.

   - Press [Y/+] to save the changes.
   - Press [N/-] to undo the changes and revert to the previous settings.

Datalog

The instrument calculates and stores the concentration and ID of each sample taken. In the datalog sub-menu, a user can perform the tasks and functions shown below.



1. Scroll through the Datalog sub-menu using the [N/-] key until the display shows the desired parameter to be changed:

   Clear Datalog
   Interval
   Data Selection
   Datalog Type

2. Press [Y/+] to make your selection. Exit by pressing [MODE] for Back.

Clear Datalog

This erases all the data stored in the datalog.

Note: Once the datalog is cleared, the data cannot be recovered.

Press [Y/+] to clear the datalog. The display asks, "Are you sure?"

- Press [Y/+] if you want to clear the datalog. When it has been cleared, the display shows "Datalog Cleared!"
- Press [N/-] if you do not want to clear the datalog.

The display changes, and you are taken to the next sub-menu, Interval.

Interval

Intervals are shown in seconds. The default value is 60 seconds. The maximum interval is 3600 seconds.

1. Press [Y/+] to increase each digit's value.
2. Press [N/-] to advance to the next digit.
3. Again, use [Y/+] to increase the number.

Repeat this process until all numbers are entered.

When you have completed your selections, press [MODE].

You will see two choices: Save and Undo. You have the opportunity to register the new settings or to change your mind and revert to your previous settings.

- Press [Y/+] to save the changes.
- Press [N/-] to undo the changes and revert to the previous settings.

Data Selection

Data Selection allows you to select which types of data are stored and made available when you offload your datalog to a computer via ProRAE Studio software.

You can choose any or all of three types of data (you must choose at least one):

- Average
- Maximum
- Minimum

1. Press [N/-] to step from one option to the next. The highlighter indicates your choice.
2. Press [Y/+] to toggle your selection on or off (the check box indicates "on" with an "X").
3. When you have completed your selections, press [MODE].

You will see two choices: Save and Undo. You have the opportunity to register the new settings or to change your mind and revert to your previous settings.

- Press [Y/+] to save the changes.
- Press [N/-] to undo the changes and revert to the previous settings.

Datalog Type

The instrument has three datalog types:

Auto	Default mode. Collects datalog information when the instrument is sampling.
Manual	Datalogging occurs only when the instrument’s datalogging is manually started (see below for details).
Snapshot	Datalogs only during single-event capture sampling.

Note: You can only choose one datalog type to be active at a time.

1. Press [N/-] to step from one option to the next.
2. Press [Y/+] to make your selection (the dark circle in the “radio button” indicates “on”).
3. When you have completed your selection, press [MODE].

You will see two choices: Save and Undo. You have the opportunity to register the new settings or to change your mind and revert to your previous settings.

- Press [Y/+] to save the changes.

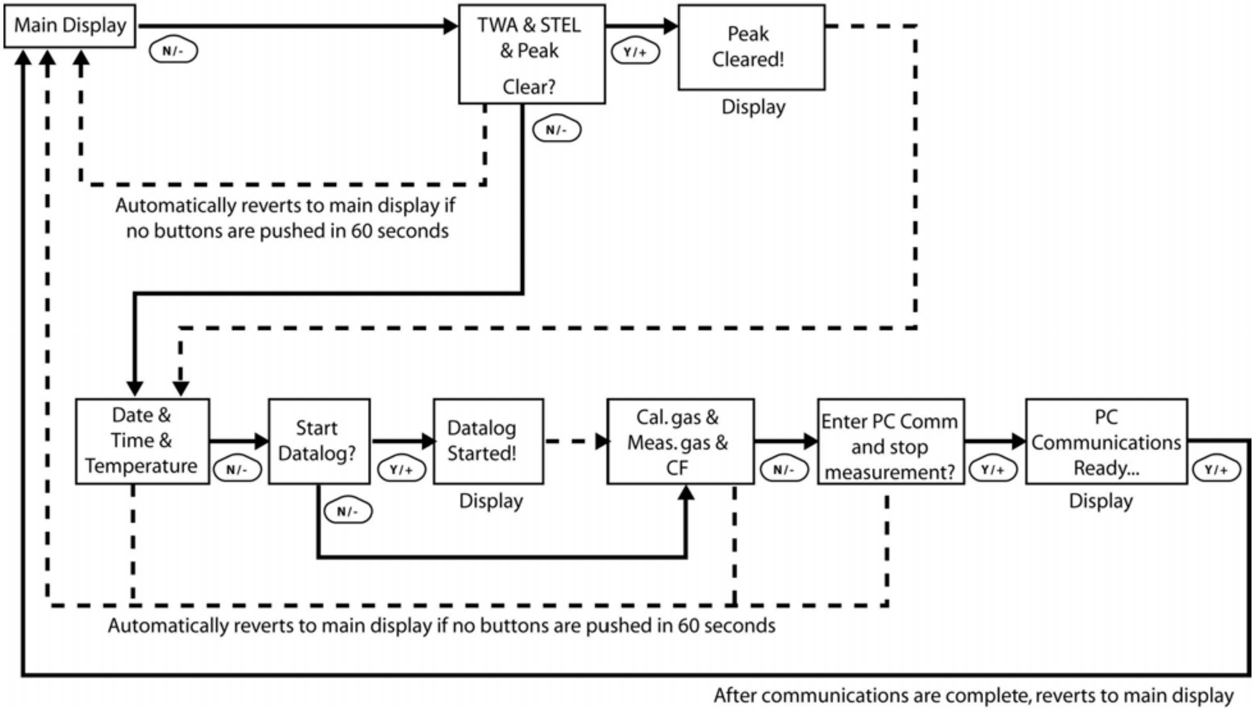
Press [N/-] to undo the changes and revert to the previous settings.

Manual Datalog

When the instrument is set to Manual Datalog, you turn datalogging on and off by stepping through the displays from the Main Display, and then pressing the keys to select datalog on/off functions.

- When you reach the screen that says “Start Datalog?” press [Y/+] to start it. You see “Datalog Started,” confirming that datalogging is now on.

When you reach the screen that says “Stop Datalog?” press [Y/+] to stop it. You see “Datalog Stopped,” confirming that datalogging is now off.



Note: Dashed line indicates automatic progression.

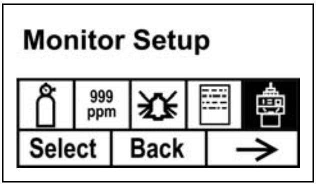
Snapshot Datalog

When the instrument is in Snapshot datalogging mode, it captures a single "snapshot" of the data at the moment of your choosing. Whenever the instrument is on and it is set to Snapshot, all you have to do is press [MODE] each time you want to capture a snapshot of the data at that instant.

When you send the data to a computer using ProRAE Studio, the data snapshots are uniquely identified by time and other parameters.

Monitor Setup

Many settings can be accessed in this menu, including setting the date and time and adjusting the pump's on/off duty cycle.



Op Mode

Under Monitor Setup is "Op Mode."

Press [Y/+] to select.

You see two options (one is highlighted):

Hygiene
Search

The current mode is indicated by a dark circle within the circle in front of either Hygiene or Search.

1. Select Hygiene or Search by pressing [N/-]. The highlighting changes from one to the other each time you press [N/-].
2. Press [Y/+] to select that mode for the instrument.
3. Press [MODE] when you want to register your selection to place the instrument in the selected mode.
4. Press [Y/+] to commit the change and exit to the Monitor Setup screen, or press [N/-] to Undo (exit to the Monitor Setup screen without changing the Mode).

Site ID

Enter an 8-digit alphanumeric/character Site ID in the programming mode. This Site ID is included in the datalog report.

1. Press [Y/+] and the display shows the current site ID. Example: "RAE00001." Note that the left-most digit flashes to indicate it is the selected one.
2. Press [Y/+] to step through all 26 letters (A to Z) and 10 numerals (0 to 9).
   Note: The last four digits must be numerals.
3. Press [N/-] to advance to the next digit. The next digit to the right flashes.

   Repeat this process until all eight digits of the new site ID are entered.

Press [MODE] to exit.

If there is any change to the existing site ID, the display shows "Save?" Press [Y/+] to accept the new site ID. Press [N/-] to discard the change and move to the next sub-menu.

User ID

Enter an 8-digit alphanumeric User ID in the programming mode. This User ID is included in the datalog report.

1. Press [Y/+] and the display shows the current User ID. Example: "RAE00001." Note that the left-most digit flashes to indicate it is the selected one.
2. Press [Y/+] to step through all 26 letters (A to Z) and 10 numerals (0 to 9).
3. Press [N/-] to advance to the next digit. The next digit to the right flashes.

Repeat this process until all eight digits of the new User ID are entered.

Press [MODE] to exit.

If there is any change to the existing User ID, the display shows "Save" Press [Y/+] to accept the new site ID. Press [N/-] to discard (undo) the change and move to the next sub-menu.

User Mode

The instrument has two user modes:

Basic	Basic users can only see and use a basic set of functions.
Advanced	Advanced users can see all screens and perform all available functions.

Note: The default value for User Mode is Basic.

To change the User Mode:

1. Press [N/-] to step from one option to the next. The highlighting changes each time you press [N/-].
2. Press [Y/+] to make your selection (the dark circle in the "radio button" indicates "on").
3. When you have completed your selection, press [MODE].
4. Press [Y/+] to accept the new User Mode. Press [N/-] to discard the change and move to the next sub-menu.

Date

The Date is expressed as Month/Day/Year, with two digits for each.

1. Press [Y/+] and the display shows the current date. Note that the left-most digit flashes to indicate it is selected.
2. Press [Y/+] to step through all 10 numerals (0 to 9).
3. Press [N/-] to advance to the next digit. The next digit to the right flashes.

Repeat this process until all six digits of the new date are entered.

Press [MODE] to exit.

- Press [Y/+] to save the new date.
- Press [N/-] to undo the change and move to the next sub-menu.

Time

The Time is expressed as Hours/Minutes/Seconds, with two digits for each. The time is in 24-hour (military) format.

1. Press [Y/+] and the display shows the current time. Note that the left-most digit flashes to indicate it is selected.
2. Press [Y/+] to step through all 10 numerals (0 to 9).

3. Press [N/-] to advance to the next digit. The next digit to the right flashes.

   Repeat this process until all six digits of the new time are entered.

Press [MODE] to exit.

- Press [Y/+] to save the new date.
- Press [N/-] to undo the change and move to the next sub-menu.

Duty Cycle

The pump’s duty cycle is the ratio of its on time to off time. The duty cycle ranges from 50% to 100% (always on), and the period is 10 seconds. Therefore, a duty cycle of 60% means that the pump is on for 6 seconds and off for four seconds. Duty cycling is employed by the instrument to clean the PID. A lower duty cycle has a greater effect on keeping the PID clean than a higher duty cycle.

Important! Pump duty cycling is interrupted when the instrument senses a gas. The pump’s duty cycle is disabled when the measurement is greater than the 2ppm threshold and is re-enabled when the reading falls below 90% of the threshold (1.8 ppm).

1. Press [Y/+] to increase the value.
2. When you have completed your selection, press [MODE].
   - Press [Y/+] to save the new duty cycle value.
   - Press [N/-] to undo the change and move to the next sub-menu.

Temperature Unit

The temperature display can be switched between Fahrenheit and Celsius units.

1. Press [N/-] to step from one option to the next.
2. Press [Y/+] to make your selection (the dark circle in the "radio button" indicates "on").
3. When you have completed your selection, press [MODE].
    - Press [Y/+] to save the new temperature unit.
    - Press [N/-] to undo the change and move to the next sub-menu.

Pump Speed

The pump can operate at two speeds, high and low. Running at low speed is quieter and conserves a small amount of power. There is almost no difference in sampling accuracy.

1. Press [N/-] to step from one option to the next.
2. Press [Y/+] to make your selection (the dark circle in the "radio button" indicates "on").
3. When you have completed your selection, press [MODE].
    - Press [Y/+] to save the new temperature unit.
    - Press [N/-] to undo the change and move to the next sub-menu.

Language

English is the default language, but other languages can be selected for the instrument.

1. Press [N/-] to step from one option to the next.
2. Press [Y/+] to make your selection (the dark circle in the "radio button" indicates "on").
3. When you have completed your selection, press [MODE].
    - Press [Y/+] to save your new language choice.
    - Press [N/-] to undo it and return to the previous language selection.

Radio Power

The radio connection can be turned on or off.

1. Press [N/-] to step from one option to the next (on or off).
2. Press [Y/+] to make your selection (the dark circle in the "radio button" indicates that the option is selected).
3. When you have completed your selection, press [MODE].

    - Press [Y/+] to accept the new radio setting (on or off).
    - Press [N/-] to discard the change and move to the next sub-menu.

Real Time Protocol

Real Time Protocol is the setting for data transmission.

The choices are:

P2M (cable)	Point to multipoint. Data is transferred from the instrument to multiple locations using a wired connection. Default data rate: 19200 bps.
P2P (cable)	Point to point. Data is transferred only between the instrument and one other location, such as a computer. Default data rate: 9600 bps.
P2M (wireless)	Point to multipoint, wireless. Data is transferred wirelessly and can be received by multiple receivers.

1. Press [N/-] to step from one option to the next.
2. Press [Y/+] to make your selection (the dark circle in the "radio button" indicates "on").
3. When you have completed your selection, press [MODE].
    - Press [Y/+] to save the new real-time communications protocol.
    - Press [N/-] to undo the change and move to the next sub-menu.

Power On Zero

When Power On Zero is on, the instrument performs a zero calibration when it is turned on.

1. Press [N/-] to step from one option to the next.
2. Press [Y/+] to make your selection (the dark circle in the "radio button" indicates your selection).
3. When you have completed your selection, press [MODE].
    - Press [Y/+] to save the change.
    - Press [N/-] to discard the change and move to the next sub-menu.

Unit ID

This three-digit number keeps data separated by instrument when more than one instrument is used in a network. If multiple sensing units are attempting to communicate with the same Host, then the units must all have a different Unit ID.

1. Press [Y/+] to step through all 10 numerals (0 to 9). If you pass the numeral you want, keep pressing [Y/+]. After it counts up to 9, it starts counting up from 0 again.
2. Press [N/-] to advance to the next digit. The next digit to the right flashes.

Repeat this process until all three digits of the Unit ID are entered.

3. Press [MODE] when you are done.
    - Press [Y/+] to save the change.
    - Press [N/-] to discard the change and move to the next sub-menu.

LCD Contrast

The display's contrast can be increased or decreased from its default setting. You may not need to ever change the default setting, but sometimes you can optimize the display to suit extreme temperature and ambient brightness/darkness conditions.

- The minimum value is 20.
- The maximum value is 60.

1. Press [Y/+] to increase the value or [N/-] to decrease the value.
2. Press [MODE] to save your selection.
    - Press [Y/+] to save your new contrast value.
    - Press [N/-] to undo it and return to the previous value.

Hygiene Mode

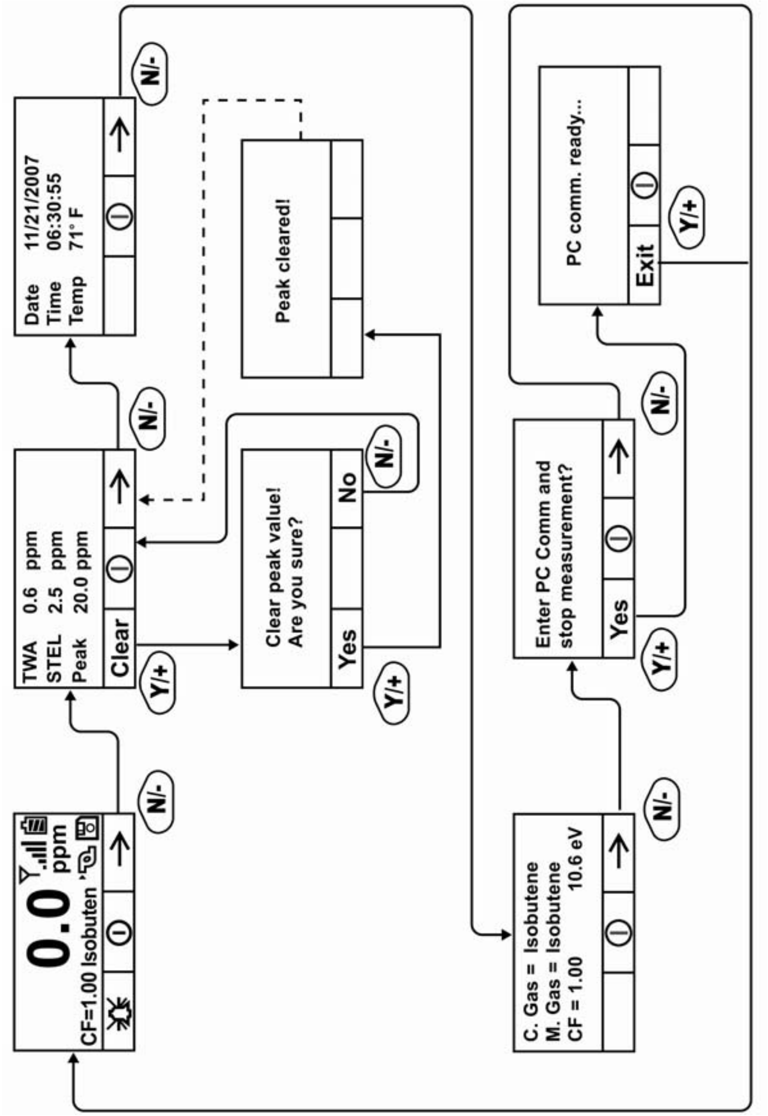
The instrument usually operates in Hygiene Mode, which provides basic functionality. However, it is possible to operate it in a second mode called Search Mode. Here are the primary differences:

Hygiene Mode: Automatic measurements, continuously running and datalogging, and calculates additional exposure values.

Search Mode: Manual start/stop of measurements and display of certain exposure values.

Basic User Level & Hygiene Mode

The default setting is navigated in the following way:



Note: Dashed line indicates automatic progression.

Pressing [N/-] steps you from screen to screen. Options include clearing the Peak value and turning on the instrument's PC Communications for data transfer to a PC.

Entering Search Mode From Hygiene Mode

In order to change the instrument's operational mode from Hygiene Mode to Search Mode, you must enter the password-protected Programming Mode:

1. Hold [MODE] and [N/-] until you see the password screen.
2. Use [Y/+] to increment to the number you want for the first digit. (If you pass by the desired number, press [Y/+] until it cycles through to 0 again. Then press [Y/+] until you reach the desired number.)
3. Press [N/-] to advance to the next digit.
4. Again press [Y/+] to increment the number.
5. Press [N/-] to advance to the next digit.

Continue the process until all four numbers of the password have been input. Then press [MODE] to proceed.

The screen changes to icons with the label "Calibration."

1. Press [N/-] to advance to "Monitor Setup."
2. Press [Y/+] to select Monitor Setup.

Under Monitor Setup, you will see "Op Mode."

Press [Y/+] to select.

You will see:

Hygiene
Search

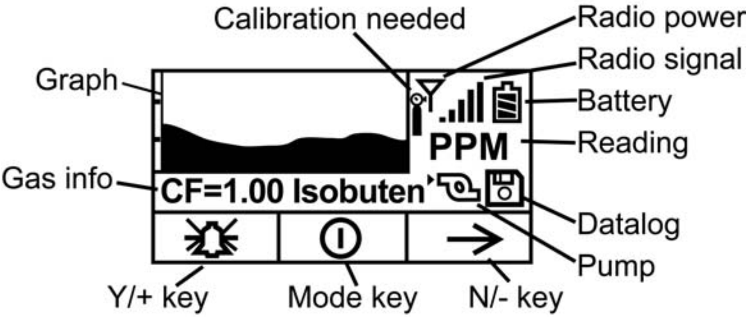
The current mode is indicated by a dark circle within the circle in front of either Hygiene or Search.

1. Select Hygiene or Search by pressing [N/-].
2. Press [Y/+] to place the instrument into the selected mode.

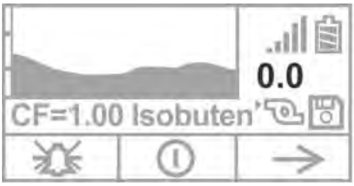
3. Press [MODE] when you want to register your selection to place the instrument in the selected mode.
4. Press [Y/+] to commit the change and exit to the Monitor Setup screen, or press [N/-] to Undo (exit to the Monitor Setup screen without changing the Mode).

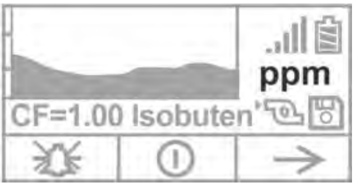
Optional Graphic Screen In Search Mode

Using ProRAE Studio, you can set your instrument to show a graphic display instead of a numeric display of ongoing data. Consult your ProRAE Studio disc for information.



During sampling, the display's readings are shown numerically, plus the graph tracks the highest readings over time. The numeric reading alternates between the value and the measurement units, as well:





Advanced User Level (Hygiene Mode Or Search Mode)

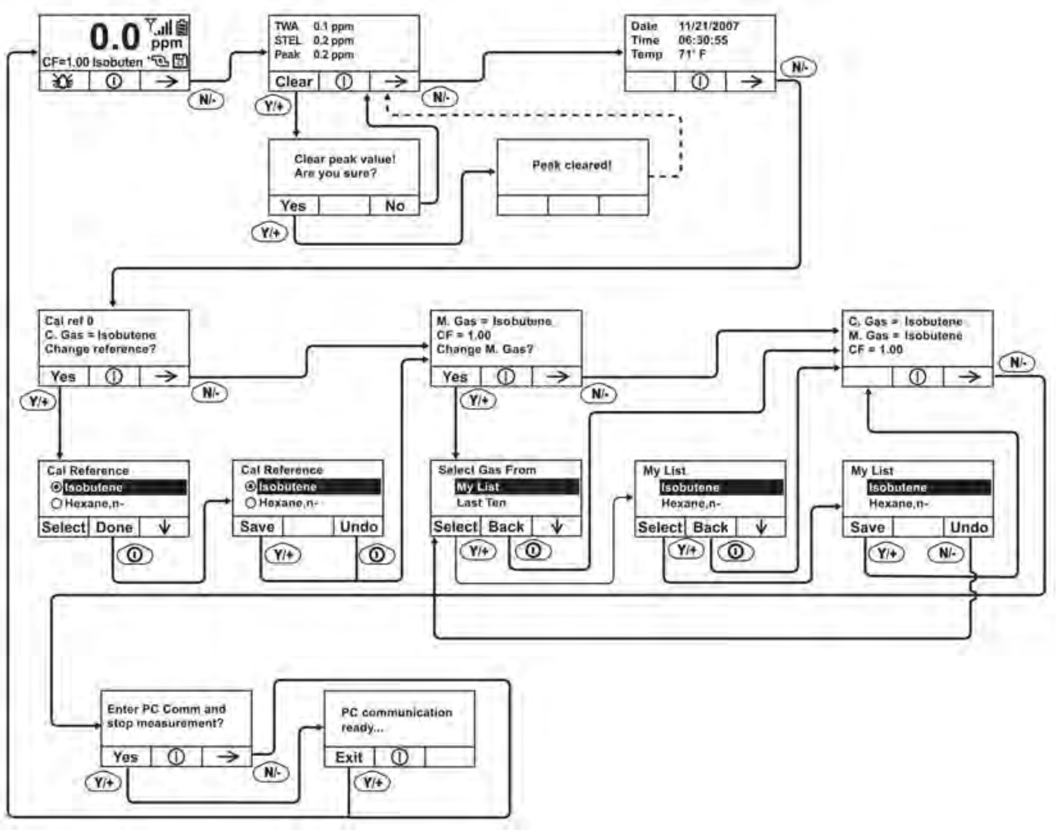
The User Mode called Advanced User Level allows a greater number of parameters to be changed than Basic User Level. It can be used with either of the Operation Modes, Hygiene Mode or Search Mode.

Advanced User Level & Hygiene Mode

With the instrument in Operation Mode: Hygiene Mode, enter User Mode: Advanced User Level (refer to the section called Monitor Mode for instructions).

Once you are in Advanced User Level and Hygiene Mode together, you can change the calibration reference and measurement gas, in addition to performing normal monitoring functions.

Pressing [N/-] progresses through the screens, while pressing [Y/+] selects options. Pressing [MODE] makes menu choices when it is shown for "Done" or "Back." Pressing and holding [Mode] whenever the circle with a vertical line in the middle is shown activates the countdown to shutoff.

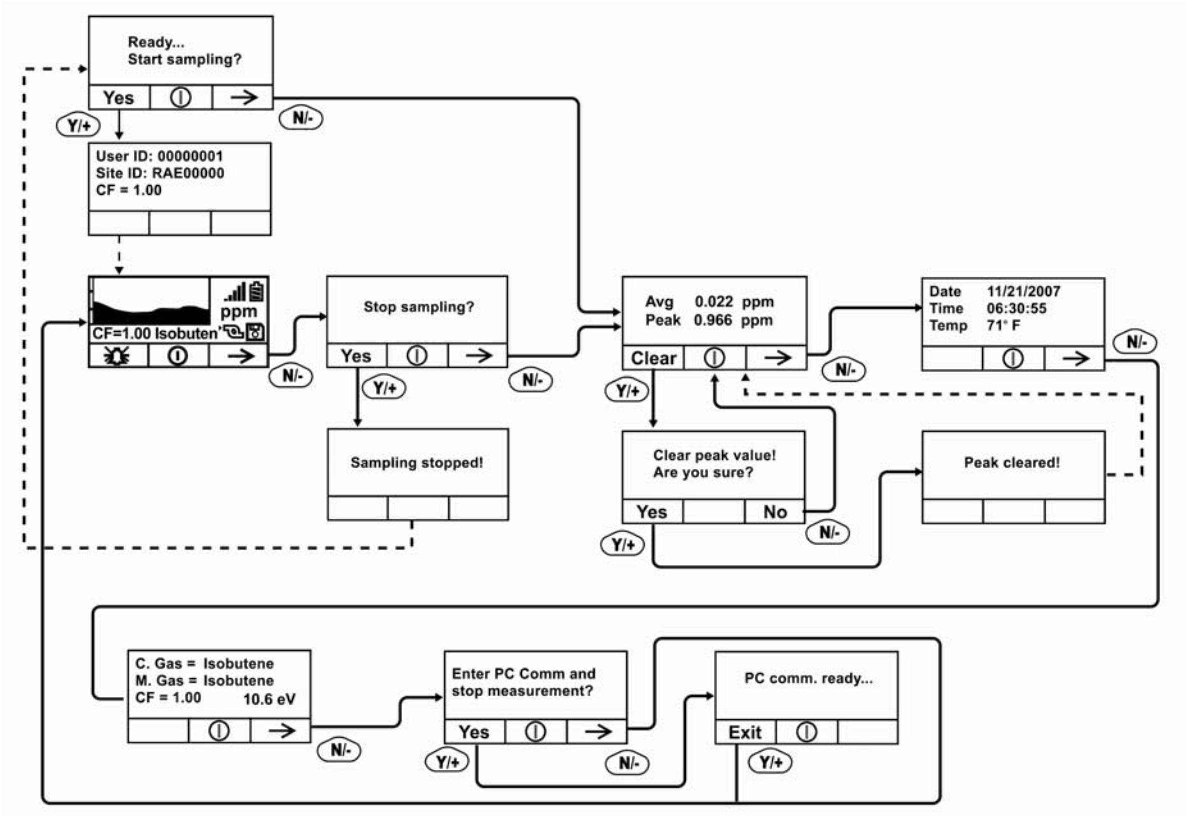


Note: Dashed line indicates automatic progression.

Basic User Level & Search Mode

With the instrument in Operation Mode: Search Mode, enter User Mode and select Basic User Level (refer to the section called User Mode for instructions).

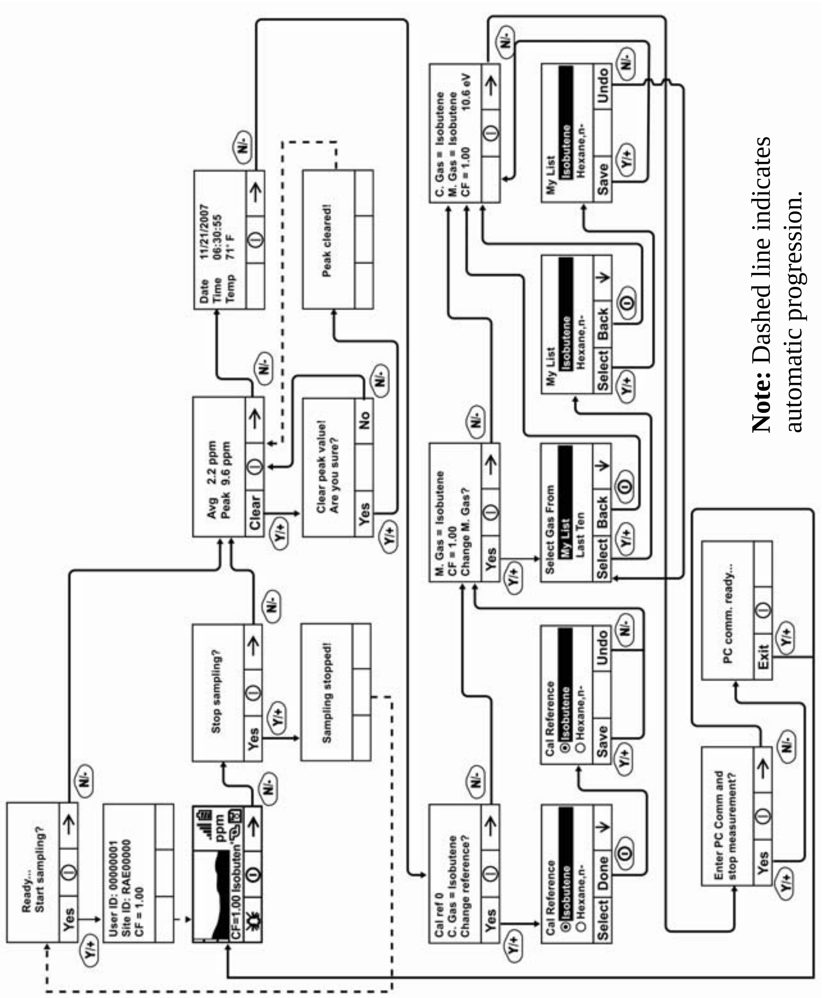
When the instrument is in Search Mode, it only samples when you activate sampling. When you see the display that says, “Ready…Start sampling?” press [Y/+] to start. The pump turns on and the instrument begins collecting data. To stop sampling, press [N/-] while the main display is showing. You will see a new screen that says, “Stop sampling?” Press [Y/+] to stop sampling. Press [N/-] if you want sampling to continue.



Note: Dashed line indicates automatic progression.

Advanced User Level & Search Mode

With the instrument in Operation Mode: Search Mode, enter User Mode and select Advanced User Level (refer to the section called Monitor Mode for instructions). Operation is similar to Basic User Level & Sampling Mode, but now allows you to change calibration and measurement reference gases. Refer to the section on measurement gases on page 52 for more details.



Note: Dashed line indicates automatic progression.

Diagnostic Mode

IMPORTANT! Diagnostic Mode is designed for servicing and manufacturing, and therefore is not intended for everyday use, even by advanced users. It provides raw data from sensors and about settings, but only allows adjustment of pump stall parameters, which should only be changed by qualified personnel.

Note: If the instrument is turned on in Diagnostic Mode and you switch to User Mode, datalog data remains in raw count form. To change to standard readings, you must restart the instrument.

Entering Diagnostic Mode

Note: To enter Diagnostic Mode, you must begin with the instrument turned off.

Press and hold [Y/+] and [MODE] until the instrument starts.

The instrument goes through a brief startup, and then displays raw data for the PID sensor. These numbers are raw sensor readings without calibration. The instrument is now in Diagnostic Mode.

Note: In Diagnostic Mode, the pump and lamp are normally on.

You can enter Programming Mode and calibrate the instrument as usual by pressing both [MODE] and [N/-] for three seconds.

You can enter Monitoring Mode by pressing [MODE] and [Y/+] together for three seconds.

Once the instrument is started up in Diagnostic Mode, you can switch between Diagnostic Mode and Monitoring Mode by pressing and holding [MODE] and [Y/+] simultaneously for two seconds.

In Diagnostic mode, you can step through parameter screens by pressing [MODE].

Adjusting The Pump Stall Threshold

If the gas inlet is blocked but the pump does not shut down, or the pump shuts down too easily with a slight blockage, the pump stall threshold value may be set too high or too low.

Use the following steps to adjust the pump stall threshold:

Pump High

In Diagnostic Mode, press the [MODE] key until "Pump High" is displayed. The display shows the maximum, minimum, and stall values for the pump at its high speed. Write down the "Max" reading.

Block the gas inlet and watch the pump current reading (labeled "I") increase. Write down its blocked reading. **Note:** If the pump current reading does not increase significantly (less than 10 counts), then there may be a leak in the gas inlet or the pump is weak or defective.

Add the two readings you wrote down. This is the average of the maximum block count and the maximum idle count. Divide that number by 2. Use the [Y/+] or [N/-] key to increase or decrease the stall value to equal that number.

Press the [MODE] key to exit this display.

Pump Low

In Diagnostic Mode, press the [MODE] key until "Pump Low" is displayed. The display shows the maximum, minimum, and stall values for the pump at its low speed. Write down the "Max" reading.

Block the gas inlet and watch the pump current reading (labeled "I") increase. Write down its blocked reading. **Note:** If the pump current reading does not increase significantly (less than 10 counts), then there may be a leak in the gas inlet or the pump is weak or defective.

Add the two readings you wrote down. This is the average of the maximum block count and the maximum idle count. Divide that number by 2. Use the [Y/+] or [N/-] key to increase or decrease the stall value to equal that number.

Press the [MODE] key to exit this display.

Exiting Diagnostic Mode

You can exit Diagnostic Mode and go directly to Programming Mode or Monitor Mode as outlined above, or you can exit Diagnostic Mode completely.

To exit Diagnostic Mode so that it cannot be re-entered without a restart:

Shut down the instrument. When it is off, restart it by holding the [MODE] key. Diagnostic Mode cannot be entered until the instrument is restarted as outlined in "Entering Diagnostic Mode."

Transferring Data To & From A Computer

Once you have connected your instrument cradle to the PC, you can can transfer data, including a download of the datalog to the computer and updates of firmware to the instrument (should this ever be necessary).

Downloading The Datalog To A PC

1. Connect the data cable to the PC and the cradle.
2. Place the instrument into its cradle. The charging LED should be illuminated.
3. Start ProRAE Studio on your PC.
4. From ProRAE Studio, select "Operation" and select Setup Connection.
5. Select the COM port to establish a communication link between the PC and the instrument.
6. To receive the datalog in the PC, select "Downlog Datalog."
7. When you see "Unit Information," click OK.

During the data transfer, the display shows a progress bar.

When the transfer is done, you will see a screen with the datalog information. You can now export this datalog for other use or printing.

Uploading Firmware To The instrument From A PC

Uploading new firmware to your instrument requires connecting the instrument and PC. Follow these steps to make the connection:

1. Connect the data cable to the PC and the cradle.
2. Place the instrument into its cradle. The charging LED should be illuminated.
3. Start RAEProgrammer 7000 on your PC.
4. From RAEProgrammer 7000, select "Operation" and select Setup Connection.
5. Select the COM port to establish a communication link between the PC and the instrument.
6. Select Operation → Download Firmware.

Once communication is established, follow the instructions that accompany RAEProgrammer 7000 and the firmware to upload the new firmware to your instrument.

Note: Check for the latest updates to ProRAEProgrammer 7000 at www.raesystems.com.

Maintenance

The major maintenance items of the instrument are:

- Battery pack
- Sensor module
- PID lamp
- Sampling pump
- Inlet connectors and filters

Note: Maintenance should be performed by qualified personnel only.

NOTE: The printed circuit board of the instrument is connected to the battery pack even if the power is turned off. Therefore, it is very important to disconnect the battery pack before servicing or replacing any components inside the instrument. Severe damage to the printed circuit board or battery may occur if the battery pack is not disconnected before servicing the unit.

Battery Charging & Replacement

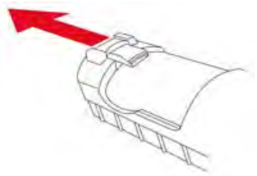
When the display shows a flashing empty battery icon, the battery requires recharging. It is recommended to recharge the instrument upon returning from fieldwork. A fully charged battery runs a instrument for 16 hours continuously. The charging time is less than 8 hours for a fully discharged battery. The battery may be replaced in the field (in areas known to be non-hazardous), if required.

WARNING!

To reduce the risk of ignition of hazardous atmospheres, recharge battery only in area known to be non-hazardous. Remove and replace battery only in areas known to be non-hazardous.

Replacing The Li-ion Battery

1. Turn off the instrument.
2. Located on the rear of the instrument is a battery tab. Slide it down to unlock the battery.



3. Remove the battery pack from the battery compartment by tilting it out.

4. Replace a fully charged spare battery pack inside the battery compartment. Make sure the battery pack is oriented properly inside the compartment.
5. Slide the capture tab back up to its locked position.

Replacing The Alkaline Battery Adapter

An alkaline battery adapter is supplied with each instrument. The adapter (part number 059-3052-000) accepts four AA alkaline batteries (use only Duracell MN1500) and provides approximately 12 hours of operation. The adapter is intended to be used in emergency situations when there is no time to charge the Li-ion battery pack.

To insert batteries into the adapter:

1. Remove the three Philips-head screws to open the compartment.
2. Insert four fresh AA batteries as indicated by the polarity (+/-) markings.
3. Replace the cover. Replace the three screws.

To install the adapter in the instrument:

1. Remove the Li-ion battery pack from the battery compartment by sliding the tab and tilting out the battery.
2. Replace it with the alkaline battery adapter
3. Slide the tab back into place to secure the battery adapter.

IMPORTANT!

Alkaline batteries cannot be recharged. The instrument's internal circuit detects alkaline batteries and will not allow recharging. If you place the instrument in its cradle, the alkaline battery will not be recharged. The internal charging circuit is designed to prevent damage to alkaline batteries and the charging circuit when alkaline batteries are installed inside the instrument.

Note: When replacing alkaline batteries, dispose of old ones properly.

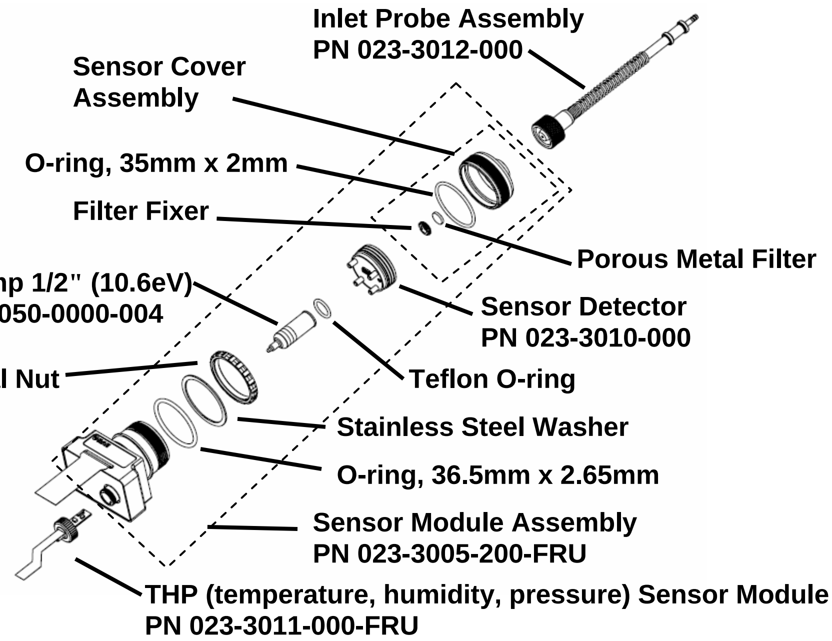
WARNING!

To reduce the risk of ignition of hazardous atmospheres, recharge the battery only in areas known to be non-hazardous. Remove and replace the battery only in areas known to be non-hazardous.

Note: The internal charging circuit is designed to prevent charging to alkaline batteries.

PID Sensor & Lamp Cleaning/Replacement

The sensor module is made of several components and is attached to the lamp-housing unit as shown below.



Sensor Components

Note: The cleaning procedure is not normally needed. Clean the PID sensor module, the lamp and the lamp housing only if:

1. The reading is inaccurate even after calibration.
2. The reading is very sensitive to air moisture.
3. A liquid has been sucked into the unit and damaged the unit.

Use of the external filter helps to prevent contamination of the sensor.

To access the sensor components and lamp, gently unscrew the lamp-housing cap, remove the sensor adapter with the gas inlet probe and the metal filter all together. Then hold the PID sensor and pull it straight out. A slight, gentle rocking motion helps release the sensor.

Cleaning The PID Sensor

Place the entire PID sensor module into GC grade methanol. It is highly recommended that an ultrasound bath to be used to clean the sensor for at least 15 minutes. Then dry the sensor thoroughly. Never touch the electrodes of the sensor by hand.
Also use a methanol-soaked cotton swab to wipe off the lamp housing where it contacts the sensor when the sensor is installed.

Turn over the sensor so that the pins point up and the sensor cavity is visible. Examine the sensor electrodes for any corrosion, damage, or bending out of alignment. The metal sensor electrode "fingers" should be flat and straight. If necessary, carefully bend the sensor fingers to ensure that they do not touch the Teflon portions and that they are parallel to each other. Make sure that the nuts on the sensor pins are snug but not overtight. If the sensor is corroded or otherwise damaged, it should be replaced.

Cleaning The Lamp Housing Or Changing The Lamp

If the lamp does not turn on, the instrument will display an error message to indicate replacement of the lamp may be required.

1. If the lamp is operational, clean the lamp window surface and the lamp housing by wiping it with GC grade methanol using a cotton swab using moderate pressure. After cleaning, hold the lamp up to the light at an angle to detect any remaining film. Repeat the process until the lamp window is clean. Never use water solutions to clean the lamp. Dry the lamp and the lamp housing thoroughly after cleaning.

   CAUTION: Never touch the window surface with the fingers or anything else that may leave a film. Never use acetone or aqueous solutions.

2. If the lamp does not turn on, remove the lamp from the lamp housing. Place the lamp O-ring onto the new lamp. Insert the new lamp, avoiding contact with the flat window surface.
3. Reinstall the PID sensor module.
4. Tighten the Lamp Housing Cap.

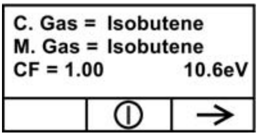
Determining The Lamp Type

The monitor can accommodate three lamp values: 10.6eV (standard), 9.8eV, and 11.7eV. The monitor automatically reads a marking on the side of the lamp to set the proper Correction Factor. There are two ways to determine the lamp type:

Remove the lamp and look for markings (bars) on the side:

- No bars: 10.6eV
- 1 bar: 11.7eV
- 2 bars: 9.8eV

Also, when the monitor is running, the lamp type is shown along with the calibration and measurement gas and Correction Factor:



C. Gas = Isobutene
M. Gas = Isobutene
CF = 1.00 10.6eV

Note: This screen can be accessed from the reading screen by pressing [N/-] four times.

Sampling Pump

When approaching the end of the specified lifetime of the pump, it will consume higher amount of energy and reduce its sample draw capability significantly. When this occurs, it is necessary to replace or rebuild the pump. When checking the pump flow, make sure that the inlet connector is tight and the inlet tubing is in good condition. Connect a flow meter to the gas inlet probe. The flow rate should be above 450 cc/min when there is no air leakage.

If the pump is not working properly, refer the instrument to qualified service personnel for further testing and, if necessary, pump repair or replacement.

Cleaning The Instrument

Occasional cleaning with a soft cloth is recommended. Do not use detergents or chemicals.

Visually inspect the contacts at the base of the instrument, on the battery, and on the charging cradle to make sure they are clean. If they are not, wipe them with a soft, dry cloth. Never use solvents or cleaners.

Ordering Replacement Parts

If you need replacement parts, contact your local RAE Systems distributor. A list is available online:

http://www.raesystems.com

In the U.S., you can order sensors, replacement batteries, and other accessories online at:

http://istore.raesystems.com/

Special Servicing Note

If the instrument needs to be serviced, contact either:

1. The RAE Systems distributor from whom the instrument was purchased; they will return the instrument on your behalf.

   or

2. The RAE Systems Technical Service Department. Before returning the instrument for service or repair, obtain a Returned Material Authorization (RMA) number for proper tracking of your equipment. This number needs to be on all documentation and posted on the outside of the box in which the instrument is returned for service or upgrade. Packages without RMA Numbers will be refused at the factory.

Troubleshooting

Problem	Possible Reasons & Solutions	
Cannot turn on power after charging the battery	**Reasons:**	Discharged battery. Defective battery.
	Solutions:	Charge or replace battery.
Lost password	**Solutions:**	Call Technical Support at +1 408-752-0723 or toll-free at +1 888-723-4800
Reading abnormally High	**Reasons:**	Dirty filter. Dirty sensor module. Excessive moisture and water condensation. Incorrect calibration.
	Solutions:	Replace filter. Blow-dry the sensor module. Calibrate the unit.
Reading abnormally Low	**Reasons:**	Dirty filter. Dirty sensor module. Weak or dirty lamp. Incorrect calibration.
	Solutions:	Replace filter. Remove Calibration Adapter. Calibrate the unit. Check for air leakage.
Buzzer Inoperative	**Reasons:**	Bad buzzer.
	Solutions:	Check that buzzer is not turned off. Call authorized service center.

Inlet flow too low	**Reasons:**	Pump diaphragm damaged or has debris. Flow path leaks.
	Solutions:	Check flow path for leaks; sensor module O-ring, tube connectors, Teflon tube compression fitting. Call Technical Support at +1 408-752-0723 or toll-free at +1 888-723-4800
“Lamp” message during operation	**Reasons:**	Lamp drive circuit. Weak or defective PID lamp, defective.
	Solutions:	Turn the unit off and back on. Replace UV lamp

Technical Support

To contact RAE Systems Technical Support Team:

Monday through Friday, 7:00AM to 5:00PM Pacific (US) Time
Phone (toll-free): +1 888-723-4800
Phone: +1 408-952-8461
Email: tech@raesystems.com

Life-critical after-hours support is available:

+1 408-952-8200 select option 8

RAE Systems Contacts

RAE Systems
World Headquarters
3775 N. First St.
San Jose, CA 95134-1708 USA
Phone: +1 408.952.8200
Fax: +1 408.952.8480

E-mail: customerserv@raesystems.com
Web Site: www.raesystems.com

RAE Systems Technical Support
Monday through Friday, 7:00AM to 5:00PM Pacific Time
Phone: +1.408.952.8461
Email: tech@raesystems.com

Life-critical after-hours support is available:
+1.408.952.8200 select option 9

RAE Systems Europe ApS
Kirstinehøj 23 A
DK-2770 Kastrup
Denmark
Phone: +45 86 52 51 55
Fax: +45 86 52 51 77
orders@raeeurope.com
sales@raeeurope.com
service@raesystems.com
Web: www.raesystems.dk

RAE Systems UK Ltd
D5 Culham Innovation Centre
Culham Science Centre
Abingdon, Oxon OX14 3DB
United Kingdom
Phone: +44 1865408368
Fax: +44 1235531119
Mobile: +44 7841362693
Email: raeuk@raeeurope.com

RAE Systems France
336, rue de la fée des eaux
69390 Vernaison
France
Phone: +33 4 78 46 16 65
Fax: +33 4 78 46 25 98
Email: info-france@raeeurope.com
Web: www.raesystems.fr

RAE BeNeLux BV
Rijndal 20
2904 DC Capelle a/d IJssel
Phone: +31 10 4426149
Fax: +31 10 4426148
Email: info@rae.nl
Web: www.rae.nl

RAE Systems Spain, s.l.
Av. Remolar, 31
08820 El Prat de Llobregat
Spain
Phone: +34 933 788 352
Fax: +34 933 788 353
Mobile: +34 687 491 106
Email: mdelgado@raespain.com
Web: www.raespain.com

RAE Middle East
Lot 7, Ground Floor, Office 19
Jebel Ali Free Zone
Dubai
United Arab Emirates
Phone: +971 4 887 5562
Fax: +971 4 887 5563
Email: mjorgensen@raesystems.com

RAE Systems (Hong Kong) Ltd.
Room 8, 6/F, Hong Leong Plaza
33 Lok Yip Road
Fanling, N.T, Hong Kong
Phone: +852.2669.0828
Fax: +852.2669.0803
Email: hksales@raesystems.com

RAE Systems Japan
403 Plaza Ochanomizu Bldg. 2-1
Surugadai Kanda Chiyoda-Ku
Tokyo, Japan
Phone: 81-3-5283-3268
Fax: 81-3-5283-3275
Email: jpsales@raesystems.com

RAE Systems Korea
#1010, DaeMyungAnsVill First,
Sang-Dong 412-2, Wonmi-Gu, Bucheon,
Kyungki-Do, Korea
Phone: 82-32-328-7123
Fax: 82-32-328-7127
Email: krsales@raesystems.com

Controlled Part of Manual

Intrinsic Safety:
US and Canada: Class I, Division 1, Groups A,B,C,D T4

Europe: ATEX (0575 Ex II 2G Ex ia IIC/IIB T4 Gb)
KEMA 07 ATEX 0127
Complies with EN60079-0:2009, EN60079-11:2007
IECEx CSA 10.0005 Ex ia IIC/IIB T4 Gb
Complies with IEC 60079-0:2007, IEC 60079-11:2006

Temperature:	-20º C to 50º C (-4º to 122º F)
Humidity:	0% to 95% relative humidity (non-condensing)

Basic Operation

Turning The Instrument On

1. With the instrument turned off, press and hold [MODE].
2. When the display turns on, release the [MODE] key.

The instrument is now operating and performs self tests. Once the self tests are complete, the display shows a graph or numerical gas reading. This indicates that the instrument is fully functional and ready to use.

Turning The Instrument Off

1. Press and hold the Mode key for 3 seconds. A 5-second countdown to shutoff begins.
2. When you see "Unit off..." release your finger from the [MODE] key. The instrument is now off.

Note: You must hold your finger on the key for the entire shutoff process. If you remove your finger from the key during the countdown, the shutoff operation is canceled and the instrument continues normal operation.

Alarm Signals

During each measurement period, the gas concentration is compared with the programmed alarm limits (gas concentration alarm limit settings). If the concentration exceeds any of the preset limits, the loud buzzer and red flashing LED are activated immediately to warn you of the alarm condition.

In addition, the instrument alarms if one of the following conditions occurs: battery voltage falls below a preset voltage level, failure of the UV lamp, pump stall, or when the datalog memory is full.

Alarm Signal Summary

Message	Condition	Alarm Signal
HIGH	Gas exceeds “High Alarm” limit	3 beeps/flashes per second*
OVR	Gas exceeds measurement range	3 beeps/flashes per second*
MAX	Gas exceeds electronics’ maximum range	3 beeps/flashes per second*
LOW	Gas exceeds “Low Alarm” limit	2 beeps/flashes per second*
TWA	Gas exceeds “TWA” limit	1 Beep/flash per second*
STEL	Gas exceeds “STEL” limit	1 Beep/flash per second*
Pump icon flashes	Pump failure	3 beeps/flashes per second
Lamp	PID lamp failure	3 beeps/flashes per second plus “Lamp” message on display

Battery icon flashes	Low battery	1 flash, 1 beep per minute plus battery icon flashes on display
CAL	Calibration failed, or needs calibration	1 beep/flash per second
NEG	Gas reading measures less than number stored in calibration	1 beep/flash per second

Preset Alarm Limits & Calibration

The instrument is factory calibrated with standard calibration gas, and is programmed with default alarm limits.

Cal Gas (Isobutylene)	Cal Span	unit	Low	High	TWA	STEL
ppbRAE 3000	10	ppm	10	25	10	25
MiniRAE 3000	100	ppm	50	100	10	25
MiniRAE Lite	100	ppm	50	100	10	25
UltraRAE 3000	100	ppm	50	100	10	25

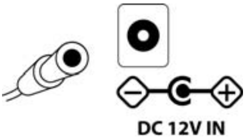
Charging The Battery

Always fully charge the battery before using the instrument. The instrument’s Li-ion/NiMH battery is charged by placing the instrument in its cradle. Contacts on the bottom of the instrument meet the cradle’s contacts, transferring power without other connections.

Note: Before setting the instrument into its charging cradle, visually inspect the contacts to make sure they are clean. If they are not, wipe them with a soft cloth. Do not use solvents or cleaners.

Follow this procedure to charge the instrument:

1. Plug the AC/DC adapter’s barrel connector into the instrument’s cradle.



2. Plug the AC/DC adapter into the wall outlet.
3. Place the instrument into the cradle, press down, and lean it back. It locks in place and the LED in the cradle glows.

   Note: To release the instrument, press down and tilt the top out of the cradle and lift up.

The instrument begins charging automatically. The LED on the front of the cradle marked “Primary” blinks during charging. During charging, the diagonal lines in the battery icon on the instrument’s display are animated and you see the message “Charging...”

When the instrument’s battery is fully charged, the battery icon is no longer animated and shows a full battery. The message “Fully charged!” is shown and the Primary LED on the cradle glows continuously green.

Note: A spare Li-ion battery (059-3051-000) or NiMH(059-3054-000) can be charged by placing it directly in the charging port on the back of the cradle. It can be charged at the same time as the instrument. Press the battery in place, sliding it slightly toward the front of the cradle. This locks it in the cradle. To release the battery, slide it forward again and tilt it up.

Note: An Alkaline Battery Adapter (part number 059-3052-000), which uses four AA alkaline batteries (Duracell MN1500), may be substituted for the Li-Ion battery.

WARNING!

To reduce the risk of ignition of hazardous atmospheres, recharge and replace batteries only in areas known to be non-hazardous. Remove and replace batteries only in areas known to be non-hazardous.

Low Voltage Warning

When the battery's charge falls below a preset voltage, the instrument warns you by beeping once and flashing once every minute, and the battery icon blinks once per second. You should turn off the instrument within 10 minutes and either recharge the battery by placing the instrument in its cradle, or replace the battery with a fresh one with a full charge.

Clock Battery

An internal clock battery is mounted on one of the instrument's printed circuit boards. This long-life battery keeps settings in memory from being lost whenever the Li-ion, NiMH, or alkaline batteries are removed. This backup battery should last approximately five years, and must be replaced by an authorized RAE Systems service technician. It is not user-replaceable.

WARNING

To reduce the risk of ignition of hazardous atmospheres, recharge battery only in area known to be non-hazardous. Remove and replace battery only in an area known to be non-hazardous.

Replacing Rechargeable Li-Ion or NiMH Battery

Caution: Turn off the instrument before removing or replacing the battery.

Alkaline Battery Adapter

An alkaline battery adapter is supplied with each instrument. The adapter (part number 059-3052-000) accepts four AA alkaline batteries (use only Duracell MN1500).

Do not mix old and new batteries or different type batteries.

Troubleshooting

Problem	Possible Reasons & Solutions	
Cannot turn on power after charging the battery	**Reasons:**	Discharged battery. Defective battery.
	Solutions:	Charge or replace battery.
Lost password	**Solutions:**	Call Technical Support at +1 408-752-0723 or toll-free at +1 888-723-4800
Reading abnormally High	**Reasons:**	Dirty filter. Dirty sensor module. Excessive moisture and water condensation. Incorrect calibration.
	Solutions:	Replace filter. Blow-dry the sensor module. Calibrate the unit.
Reading abnormally Low	**Reasons:**	Dirty filter. Dirty sensor module. Weak or dirty lamp. Incorrect calibration.
	Solutions:	Replace filter. Remove Calibration Adapter. Calibrate the unit. Check for air leakage.
Buzzer Inoperative	**Reasons:**	Bad buzzer.
	Solutions:	Check that buzzer is not turned off. Call authorized service center.

Inlet flow too low	**Reasons:**	Pump diaphragm damaged or has debris. Flow path leaks.
	Solutions:	Check flow path for leaks; sensor module O-ring, tube connectors, Teflon tube compression fitting. Call Technical Support at +1 408-752-0723 or toll-free at +1 888-723-4800
"Lamp" message during operation	**Reasons:**	Lamp drive circuit. Weak or defective PID lamp, defective.
	Solutions:	Turn the unit off and back on. Replace UV lamp

RAE Systems
World Headquarters

3775 N. First St.
San Jose, CA 95134-1708 USA
Phone: 408.952.8200
Toll-Free: 888.723.4800
Fax: 408.952.8480

E-mail (sales support): raesales@raesystems.com
E-mail (technical support): tech@raesystems.com
Web Site: www.raesystems.com

RAE Systems Europe

Kristinehøj 23A, Boulevard 69, DK-2770 Kastrup • Denmark
Tel: +45.8652.5155 • Fax: +45.8652.5177

RAE Systems (Hong Kong) Ltd.

Units 1516-18, 15/F, Delta House, 3 On Yiu Street
Shatin, N.T. Hong Kong
Web: www.raesystems.cn • Email: asiasales@raesystems.com
Phone: +852.2669.0828

RAE Systems Middle East

LOB 7, Ground Floor, Office 19, Jebel Ali Free Zone
Dubai, United Arab Emirates
Email: mesales@raesystems.com • Phone: +971.4.887.5562

Rev. C
August 2010
P/N 059-4020-000

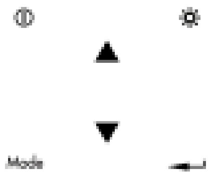
FIELD OPERATION GUIDE
YSI 550 DO INSTRUMENT

TURNING THE INSTRUMENT ON

The YSI 550 DO keypad consists of six keys. There are four function keys, and one up and one down arrow keys. The top left key that has a green circle and line is the ON/OFF key. The top right key is the back light. The bottom left is the Mode key, and the bottom right is the Enter key.

Turn the instrument on by pressing and releasing the **ON/OFF** button on the front of the instrument.

NOTE: Since the probe has not yet been prepared, the data on the display will be inaccurate.



The light key is at the top right of the keypad. Pushing the **LIGHT** key will turn on or off the back light. The light will power off automatically after two minutes of non-use.

CHANGING THE TEMPERATURE UNITS

The YSI 550 DO Instrument can display the temperature units in either Fahrenheit or Celsius. To change the units that are displayed, turn the instrument on. Pressing both the down arrow keys and the mode key at the same time will switch the units between C or F.

CHOOSING THE RIGHT MEMBRANE

The YSI 5906 Standard Membrane Kit is supplied with the YSI 550 DO Instrument. This kit contains six cap membranes and a bottle of electrolyte solution. YSI recommends the 5906 membranes for all applications.

MEMBRANE CAP INSTALLATION

To install a new membrane cap on your YSI 550 dissolved oxygen probe:

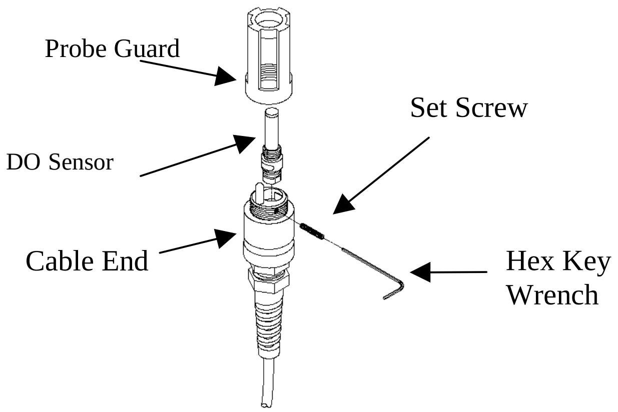
Unscrew and remove the probe sensor guard.

1. Unscrew and remove the old membrane cap.
2. Thoroughly rinse the sensor tip with distilled or DI water.
3. xPrepare the electrolyte according to the directions on the solution bottle.Hold the membrane cap and fill it at least 1/2 full with the electrolyte solution.
4. Screw the membrane cap onto the probe moderately tight. A small amount of electrolyte should overflow.
5. Screw the probe sensor guard on moderately tight.

CAUTION: **Do not touch the membrane surface.**

HOW TO REPLACE THE DO PROBE TIP

In the YSI 559 dissolved oxygen module replacement kit YSI supplies a YSI 559 DO Sensor, a YSI 5906 membrane kit, the set screw that holds the sensor in place, a hex key wrench to help install the probe, and an instruction sheet.



1. Remove probe guard.

2. **IMPORTANT:** Thoroughly dry the sensor so that no water enters the probe port when the sensor is removed.

3. Insert the long end of the hex key wrench into the small hole in the side of the DO sensor module. Turn the wrench counter clockwise and remove the screw. (You do not have to remove the screw all the way to release the sensor.)

4. Pull the DO sensor out of the module. The DO sensor is keyed, or has a flat side, so that it can not be removed improperly.

5. Insert the new probe. Make sure that the inside of the module, and the o-ring of the sensor are clean, with no contaminants, such as grease, dirt, or hair. The DO sensor is keyed, or has a flat side, so that it can not be installed improperly.

6a. **IF you did not remove the screw all the way in Step 3:** Use the hex key wrench to tighten the screw in properly, making sure that the screw does not stick out on either side of the DO sensor module.

6b. **IF you removed the screw all the way in Step 3:** Insert the set screw into the small hole in the side of the DO sensor module, and turn clockwise to rethread.

7. The YSI 559 DO module is shipped dry. **Before using the YSI 550 with a new YSI 559 sensor, the protective membrane on the probe tip must be removed, the membrane cap must be filled with electrolyte solution and a new membrane must be installed.** Follow the instructions below to install the electrolyte solution and membrane.

8. Insert the new probe. Make sure that the inside of the module, and the o-ring of the sensor are clean, with no contaminants, such as grease, dirt, or hair. The DO sensor is keyed, or has a flat side, so that it can not be installed improperly.

CAUTION: Make sure that you do not cross-thread the screw. Use the hex key wrench to tighten the screw in properly, making sure that the screw does not stick out on either side of the cable end. The probe guard will not thread on properly and damage may result if the screw is allowed to stick out on either side of the cable end.

THE CALIBRATION PROCESS

Before you calibrate the YSI 550 DO Instrument complete the procedures discussed **in Section 2, Preparing the YSI 550** and **Section 3, Preparing the Probe**.

Note: While testing to EN-61000-4-6, Conducted RF Immunity, per Table A.1 of EN61326, Electrical Equipment for Measurement, Control and Laboratory Use, the YSI 550 exhibited an ERROR 8 message from 8.6 MHz 22.8 MHz at induced RF voltages of 3-Volts to 1-Volt RMS on the 25-foot probe cable. If you observe this interference please relocate the probe-cable away from heavy industrial equipment power and control cables or communications equipment cables which may be causing the interference.

To accurately calibrate the YSI 550, you will need to know the following information:

- The approximate salinity of the water you will be analyzing. Fresh water has a salinity of approximately zero. Seawater has a salinity of approximately 35 parts per thousand (ppt). If you are uncertain what the salinity of the sample water, use a YSI 30 Salinity-Conductivity-Temperature instrument to determine salinity.

- IF you are going to calibrate in % saturation mode, you need to know the approximate altitude of the region where you are located.

1. Ensure that the sponge inside the instrument's calibration chamber is moist. Insert the probe into the calibration chamber.

2. Turn the instrument on by pressing the **ON/OFF** button on the front of the instrument. Wait for the dissolved oxygen and temperature readings to stabilize (usually 15 minutes is required after turning the instrument on).

3. To enter the calibration menu, use two fingers to press and release both the **UP ARROW** and **DOWN ARROW** keys at the same time.

TO CALIBRATE IN MG/L:

To switch between mg/L and percent saturation to be displayed as the oxygen readings units, press the Mode key. Either a “mg/L” or “%” will be displayed on the right side of the screen.

4. Make sure that the DO reading (large display) is stable, then press the **ENTER** button. The YSI 550 DO instrument should now display **CAL** in the lower left of the display, the calibration value should be displayed in the lower right of the display and the current DO reading (before calibration) should be on the main display.

5. Make sure that the DO reading (large display) is stable, then press the **ENTER** button. The LCD will prompt you to enter the approximate salinity of the water you are about to analyze. You can enter any number from 0 to 40 parts per thousand (PPT) of salinity. Use the arrow keys to increase or decrease the salinity setting. When the correct salinity appears on the LCD (zero for fresh water), press the **ENTER** key. The instrument will return to normal operation.

Once the calibration process is complete, the only keys that will remain operational are the **MODE** key, the **LIGHT** key and the **ON/OFF** key. You can move back and forth from reading dissolved oxygen in the mg/L mode or the % air saturation mode by pressing the **MODE** key. If you are working in a dark area and have difficulty reading the LCD, press the **LIGHT** key to activate the back-light of the YSI 550. The **ON/OFF** key turns the instrument on or off.

For best results:

- Each time the YSI 550 DO Instrument is turned off, re-calibrate before taking measurements.
- Calibrate at a temperature within ±10°C of the sample temperature.

TO CALIBRATE IN % SATURATION:

To switch between mg/L and percent saturation to be displayed as the oxygen readings units, press the Mode key. Either a “mg/L” or “%” will be displayed on the right side of the screen.

4. IF you are calibrating in % saturation mode, the LCD will prompt you to enter the local altitude in hundreds of feet. Use the arrow keys to increase or decrease the altitude.

EXAMPLE: Entering the number 12 here indicates 1200 feet.

6. When the proper altitude appears on the LCD, press the **ENTER** key. The YSI 550 DO Instrument should now display **CAL** in the lower left of the display, the calibration value should be displayed in the lower right of the display and the current DO reading (before calibration) should be on the main display.

7. Make sure that the DO reading (large display) is stable, then press the **ENTER** button. The LCD will prompt you to enter the approximate salinity of the water you are about to analyze. You can enter any number from 0 to 40 parts per thousand (PPT) of salinity. Use the arrow keys to increase or decrease the salinity setting. When the correct salinity appears on the LCD (zero for fresh water), press the **ENTER** key. The instrument will return to normal operation.

Once the calibration process is complete, the only keys that will remain operational are the **MODE** key, the **LIGHT** key and the **ON/OFF** key. You can move back and forth from reading dissolved oxygen in the mg/L mode or the % air saturation mode by pressing the **MODE** key. If you are working in a dark area and have difficulty reading the LCD, press and hold the **LIGHT** key to activate the back-light of the YSI 550. The **ON/OFF** key turns the instrument on or off.

For best results:

- Each time the YSI 550 DO Instrument is turned off, re-calibrate before taking measurements.
- Calibrate at a temperature within ±10°C of the sample temperature.

CONVERSION CHART

To Convert From	To	Equation
Feet	Meter	Multiply by 0.3048
Meter	Feet	Multiply by 3.2808399
Degrees Celsius	Degrees Fahrenheit	(°C × 9/5) + 32
Degrees Fahrenheit	Degrees Celsius	(°F - 32) × 5/9
Milligrams per liter (mg/L)	Parts per million (ppm)	Multiply by 1

YSI *incorporated*

YSI Incorporated
1725 Brannum Lane
Yellow Springs, Ohio 45387 USA
(800) 897 4151 (937) 767 7241
Fax: (937) 767 9353
http://www.ysi.com
e-mail: info@ysi.com

Item #655127
Drawing #A655127
Revision A
March 2000

YSI Environmental

Pure Data for a Healthy Planet.™

YSI 550A
Dissolved Oxygen Instrument

Operations Manual

CONTENTS

GENERAL DESCRIPTION

The YSI 550A Handheld Dissolved Oxygen Instrument is a rugged, microprocessor based, digital instrument with a field-replaceable YSI dissolved oxygen probe. The YSI 550A DO Instrument is impact-resistant and waterproof.

The YSI 550A DO Instrument is designed for field use and is available with cable lengths of 12, 25, 50, or 100 feet (3.5, 7.5, 15, 30.5 meters). The body of the probe has been manufactured with stainless steel to add rugged durability and sinking weight. The large Liquid Crystal Display (LCD) is easy to read and is equipped with a backlight for use in dark or poorly lighted areas.

The YSI 550A DO Instrument can be easily calibrated with the press of a few keys. Additionally, the instrument's microprocessor performs a self-diagnostic routine each time the instrument is turned on. The self-diagnostic routine provides you with useful information about the function of the instrument circuitry and the quality of the readings you obtain.

The system displays temperature in either ^{o}C or ^{o}F and dissolved oxygen in either mg/L (milligrams per liter) or % air saturation. The system requires only a single calibration regardless of which dissolved oxygen display is used, and will calibrate in either mode. Salinity compensation values can be changed at any time without performing a new calibration.

A detachable calibration chamber is mounted to the back of the instrument. A small sponge in the chamber can be moistened to provide a water saturated air environment that is ideal for air calibration. This chamber is also designed for transporting and storing the probe. When the probe is stored in the chamber, the moist environment will prolong effective membrane performance and probe life.

The YSI 550A DO Instrument is powered by 4 C-size alkaline batteries. A new set of alkaline batteries will provide approximately 2000 hours of continuous operation. If the backlight is used often, batteries will be depleted faster.

The YSI 550A case is waterproof with an IP-67 rating. The instrument is 100% corrosion proof and can be operated in a wet environment without damage to the instrument.

INITIAL INSPECTION

When you unpack your new YSI 550A DO Handheld Instrument for the first time, check the packing list to make sure you have received everything. If there is anything missing or damaged, call the dealer from whom you purchased the YSI 550A. If you do not know which authorized dealer sold the system to you, call YSI Customer Service at 800-897-4151 or 937-767-7241.

WARRANTY REGISTRATION

Please complete the Product Registration on the YSI website at www.ysi.com. If you are not online, you may complete the Warranty Card included with your instrument and return it to YSI Incorporated. Your purchase of this quality instrument will then be recorded in YSI's customer database. Once your purchase is recorded, you will receive prompt, efficient service in the event any part of your YSI 550A DO Instrument should ever need repair.

WARRANTY

The YSI 550A DO Instrument is warranted for three years from date of purchase by the end user against defects in materials and workmanship. YSI 550A DO probes and cables are warranted for one year from date of purchase by the end user against defects in material and workmanship. Within the warranty period, YSI will repair or replace, at its sole discretion, free of charge, any product that YSI determines to be covered by this warranty.

To exercise this warranty, write or call your local YSI representative, or contact YSI Customer Service in Yellow Springs, Ohio. Send the product and proof of purchase, transportation prepaid, to the Authorized Service Center selected by YSI. Repair or replacement will be made and the product returned, transportation prepaid. Repaired or replaced products are warranted for the balance of the original warranty period, or at least 90 days from date of repair or replacement.

Limitation of Warranty

This Warranty does not apply to any YSI product damage or failure caused by (i) failure to install, operate or use the product in accordance with YSI's written instructions, (ii) abuse or misuse of the product, (iii) failure to maintain the product in accordance with YSI's written instructions or standard industry procedure, (iv) any improper repairs to the product, (v) use by you of defective or improper components or parts in servicing or repairing the product, or (vi) modification of the product in any way not expressly authorized by YSI.

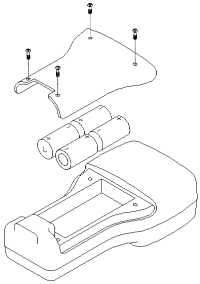
THIS WARRANTY IS IN LIEU OF ALL OTHER WARRANTIES, EXPRESSED OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING ANY WARRANTY OF MERCHANTABILITY OR FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE. YSI's LIABILITY UNDER THIS WARRANTY IS LIMITED TO REPAIR OR REPLACEMENT OF THE PRODUCT, AND THIS SHALL BE YOUR SOLE AND EXCLUSIVE REMEDY FOR ANY DEFECTIVE PRODUCT COVERED BY THIS WARRANTY. IN NO EVENT SHALL YSI BE LIABLE FOR ANY SPECIAL, INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES RESULTING FROM ANY DEFECTIVE PRODUCT COVERED BY THIS WARRANTY.

FEATURES OF THE YSI 550A

KEYPAD

⏻	Powers the unit on or off. The instrument will activate all segments of the display for a few seconds, and then will show a self-test procedure for several more seconds. During this power on self-test sequence, it is normal to error messages appear and disappear. If the instrument were to detect a problem, a **continuous** error message would be displayed.
☼	Turns the display backlight on or off. The light will turn off automatically after two minutes of non-use.
Mode	During DO calibration it allows the user to select between % and mg/L. After selection, it may be pressed several times to exit back to measurement mode without completing the calibration. During measurement, it switches the instrument display between DO %, DO mg/L, and salinity calibration.
▲ and ▼	Increases or decreases the value during calibrations.
▼ and **Mode**	Press at the same time to switch the temperature units between Fahrenheit (F) and Celsius (C).
▲ and **Mode**	Press at the same time to increase or decrease the resolution of the instrument in mg/L or % measurement mode.

BATTERIES



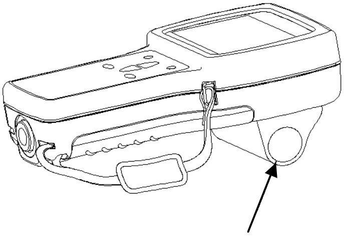
The YSI 550A DO Instrument is powered by 4 C-size alkaline batteries. A new set of alkaline batteries will provide approximately 2000 hours of continuous operation. When batteries need to be replaced, the LCD will display a **"LO BAT"** message. When the message first appears, the instrument will have approximately 50 hours of life left, provided the back light is not used.

INSTRUMENT CASE

The waterproof instrument case is sealed at the factory and is not to be opened, except by authorized service technicians.

Caution: Do not attempt to separate the two halves of the instrument case as this may damage the instrument, break the waterproof seal, and will void the manufacturer's warranty.

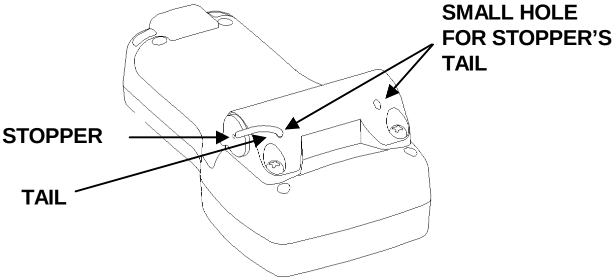
CALIBRATION/STORAGE CHAMBER



The YSI 550A DO Instrument has a convenient calibration/storage chamber that can be attached to the instrument's back. The calibration chamber can be used from either side of the instrument, by moving the rubber stopper to either end.

If you look into the chamber, you should notice a small round sponge in the bottom. Carefully put 3 to 6 drops of clean water into the sponge. Turn the instrument over and allow any excess water to drain out of the chamber. The wet sponge creates a 100% water saturated air environment for the probe. This environment is ideal for dissolved oxygen calibration and for storage of the probe during transport and non-use.

The YSI 550A DO Instrument's storage chamber can be conveniently used from either side of the instrument.



1. Remove the chamber from the instrument by unscrewing the two screws.
2. Remove the rubber stopper from the chamber by pulling the "tail" free of the small hole on the chamber.
3. Re-attached the rubber stopper to the storage chamber by threading the "tail" through the opposite small hole on the chamber.
4. Re-attached the storage chamber to the instrument using the two screws.

HAND STRAP

The hand strap is designed to allow comfortable operation of the YSI 550A DO Instrument with minimum effort. If the hand strap is adjusted correctly, it is unlikely that the instrument will be dropped or bumped from your hand. The hand strap can be conveniently used from either side of the instrument.

To switch the hand strap from one side to the other:
1. Pull the two velcro strips apart.
2. Pull the strap free of the upper and lower hooks.
3. Feed the strap through the hooks on the other side of the instrument.
4. Adjust the strap length so that your hand is snugly held in place.
5. Press the two velcro strips back together.

PRINCIPLES OF OPERATION

The sensor consists of a silver body as the anode and a circular gold cathode embedded in the end. In operation, this end of the sensor is filled with a solution of electrolyte containing a small amount of surfactant to improve wetting action.

A thin semi-permeable membrane, stretched over the sensor, isolates the electrodes from the environment, while allowing gases to enter. When a polarizing voltage is applied to the sensor electrodes oxygen that has passed through the membrane reacts at the cathode causing a current to flow.

The membrane passes oxygen at a rate proportional to the pressure difference across it. Since oxygen is rapidly consumed at the cathode, it can be assumed that the oxygen pressure inside the membrane is zero. Hence, the force causing the oxygen to diffuse through the membrane is proportional to the partial pressure of oxygen outside the membrane. As the oxygen partial pressure varies, so does the oxygen diffusion through the membrane. This causes the probe current to change proportionally.

PREPARING THE PROBE

MEMBRANE CAP INSTALLATION

The YSI 550A DO probe is shipped with a dry, protective membrane. Before using the instrument for the first time, remove the protective cap and replace it with a new one following these instructions:

1. Remove the probe sensor guard to access the probe tip.
2. Unscrew and remove the old membrane cap and discard.
3. Thoroughly rinse the sensor tip with distilled or DI water.
4. Fill a new membrane cap with O_2 probe solution that has been prepared according to the directions on the bottle. Be very careful not to touch the membrane surface. Lightly tap the side of the membrane cap to release bubbles that may be trapped.
5. Thread the membrane cap onto the probe. It is normal for a small amount of electrolyte to overflow.
6. Replace the probe sensor guard.

MEMBRANE MAINTENANCE

Additional membrane changes will be required over time. The average replacement interval is 4 to 8 weeks, although they may last longer if kept clean. To clean the membrane, use a lint-free cloth, such as a Kimwipe, and rubbing alcohol to gently remove the contamination. In harsh environments, such as wastewater, membrane replacements may be required every 2 to 4 weeks.

DISSOLVED OXYGEN CALIBRATION

Dissolved oxygen calibration must be done in an environment with known oxygen content. The YSI 550A DO Instrument can be calibrated in either mg/L or % saturation. Sections below include instructions on how to calibrate in either mode.

BEFORE YOU CALIBRATE

To accurately calibrate the YSI 550A, you will need to know the following information:

- The approximate salinity of the water you will be analyzing. Fresh water has a salinity of approximately zero. Seawater has a salinity of approximately 35 parts per thousand (ppt). If you are uncertain what the salinity of the sample water is, use a YSI 30 Salinity-Conductivity-Temperature instrument to determine a salinity value.

- For calibration in % saturation mode, the approximate altitude (in feet) of the region where you are located is required. This information can be obtained over the internet or from a local airport or weather station. To convert from meters to feet, divide by 0.3048.

For best results:

- Check calibration with each use and recalibrate as necessary to prevent drift. Dissolved oxygen readings are only as good as the calibration.

- Calibrate at a temperature within ±10°C of the sample temperature.

CALIBRATION IN % SATURATION

1. Ensure that the sponge inside the instrument's calibration chamber is moist. Insert the probe into the calibration chamber.

2. Turn the instrument on. Allow it to warm up and readings to stabilize for about 15-20 minutes.

3. Press and release both the **UP ARROW** and **DOWN ARROW** keys at the same time to enter the calibration menu.

4. Press the **Mode** key until “%” is displayed on the right side of the screen for oxygen units. Press **ENTER**.

5. The LCD will prompt you to enter the local altitude in hundreds of feet. Use the arrow keys to increase or decrease the altitude. When the proper altitude appears on the LCD, press the **ENTER** key.

   EXAMPLE: Entering the number 12 here indicates 1200 feet.

6. **CAL** will now display in the lower left corner of the screen, the calibration value in the lower right corner and the current DO reading (before calibration) will be the main display. Once the current DO reading is stable, press the **ENTER** button.

7. The LCD will prompt you to enter the approximate salinity of the water you are about to analyze. You can enter any number from 0 to 70 parts per thousand (PPT) of salinity. Use the arrow keys to increase or decrease the salinity setting. When the correct salinity appears on the LCD, press the **ENTER** key. The instrument will return to normal operation.

CALIBRATION IN MG/L

1. Turn the instrument on. Allow it to warm up and readings to stabilize for about 15-20 minutes.

2. Place the probe in a solution with a known mg/L reading. Continuously stir or move the probe through the sample at a rate of at least 1/2 foot per second (16cm per second) during the entire calibration process.

3. Press and release both the **UP ARROW** and **DOWN ARROW** keys at the same time to enter the calibration menu.

4. Press the **Mode** key until “mg/L” is displayed on the right side of the screen for oxygen units. Press **ENTER**.

5. **CAL** will now display in the lower left corner of the screen and the current DO reading (before calibration) will be on the main display. Once the current DO reading is stable, use the up and down arrow keys to select the mg/L value of the known solution, then press the **ENTER** button.

6. The LCD will prompt you to enter the approximate salinity of the water you are about to analyze. Enter any number from 0 to 70 parts per thousand (PPT) of salinity. Use the arrow keys to increase or decrease the salinity setting. When the correct salinity appears on the, press the **ENTER** key. The instrument will return to normal operation.

SALINITY COMPENSATION CALIBRATION

1. Press the **Mode** key until salinity calibration is displayed on the screen.
2. Use the **UP ARROW** and **DOWN ARROW** keys to adjust the salinity value to that of the samples you will be measuring, 0-70 ppt.
3. Press the **ENTER** key to save the calibration.
4. Press **Mode** to return to dissolved oxygen measurement

PROBE OPERATION

NOTE: The YSI 550A DO Instrument should not be used in a purpose other than that specified by YSI Incorporated. See **Warranty** for details.

STIRRING

It is important to recognize that a very small amount of oxygen dissolved in the sample is consumed during probe operation. It is therefore essential that the sample be continuously stirred at the sensor tip. If stagnation occurs, measurements will appear artificially low.

Stirring may be accomplished by mechanically moving the sample around the probe tip, or by moving the probe through the sample. The YSI Model 550A has a flow dependence of <25%. The rate of stirring required is 1/2 foot per second (16cm per second).

MEASUREMENT PROCEDURE

1. Insert the probe into the sample to be measured.
2. Continuously stir or move the probe through the sample.
3. Allow temperature and dissolved oxygen readings to stabilize.
4. Observe/Record readings.
5. If possible, rinse the probe with clean water after each use.

PRECAUTIONS

1. Membranes last longer if properly installed and regularly maintained. Erratic readings can result from loose, wrinkled, damaged, or fouled membranes, large (more than 1/8" diameter) air bubbles in the electrolyte reservoir, or membrane coating by oxygen consuming (e.g. bacteria) or oxygen producing (e.g. algae) organisms. If unstable readings or membrane damage occurs, replace both the membrane cap and electrolyte solution.

2. Chlorine, sulfur dioxide, nitric oxide, and nitrous oxide can affect readings by behaving like oxygen at the probe.

3. Avoid substances such as acids, caustics, and strong solvents, which may damage probe materials. Probe materials include the PE membrane, acrylic plastic, EPR rubber, stainless steel, epoxy, polyetherimide and the PVC cable covering.

4. Always store the probe in the calibration/storage chamber with the moistened sponge.

PROBE ELECTRODE MAINTENANCE

SILVER ANODE

After extended use, a thick layer of AgCl builds up on the silver anode reducing the sensitivity of the sensor. The anode must be cleaned to remove this layer and restore proper performance. The cleaning can be chemical or mechanical:

- **Chemical cleaning:** Remove the membrane cap and rinse the electrodes deionized or distilled water. Soak the entire anode section in a 14% ammonium hydroxide solution for 2 to 3 minutes (or a 3% solution may be used and soaked overnight for 8-12 hours). Rinse heavily in cool tap water followed by a thorough rinsing with distilled or deionized water. The anode should then be thoroughly wiped with a wet paper towel to remove the residual layer from the anode.

  Warning: Chemical cleaning should be performed on an as-needed basis, and no more often than once a year (or once per six months in wastewater environments). When readings appear unstable or the instrument will not calibrate, first attempt a membrane change and recalibrate. If a new membrane does not resolve the problem, then proceed with the chemical cleaning.

- **Mechanical cleaning:** Sand off the dark layer from the silver anode with 400 grit wet/dry sandpaper. Wrap the wet sandpaper around the anode and twist the probe. Rinse the anode with clean water after sanding, and wipe thoroughly with a wet paper towel.

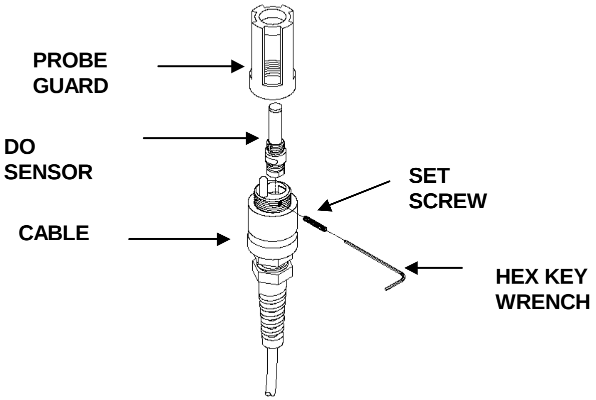
GOLD CATHODE

For correct probe operation, the gold cathode must be textured properly. It can become tarnished or plated with silver after extended use. The gold cathode can be cleaned by using the YSI 5238 Probe Reconditioning Kit or 400 grit wet/dry sandpaper. Never use chemicals or abrasives not recommended or supplied by YSI.

Using the sanding paper provided in the YSI 5238 Probe Reconditioning Kit, wet sand the gold with a twisting motion about 3 times or until all silver deposits are removed and the gold appears to have a matte finish. If the cathode remains tarnished, return the probe for service. Wipe the gold cathode thoroughly with a wet paper towel before putting on a new membrane cap.

REPLACEMENT OF THE DO ELECTRODES

Should replacement of the DO Electrodes be required, the user may purchase a YSI 559 Replaceable DO Module Kit. The kit includes an instruction sheet, DO sensor module, set screw, and hex key wrench.



1. Remove probe guard.
2. **IMPORTANT:** Thoroughly dry the sensor so that no water enters the probe port when the sensor is removed.
3. Insert the long end of the hex key wrench into the small hole in the side of the DO sensor. Turn the wrench counter clockwise until the sensor is released.
4. Pull the DO sensor out of the probe. The DO sensor is keyed, or has a flat side, so that it can not be removed or inserted improperly.
5. Make sure that the inside of the connector and the o-ring of the sensor are clean and dry, with no contaminants, such as grease, dirt, or hair. Insert the new sensor.
6. Use the hex key wrench to tighten the screw, making sure that the screw does not stick out on either side of the DO sensor module. Also, if the hex screw was removed completely, make sure that it is not cross-threaded when replaced.
7. The YSI 559 DO module is shipped with a dry, protective membrane. Before using for the first time, remove the protective cap and replace it with a new one following the instructions for **Membrane Cap Installation**.

ACCESSORIES/REPLACEMENT PARTS

The following parts and accessories are available from YSI or any YSI Authorized Dealer.

YSI Model Number	Description
5908	Membrane Kit, 1.25 mil PE, 6 caps and bottle of electrolyte solution
559	Replaceable DO Module
5238	Probe Reconditioning Kit, 10 sanding discs (400 grit) and sanding tool
5065	Form-Fitted Cover with Shoulder Strap
614	Ultra Clamp, C-Clamp Mount
4654	Tripod
5085	Hands Free Harness
5050	Small, Hard-sided Carrying Case, Foam-lined
5060	Small, Soft-sided Carrying Case, Precut Foam Interior
5080	Small, Hard-sided, Pelican Carrying Case, Precut Foam Interior

SPECIFICATIONS

Display	Resolution	Range	Accuracy
Dissolved O_2 mg/L	0.01 mg/L or 0.1 mg/L, user selectable	0 to 20 mg/L	± 0.3 mg/L or ± 2% of reading, whichever is greater
		20 to 50 mg/L	± 6% of reading
Dissolved O_2 %	0.1% or 1%, user selectable	0 to 200%	± 2% air sat or ± 2% of reading, whichever is greater
		200 to 500%	± 6% of reading
Temperature ºC	0.1 ºC	-5 to +45 ºC	± 0.3 ºC
Temperature ºF	0.1 ºF	23 to 113 ºF	± 0.6 ºF

Medium:	Fresh, sea or polluted water
Dissolved Oxygen Sensor:	Steady-state polarographic
Dissolved Oxygen Probe:	Field-replaceable module
Dissolved Oxygen Response Time:	95% of end value in 9 seconds
Temperature Units:	Celsius or Fahrenheit, user selectable
Parameter Compensation:	Automatic temperature compensation for dissolved oxygen Automatic salinity compensation (0-70 ppt) for dissolved oxygen Altitude compensation for dissolved oxygen percent calibration
Size:	4.7 in. width; 9 in. length (11.9 cm x 22.9 cm)
Weight with Batteries:	2 lb. (0.91 kg)
Power:	4 alkaline C-cells
Battery life:	Over 2000 hours at 25°C (77ºF)
Cables:	12, 25, 50, and 100-foot lengths (3.5, 7.5, 15, 30.5 meter lengths)
Other Features:	Waterproof to IP-67 High-impact resistance Push-button calibration Built-in calibration chamber Large back-lit display Low battery indicator on display Manual salinity input CE-compliance

TROUBLESHOOTING

NOTE: An error displayed briefly during the first few seconds after turning the instrument on does NOT indicate a problem.

SYMPTOM	POSSIBLE SOLUTION
1. Instrument will not turn on, LCD displays "LO BAT", or Main display flashes “OFF”	A. Low battery voltage, replace batteries B. Batteries installed incorrectly, check battery polarity C. Return system for service
2. Instrument will not calibrate.	A. Replace membrane and electrolyte B. Clean probe electrodes C. Return system for service
3. Instrument "locks up".	A. Remove batteries, wait 15 seconds for reset, replace batteries B. Replace batteries C. Return system for service
4. Instrument readings are inaccurate.	A. Verify calibration altitude and salinity settings are correct and recalibrate. B. Probe may not have been in 100% water saturated air during calibration procedure. Moisten sponge in calibration chamber and recalibrate. C. Replace membrane and electrolyte. Recalibrate. D. Clean probe electrodes. E. Return system for service.
5. Main display reads “Over” or “Undr”.	A. Sample O_2 concentration is more than 60 mg/L or 500%, or less than –0.02 mg/L or -0.3%. B. Verify calibration altitude and salinity settings are correct and recalibrate. C. Replace membrane and electrolyte. Recalibrate. D. Clean probe electrodes. E. Return system for service.
6. Main display reads “Over” or “Undr” during calibration.	A. Replace membrane and electrolyte. Recalibrate. B. Clean probe electrodes. C. Return system for service.

SYMPTOM	POSSIBLE SOLUTION
7. Secondary display reads "Ovr" or “Undr”.	A. Sample temperature is less than -5º C (23ºF) or more than +45ºC (122ºF). Increase or decrease the sample temperature to bring within the allowable range. B. Return system for service.
8. Main display reads “Err” and Secondary display reads “RO”, “RA”, or “AdC”.	A. Return system for service
9. Main display reads “Err” or burn” and Secondary display reads “EEP”	A. Return system for service

CONTACT INFORMATION

YSI offers a wide range of customer assistance and technical support functions to ensure that you have the information required to use our products. Contact YSI Environmental if you need assistance or have questions regarding any YSI Environmental Product. Business hours are Monday through Friday, 8AM to 5PM ET.

YSI Environmental Incorporated
1725 Brannum Lane
Yellow Springs, OH 45387
Toll Free: 800-897-4151
Phone: 937 767-7241
Fax: 937 767-1058
E-Mail: environmental@ysi.com
www.ysi.com/environmental

REQUIRED NOTICE

The Federal Communications Commission defines this product as a computing device and requires the following notice:

This equipment generates and uses radio frequency energy and if not installed and used properly, may cause interference to radio and television reception. There is no guarantee that interference will not occur in a particular installation. If this equipment does cause interference to radio or television reception, which can be determined by turning the equipment off and on, the user is encouraged to try to correct the interference by one or more of the following measures:

- re-orient the receiving antenna
- relocate the YSI Instrument with respect to the receiver
- move the YSI Instrument away from the receiver
- plug the YSI Instrument into a different outlet so that the computer and receiver are on different branch circuits.

If necessary, the user should consult the dealer or an experienced radio/television technician for additional suggestions. The user may find the following booklet, prepared by the Federal Communications Commission, helpful: "How to Identify and Resolve Radio-TV Interference Problems." This booklet is available from the U.S. Government Printing Office, Washington, DC 20402, Stock No. 0004-000-00345-4.

Note: While testing to EN-61000-4-6, Conducted RF Immunity, per Table A.1 of EN61326, Electrical Equipment for Measurement, Control and Laboratory Use, the YSI 550A exhibited an ERROR 8 message from 8.6 MHz 22.8 MHz at induced RF voltages of 3-Volts to 1-Volt RMS on the 25-foot probe cable. If you observe this interference please relocate the probe-cable away from heavy industrial equipment power and control cables or communications equipment cables which may be causing the interference.